

A
CONSERVATION PLAN
for
MONT ORGUEIL,
JERSEY



Prepared for the



MAY 2008

A
CONSERVATION PLAN
for
MONT ORGUEIL,
JERSEY

CONTENTS

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY	1
INTRODUCTION	4

PART ONE : SIGNIFICANCE

1.0 UNDERSTANDING THE SITE	19
1.0.1 Geology and Topography	19
1.0.2 Archaeology	30
1.0.3 Medieval castle (<i>circa</i> 1204- <i>circa</i> 1470)	36
1.0.4 Artillery fortress (<i>circa</i> 1470-1593)	50
1.0.5 Administrative centre, prison and part-time residence (1593-1680)	63
1.0.6 Military garrison (1680-1907)	72
1.0.7 Historic monument (1907-2007)	85
1.0.8 Description and gazetteer	102
Keep	105
Middle Ward	166
Lower Ward	214
Outer Ward	248
1.0.9 Ecology	278
1.0.10 Uses	282
1.1 HISTORICAL OVERVIEW	290
1.2 ASSESSMENT OF SIGNIFICANCE	295
1.2.1 STATEMENT OF SIGNIFICANCE	297
1.2.2 ASSESSMENT OF INDIVIDUAL ELEMENTS ...	298

PART TWO : CONSERVATION POLICY

2.1 INTRODUCTION	301
2.2 VULNERABILITY	302
2.3 ISSUES	304
2.4 CONSERVATION PLAN POLICIES	307
2.5 IMPLEMENTATION AND REVIEW	323

SUPPORTING INFORMATION

References and bibliography

Appendix 1 : Archival sources in the Jersey Archives

Appendix 2 : Archival sources in the library of the Société Jersiaise

Prepared for the
JERSEY HERITAGE TRUST

MAY 2008

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY



The subject of the Conservation Plan is the castle of Mont Orgueil, first erected shortly after 1204 AD on a promontory of natural granite, previously occupied by an Iron Age hillfort and where evidence for Palaeolithic and Neolithic occupation and some Roman coins have been found.

The castle was extended and refurbished on several occasions, and then in the late fifteenth and sixteenth centuries it was substantially refortified as an artillery fortress.

It remained the principal fortification on the island of Jersey and seat of the Governor, providing shelter for a range of public and domestic buildings, until the late 1590s when its role was partially replaced by Elizabeth Castle, at St Helier. It was subsequently used as a military garrison into the nineteenth century and then fell into disrepair. By 1907, when ownership was transferred from the Crown to the States of Jersey, it had become a historic monument open to the public and, with only the German occupation intervening in the 1940s, it has served as a heritage asset and tourist attraction to the present day.

Mont Orgueil has been the subject of numerous schemes of repair and restoration in the past and, following the transfer of its management to the Jersey Heritage Trust in January 1997, a major programme of investigation and refurbishment, costing £4.45m, was completed in April 2006. This included the provision of roofing and floors to the Tudor keep; improved access and interpretation; and the positioning of some thirty pieces of commissioned artwork and sculpture, all inspired by the castle, in and around the buildings.

Whilst these latest improvements are seen as providing an immediate sustainable future for the property, following years of decline, the Jersey Heritage Trust recognises that there are still some areas of the castle that are in need of repair and presentation. It is also aware that changes in tourism patterns to Mont Orgueil and to Jersey in general could adversely affect the number of paying visitors to the site and hence its long term ability to survive as a sustainable heritage asset.

Although it has no immediate plans to undertake any further refurbishment works, other than general maintenance, the Jersey Heritage Trust recognises that they may be desirable in the not too distant future in order to improve access to the site and to provide facilities for the widest possible range of compatible uses, and thereby maintain, and if possible increase, visitor numbers to ensure that it remains a sustainable heritage asset to the people of Jersey and visitors to the island.

In advance of any new proposals for the castle, the Trust has commissioned this Conservation Plan in order to inform and advise future decisions concerning its alteration and use.

The document adheres to the principles adopted in the United Kingdom for the production of Conservation Plans by the Heritage Lottery Fund and statutory authorities, and firstly identifies the various natural and man-made elements which comprise the property known as Mont Orgueil and sets out what is significant about them (*Part One*).

For the purposes of this document, significance is defined as the wide-ranging values that local people and visitors to the island of Jersey place on Mont Orgueil as a heritage asset.

The Conservation Plan establishes that Mont Orgueil is of outstanding significance :

- as a fortification which played an important role in the changing political and strategic military history of the island over a period of 700 years;
- as a place designated by the States of Jersey as a Site of Special Interest;
- as an area of special architectural, historic, and landscape value whose appearance is given a high priority in the 2002 *Island Plan* by its inclusion in a candidate list of only four places with a potential for designation as a Conservation Area;
- as being built on a locally unique outcrop of dark red granite containing intruded seams of other igneous rocks, which are of geological interest;
- as containing evidence for settlement in the Iron Age and finds which indicate occupation in the vicinity in the Palaeolithic, Neolithic and Roman periods, providing a resource for archaeological research;
- as providing buried and visible historical evidence of changing circumstances and conditions of the castle, providing a unique resource for archaeological and architectural history research which complements written sources;
- as a wildlife habitat, particularly for the wall lizard and a range of flora and fauna, including several nationally endangered and nationally rare species;
- as a resource for education of people of all ages on a wide range of subjects, but including geology, history, architecture and ecology;
- as a resource for informal recreation and leisure, and an icon for Jersey tourism;
- as a resource for inspiration, particularly painting, drawing, sculpture, and photography;
- as a resource for celebration and nostalgia; and
- as a resource for entertainment and ceremony.

The Conservation Plan then suggests the ways in which these values may be vulnerable to change and indicates what policies are appropriate to enable that significance to be retained in its future use and development (*Part Two*).

The Conservation Plan is intended to assist in the management of change at Mont Orgueil. The policies contained within it have been adopted by the Jersey Heritage Trust. They will be reviewed on a regular basis to ensure compliance with changing circumstances or approaches to conservation and presentation, and they will be applied when new maintenance or management proposals are being considered.

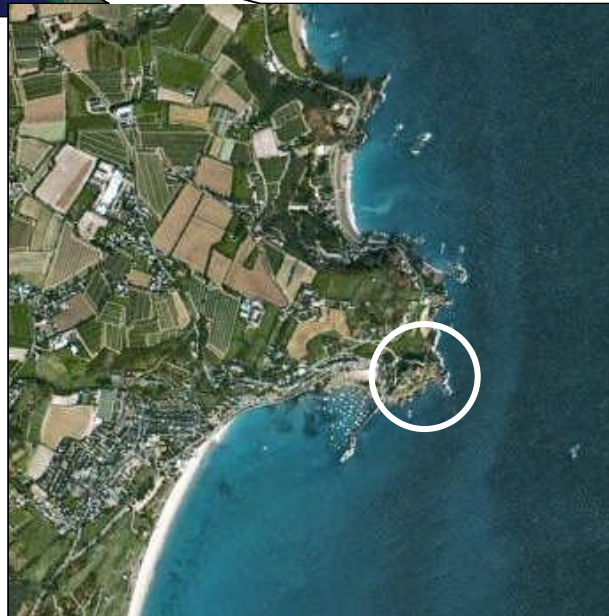


INTRODUCTION

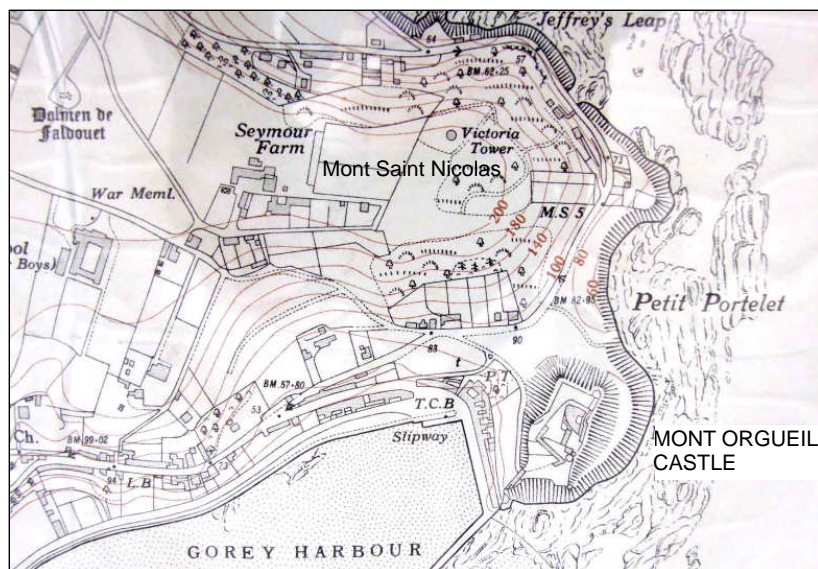
The castle of Mont Orgueil is located at the east end of the island of Jersey, between Gorey Harbour, to the south, and a small bay known as Petit Portelet, to the north, and directly facing the coast of France, some 25 kilometres (18 miles) to the east.



Satellite photographs, identifying the location of Mont Orgueil (circled).



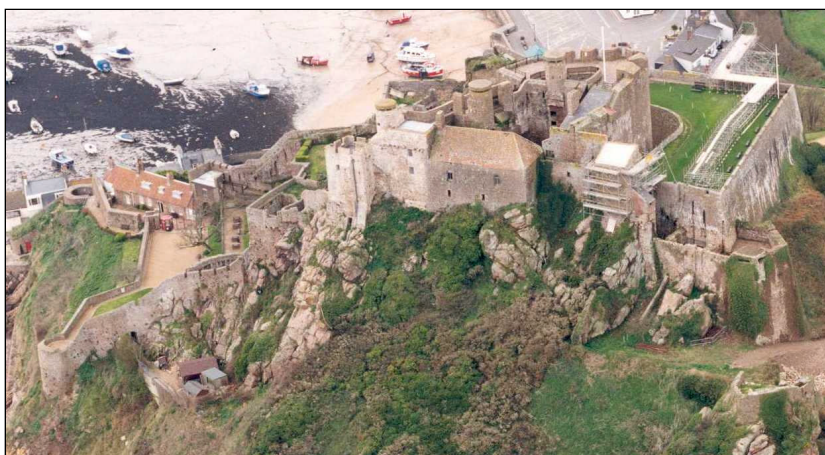
(below) Extract from the Ordnance Survey 1:5000 of 1934, showing the location of Mont Orgueil castle and Mont Saint Nicolas. Note that the contours are in feet and that the extract is not reproduced to scale.



The castle occupies a prominent outcrop of red granite which is partially overlooked on its north-west side by the end of a ridge of higher ground, known as Mont Saint Nicolas.



Mont Orgueil and Gorey Harbour, looking down from a point on the ridge west of Mont Saint Nicolas.



Aerial view of Mont Orgueil, from the east.

The earliest finds from the site are Palaeolithic and Neolithic flint implements and pieces of Neolithic pottery, which may indicate occupation on the rocky headland or in its vicinity at a very early date.

Excavations within the castle in the 1970s revealed the remains of a rampart which cut off the neck of land leading to the highest ground to form an Iron Age promontory fort belonging to the first millennium BC.

At least six Roman coins, dating to between AD72 and 307, have been found either in or near the castle and these suggest activity in the area at that time, though no structures of this period have yet been found on the site or in the locality.

There is no evidence to indicate the existence of any medieval fortification on the site prior to 1204, when Normandy was recovered from the English by France, and it is between this date and the first reference to a castle at Gorey in 1225 that work must have been commenced on the buildings.

The present buildings and the documentary evidence record a long history of construction, alteration, and refurbishment, firstly between 1204 and *circa* 1470, to provide a fortification for the protection of the island, the seat of the Governor, and some state buildings against attack and siege by hand-held and simple mechanical weapons, and especially in response to major attacks, such as those by the French in the 1380s.

It was subsequently refurbished to mount cannon and protect the island against attack by artillery fire, commencing in the 1460s. The biggest development of the castle followed the renewed tension with France inspired by Henry VIII, and between 1520 and 1600 a series of improvements were made by a succession of Governors. These included the construction of a new Tudor keep with a battery of guns on the top and a huge masonry-faced rampart, known as Grand Battery, that were both designed to repel artillery attacks from Mont Saint Nicolas which had previously dominated the castle.

Following the establishment of Elizabeth Castle in St Helier Bay, as the principal defence of the island, in the late 1590s Mont Orgueil was not abandoned but became an administrative centre and was refurbished again on several occasions and remained relatively intact until *circa* 1680.

It subsequently fell into a period disrepair but some works were undertaken. It was adapted firstly as a military garrison, then employed to supplement the defence of the island in the period 1778-1801 when the extensive series of round towers was built around the coast in response to concerns about French intentions, and in the period 1799-1810 as a residence for Admiral Philippe d'Auvergne, leader of the British naval defence of the Channel Islands against the French, who had declared war on England in 1793.

During the nineteenth century a military presence was maintained at a diminishing level and a few repairs were undertaken. The coast of Jersey was further protected by additional Martello towers during the Napoleonic wars and at the same time the defences on the south-east side of the castle were rebuilt following collapse of the cliff in 1801. Gorey Pier was built in 1821 and this was followed by some encroachment of buildings on the outer ward of the castle.

In 1837 an additional Martello tower was built on the summit of Mont Saint Nicolas, to prevent an enemy landing at St Ann Port, gaining access to the hill, and thereby posing a threat to Mont Orgueil.

By *circa* 1840 the central portion of the upper fortress is believed to have been abandoned and without a roof.

The castle had already attracted a large number of artists as a picturesque ruin. It had also become a tourist attraction and was visited by Queen Victoria in September 1846, by which time a tea and coffee room had been created alongside the gate into Lower Ward. The arrival of the Jersey Eastern Railway in 1872, linking St Helier with Gorey, attracted visitors to the castle and the introduction of photography increased the number of people using it as subject material.

In 1907 the castle was finally demilitarised and placed in the hands of the States of Jersey and its Public Works department as a historic monument.

Then followed a period of repair, restoration and presentation, complemented by research and study, which had already been commenced in the 1830s in an anonymous text which has for some time been attributed to Lieut.-Col John Oldfield (*Anon 1838*). Studies by Edmund Nicolle (1921) and by Major Norman Rybot (1933) followed, and these included the results of excavations undertaken between 1909 and the 1930s.

During the German occupation in the 1940s some alterations were made to the castle, for both defence and to provide accommodation, and a substantial concrete bunker was built alongside the Gorey Harbour.

After the Second World War maintenance was continued at a low level.

In the 1970s a series of excavations were undertaken in the Middle Ward of the castle, under the direction of Kenneth Barton (1984), and these revealed the rampart of an Iron Age promontory fort, and some Prehistoric pottery and flint implements, though these may be associated with soil introduced from elsewhere in the past.

In January 1997 responsibility for the castle was transferred to the Jersey Heritage Trust.



The Jersey Heritage Trust is an independent, not-for-profit organisation, which was founded in 1981. Its purpose is to care for Jersey's heritage and culture; to promote wide access to it; to act as advocates on its behalf; and bring imagination to telling its stories so that people can be inspired to create a better island for everyone.

The Trust manages the island's museums, archives, and important historic sites on behalf of all Islanders, and helps promote knowledge and understanding about culture and local distinctiveness of Jersey.

In its Review for 2004-2006, the Trust reported that in that period it had increased the number of sites that it managed from ten to eighteen, which include six of the Island's most significant visitor attractions, holiday accommodation, and sites managed for community use, and set out the following mission statement :

We promise that we will strive to find the best place for the past in the Island's future.

Prior to its transfer to the Trust, a condition audit had already been carried out on behalf of the Public Services Department in 1996, and the Jersey Heritage Trust immediately embarked upon a programme of research, investigation, and refurbishment at a cost of some £4.45m.

These works were completed in April 2006 and included the total refurbishment of the Tudor keep, with the provision of a roof and internal floors; improved access from Gorey Pier; a series of new interpretation boards on site; and the positioning of some thirty pieces of commissioned artwork and sculpture, all inspired by the castle and its associations, in and around the buildings.

The research and investigations associated with these works resulted in a better understanding of the history of the castle and the preparation of a series of reports and publications, which have included a full review of the documentary sources (*Dixon, Jones & Phillpotts 1998* and *Rushton 2001 & 2002*); a detailed study of the Tudor keep (*Rodwell 2001a & 2002a*); a Conservation Plan (*Dixon and Kennedy 2002a-d*); a new study of the history and architecture of Mont Orgueil (*Rodwell 2006a*); and a new souvenir guide book (*Ford 2007*).

PURPOSE OF THE CONSERVATION PLAN

Whilst these improvements are seen as providing an immediate sustainable future for the property, following years of decline, the Trust recognises that there are still some areas of the castle that are in need of repair and presentation, notably the north-east outworks. It is also aware that changes in tourism patterns could adversely affect the number of paying visitors to the site and hence its long term ability to survive as a sustainable heritage asset. Whilst visitor numbers over the past few years have been distorted by partial closure during refurbishment and then by re-opening with new attractions, the Trust is aware that there has been a reduction in day visitors from France, due to the re-location of the ferry terminal from Gorey to St Helier in the 1990s, and a reduction in the number of tourist visitors to the island in general, which have halved in the past ten to fifteen years.

Although it has no immediate plans to undertake any further refurbishment works, other than general maintenance, the Jersey Heritage Trust recognises that they may be desirable in the not too distant future in order to improve access to the site and to provide facilities for the widest possible range of compatible uses, and thereby maintain, and if possible increase, visitor numbers to ensure that it remains a sustainable heritage asset to the people of Jersey and visitors to the island.

In advance of any new proposals for the castle, the Trust has commissioned this Conservation Plan in order that it can operate within the existing legislative framework provide a policy document to inform and advise future decisions concerning its alteration and use.

OWNERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT

The entire area occupied by the castle, including Castle Green and the sloping ground between the houses fronting Gorey Harbour and the remnants of the Outer Ward, is owned by the States of Jersey and controlled on its behalf by the Technical Services Department (formerly Public Works).

Responsibility for the management of the castle, excluding Castle Green, was transferred to the Jersey Heritage Trust in January 1997 by *usufruct*. This gives the Trust the legal right to use and derive profit or benefit from the property, although it belongs to another party, as long as the property is not damaged.

STATUTORY AND POLICY FRAMEWORK

The principal local statutory controls over land use changes and development in Jersey, that might otherwise adversely affect the fabric, the setting, or the wildlife interests of Mont Orgueil are those exercised through the planning process. Jersey has, however, signed the Granada and Valetta Conventions and under European Union law the Island is legally bound to adhere to the policies agreed in 1985 and in 2001, which are essentially concerned with the statutory protection of the architectural heritage and the encouragement of interest in its value to the community. It also adheres to various international treaties and agreements concerning wildlife conservation.

The Island Plan

The *States of Jersey Island Plan* is the principal document in land-use planning in Jersey and the first consideration when making decisions on planning proposals. The original Plan was approved in 1987. It was subsequently reviewed and then adopted as the *Island Plan* in July 2002. It is currently under review.

The *Planning and Building (Jersey) Law 2002* came into force in July 2006.

Registered Historic Building

Mont Orgueil is included in the Island's *Register of Historic Buildings* which is maintained by the local planning authority (*Island Plan paras 4.40-4.42*). The most significant buildings on the Register are also designated Sites of Special Interest, as with Mont Orgueil, whilst the remainder are identified as Buildings of Local Interest.

The Register entry for Mont Orgueil (Reference No MN0181) reads as follows :

Castle, primarily Medieval and Tudor with later additions and modifications, which stands on a prehistoric site. The castle stands on the site of an Iron Age promontory fort with evidence of Neolithic activity. The castle itself was begun shortly after 1204. Significant parts of the medieval castle survive, particularly to the seaward side. The landward side was mostly remodelled in the Tudor period to sope with the development of artillery. Some 17th and 18th century additions. Defences constructed by German occupying forces including M17 Harbour Battery with MG position and Tobruk emplacement for tank turret. The adjacent castle green includes medieval earthworks which likely seal Neolithic and Iron Age material.

The relevant policy in the *Island Plan* reads as follows :

Policy G13 – Buildings and Places of architectural and Historic Interest

There will be a presumption in favour of the preservation of the architectural and historic character and integrity of registered buildings and places. Applications for the alteration or change of use of a registered building must contain sufficient information against which the impact on the fabric and appearance of the building can be assessed.

Permission will not normally be granted for the :

1. total or partial demolition of a registered building;
2. extension or other external alteration works which would adversely affect the architectural or historic interest, character or setting of a registered building or place;
3. addition of external items, including satellite dishes, antennae, signs, solar panels, rooflights and PVCu or aluminium doors or windows, which would adversely affect the special interest or character of the building; and
4. removal or natural roofing materials and render or stucco and their replacement with modern alternative materials.

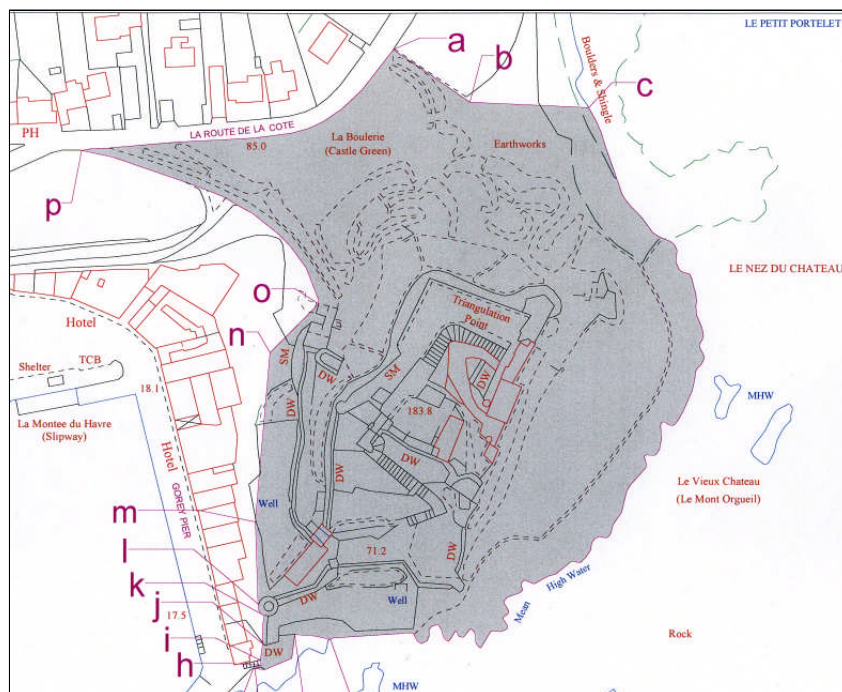
In addition, where the registered building is designated as a Site of Special Interest, permission will not be granted for alterations which would have an adverse impact on the internal structure, historic interiors and fittings.

Permission may be granted for partial demolition, but only for the removal of inappropriate additions to the building, where their removal would not harm, or would improve the historic character and appearance of the building or its setting.

Although it is a Registered Historic Building, its further designation as a Site of Special Interest in 2004 is superior and in practice supercedes the provisions of the previous designation (see below).

Site of Special Interest Mont Orgueil is one of a number of locations on the Island which has been identified as a *Site of Special Interest*, under the Planning and Building (Jersey) Law 2002, and was designated as such in July 2004.

The designated area includes both Castle Green and the steep slopes and rocky foreshore to the east of the castle.



Plan showing the extent of the Site of Special Interest (shown grey).
Not reproduced to scale.

Sites of Special Interest are defined as buildings and places of public importance by reason of special zoological or botanical interest; or the special archaeological, architectural, artistic, cultural, geological, historical, scientific or traditional interest (*Island Plan Section 6 paras 6.1-6.4 and Policy G11*). The policy reads as follows :

Policy G11 – Sites of Special Interest

Sites of Special Interest will be designated for protection in recognition of the importance of their:

- special zoological, ecological, botanical or geological interest; or
- special architectural, archaeological, artistic, historical, scientific, or traditional interest that attaches to a building or place.

Written guidance will be provided and advice offered on appropriate management and maintenance practices for Sites of Special Interest.

There will be a presumption against development that would have an adverse impact on the special character of a Site of Special Interest.

Where a proposed or designated Site of Special Interest is at risk of damage, and an agreement with the landowner or tenant to avoid such damage cannot be made, the Planning & Environment Department may use powers of acquisition to safeguard and manage the site as an alternative to its statutory powers.

Where land is voluntarily put up for sale the Planning & Environment Department may purchase proposed or designated Sites of Special Interest and manage them or enable other appropriate bodies to manage them. This will be subject to States' approval.

The essential criteria for the designation of an historic building as a Site of Special Interest is that its special interest extends substantially to its authentic fabric, plan form, interior features, or historical associations of the interior, ie it is not substantially confined to the exterior of the building and the contribution which it makes to the character or appearance of its townscape or landscape setting.

Conservation Areas

Gorey Village and Mont Orgueil and Gorey Pier were included amongst an initial candidate list of four potential Conservation Areas in the *Island Plan*.

It is understood that none of the proposed Conservation Areas have been formally designated and that there are no plans available indicating their proposed extents.

It has been suggested that Mont Orgueil may now be excluded from any Conservation Area or similarly designated area for Gorey Pier, as its status as a Site of Special Interest provides for greater protection for the site and its setting than would be provided for a Conservation Area.¹

¹ We are grateful to Janet Dore for this information

The relevant section and policy from the *2002 Island Plan* are reproduced here.

Conservation Areas are defined in the *Island Plan* as areas of special architectural or historic interest, within which the preservation or enhancement of the special character or appearance of the area is desirable and therefore a high priority. The Plan sets out the nature of the special character envisaged in designation and the balance that will be needed to protect their special characteristics whilst maintain their vitality and viability (*Island Plan paras 6.50-6.64*). The Plan proposed a process of appraisal prior to designation and the production of Conservation Area Management Plans for each one.

The relevant policy in the *Island Plan* reads as follows :

Policy BE9 – Conservation Areas.

Conservation Areas will be designated within the Plan period subject to a detailed appraisal of their conservation merits.

Once designated as a Conservation Area, the Planning & Environment Department will initiate the preparation of a Conservation Management Plan for each area to inform their long term conservation and enhancement.

Development within or affecting the setting of a Conservation Area will only be permitted where it would conserve or enhance the architectural or historic character or appearance of the Conservation Area.

Development proposals will be expected to be in accordance with all other principles and policies of the Plan and in particular should :

- **respect the historic context in scale, form and layout;**
- **use materials and colours that are appropriate and sympathetic to the site and its setting;**
- **protect boundary features such as trees, hedges, walls and railings that contribute to the special character of the area; and**
- **protect and enhance views into and out of the area.**

Developments that are likely to have a harmful impact on the character and appearance of a Conservation Area will not normally be permitted.

Archaeology

The *Island Plan 2002* recognised the importance of archaeological resources and set out a policy which was intended to protect them (*Island Plan paras 4.35-4.39 and Policy G12*). The policy reads as follows :

Policy G12 – Archaeological Resources

The Planning & Environment Department will normally require an archaeological evaluation to be carried out for development proposals which may affect archaeological remains.

Development which would adversely affect archaeological remains will normally only be permitted where the Planning & Environment Department is satisfied that the importance of the proposed development or other material considerations outweigh the value of the remains in question. In such cases, the Planning & Environment Department will require adequate provision to be made for the archaeological evaluation, investigation and recording of sites by the use of planning conditions and/or by the use of agreements prior to permission being granted.

For Sites of Special Interest, there will be a presumption in favour of the physical preservation in situ of archaeological remains and their settings.

In January 2007 the local planning authority issued a Supplementary Planning Guidance in the form of *Planning Policy Note 1 : Archaeology and Planning* to amplify that previous policy. It recognised the Register of Buildings and Sites of Architectural, Archaeological and Historic Importance, prepared and maintained by the Jersey Heritage Trust, and set a series of guiding principles for their protection as well as the following policies :

POLICY HE1 : PRESERVATION OF ARCHAEOLOGICAL RESOURCES

There will be a presumption in favour of the physical preservation *in situ* of archaeological remains and their settings.

Development which would involve significant alteration or cause damage, or which would have a significant impact on the setting of visible archaeological remains will normally only be permitted where the Minister for Planning and Environment is satisfied that the intrinsic importance of the remains is outweighed by other material considerations, including the need for the development.

POLICY HE2 : ARCHAEOLOGICAL EVALUATION

The Minister for Planning and Environment will normally require an archaeological evaluation to be carried out, to be provided by the developer, for development proposals which may affect archaeological remains: this information will be required as an integral part of the planning application.

The nature of archaeological evaluation may vary, depending upon the archaeological sensitivity and importance of the site and the extent of existing information. Any archaeological evaluation must provide sufficient information to enable the Minister for Planning and Environment to make an informed planning decision, having regard to the value of the archaeological remains and the likely impact of the proposed development.

Planning applications for development proposals which do not provide sufficient information to enable the value of the remains and the likely impact of the proposed development to be determined will normally be refused.

POLICY HE3 : ARCHAEOLOGICAL EXCAVATION AND RECORDING

Where it is determined that the physical preservation *in situ* of archaeological remains is not justified, the Minister will seek to ensure, through the use of planning obligation agreements and/or planning conditions, that the developer has made appropriate and satisfactory provision for the excavation and recording of the remains, for the publication of the findings and, in some cases the treatment and deposition of finds, before granting planning permission.

Ecology

The States of Jersey is committed to sustaining the Island's natural environment through the Convention on Biological Diversity framed at the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro in 1992. It has also signed up to various international treaties and conventions and these include the *Convention on Wetlands (RAMSAR)*; the *Bonn Convention (CMS)* on the conservation of migratory species of wild animals; the agreement on the *Conservation of Populations of European Bats (EUROBATS)*; and the *Bern Convention of European wildlife and natural habitats*.

One outcome of these is the *Biodiversity Strategy* prepared by the Island's Environmental Services Unit which sits alongside the *Island Plan* and is referred to in the policy contained in that document (*paras 5.27 and 5.28, and Policy C3*). The policy reads as follows :

POLICY C3 – BIODIVERSITY

In the interests of sustaining and enhancing biodiversity, the Planning & Environment Department will integrate the aims of the Biodiversity Strategy with the aims of enhancing landscape character and stewardship set out in the countryside and agricultural policies.

Other relevant policies in the *Island Plan* are C10 – applying to walls, fosses, banques, and hedgerows; G5 – applying to a requirement for the preparation of Environmental Impact Assessments; and G11 – as the zoological and botanical interests of the site are protected by its designation as a Site of Special Interest.

Other legislation affecting the ecology of Mont Orgueil includes the Conservation Wildlife (Jersey) Law 2000, as amended, which schedules animals and birds that are protected, and a draft list of protected plants has been prepared following discussion with the Department of Agriculture and Fisheries.

Draft Supplementary Planning Guidance on the Natural Environment builds on the policies of the *Island Plan* and provides more detailed guidance on the way in which policies are likely to be interpreted and applied.

It is known that the castle provides habitat for several plants included in the Red Data Book of species whose continued existence is threatened, and several nationally rare species of flora and fauna (see Section 1.0.9).

SCOPE OF THE CONSERVATION PLAN

The plan deals with the land and buildings known as Gorey Castle, Mont Orgueil or Mont Orgueil Castle and the approaches to them. From the 1st of January 1997 responsibility for the long-term operation, maintenance, and development of the property was passed by *usufruct* from the States of Jersey to the Jersey Heritage Trust. This means that whilst the Trust does not own it, it does have the legal right to use and derive profit or benefit from the property, as long as the property is not damaged by them.

Under the usufruct agreement the Trust is to :

- Maintain and restore the castle and develop public facilities and ensure its preservation for future generations;
- Manage the operation and ensure that the public will be able to visit and enjoy the castle at all reasonable times;
- Promote awareness and understanding of the history of the castle and encourage the community and visitors to the Island to share and discover its historical legacy; and
- Preserve the historical and archaeological integrity of the site for future generations.

A great deal of research has been undertaken on the property in the past ten years and most of this has been published. During this work a great deal of attention has been placed on the above and below ground fabric of the structure and we now have a much greater understanding of its history and development than was previously the case. A previous Conservation Plan, prepared in 2002, concentrated on these aspects of its significance (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a and 2002b*).

The Trust recognises not only that the castle cannot be divorced from its locality but also that interest in the property is very wide ranging in its nature. In commissioning this new Conservation Plan the Trust has requested that particular attention is paid to understanding all aspects of the site and to re-considering the significance of each part of it.

For the purpose of the plan, significance is defined as the whole range of values that local people and visitors to the island of Jersey place on Mont Orgueil as a heritage asset, and these are assessed in terms of the cultural, natural, social, and, to a lesser extent, economic contribution that the property makes to the community.

In order to achieve this the document adheres to the principles first set out by James Semple Kerr in 1982, in his guidelines for the preparation of Conservation Plans for places of European Cultural Significance and subsequent revisions of that document produced for the National Trust of Australia down to 1996. The methodology was adopted in 1998 by the UK's Heritage Lottery Fund, for all applications relating to historic places, and it has been recommended for use by all owners of historic properties by *English Heritage*, *Historic Scotland*, and their counterpart in Wales – *Cadw*.

The Jersey Heritage Trust is currently preparing the policy section of a Conservation Plan for Elizabeth Castle and has produced conservation statements – an abbreviated form of Conservation Plan, for a number of other properties in its care.

In its simplest form this Conservation Plan is a document which firstly identifies the various natural and man-made elements which comprise the property known as Mont Orgueil and sets out what is significant about them (*Part One*). Since a great deal has already been written about the property, the history and the descriptions of the various elements are summary accounts, cross-referenced wherever possible to other works, and it is not the primary purpose of the plan to attempt to resolve differing views about dates of construction and function.

The Conservation Plan then suggests the ways in which these values may be vulnerable to change and indicates what policies are appropriate to enable that significance to be retained in its future use and development (*Part Two*).

The Conservation Plan has no legal status, but it is intended as a policy document to assist the Jersey Heritage Trust in its management of change at Mont Orgueil, by preserving what is significant but allowing the property to develop as a sustainable heritage asset whilst at the same time meeting the future needs of the community and their aspirations. However, it recognises the need to comply with all the relevant legislation (see *Part Two*).

LIMITATIONS

There have been no particular limits placed on the production and content of the Conservation Plan. Its volume has been reduced by including summary accounts, where appropriate, and by cross-referencing to other published and unpublished works, where these are readily available

No new archival research has been undertaken, other than by reviewing the material available locally in Jersey, though a great deal of documentary research has been undertaken in the recent past and this has been published since the late 1990s (notably by *Dixon, Jones & Phillpotts 1998*; *Rushton 2001*; and *Rushton 2002* – see references and bibliography).

PREPARATION

The preparation of the Conservation Plan has been undertaken by Fred Aldsworth BA FSA MIFA IHBC, Archaeologist and Heritage Consultant, of 124 Whyke Road, Chichester, West Sussex PO19 8JG Telephone 01243 782904 e-mail aldsworthfred@hotmail.com.

Fred was a member of the team from The Conservation Practice which undertook the preparation of Condition Audits for Mont Orgueil and Elizabeth Castle in 1996, on behalf of the Public Services Department, States of Jersey, and in 2006 he prepared Part One of a Conservation Plan for Elizabeth Castle, which is available on the Jersey Heritage Trust website.

CONSULTATIONS

Discussions were held with a number of people during the preparation of the Conservation Plan and the author would particularly like to thank the following individuals and organisations for their contributions and help :

Jonathan Carter – Jersey Heritage Trust (director)
John de Veuille – Jersey Heritage Trust (trustee)
Roger Hills – Jersey Heritage Trust (buildings manager)
Anthony Gibb – Jersey Heritage Trust (project manager)
John Williams – Jersey Heritage Trust (architect)
Doug Ford – Jersey Heritage Trust
Joe Mitchell – Jersey Heritage Trust (property gardien)
Bronwen Garth-Thornton – Jersey Heritage Trust
Ann Morin – Jersey Heritage Trust

John Mesch – Council for the Protection of Jersey's Heritage
Richard Le Sueur – National Trust for Jersey
John Clarke – Archaeology Section, Société Jersiaise
Margaret Finlaison - Archaeology Section, Société Jersiaise
Professor Colin Platt – Friends of Mont Orgueil
Dr Warwick Rodwell – Archaeologist and Architectural Historian
Mike Freeman – Planning & Environment Department, States of Jersey
Janet Dore - Planning & Environment Department, States of Jersey
Michael Ginns – Channel Islands Occupation Society

The Jersey Archives
The Société Jersiaise

ADOPTION

Drafts of the document were circulated and commented on at various stages during their production and the document was approved by the Board of Trustees of The Jersey Heritage Trust at a meeting held on the 22nd May 2008.

STRUCTURE OF THE PLAN

The structure of the Conservation Plan for Mont Orgueil is in line with the guidelines issued by the *Heritage Lottery Fund* in March 1998 in the booklet entitled *Conservation Plans for Historic Places*, which was itself guided by the original concept by James Semple-Kerr.

Part One of the document deals with Understanding the Site in all its aspects and assessing the significance of the castle as a whole and elements of it.

It is not the purpose of the *Plan* to provide a definitive history or description of Mont Orgueil, but it does include an extensive list of references and it is the intention to include sufficient information to provide the basis for an assessment of significance or heritage merit for the site.

The first section considers the geology and topography of the site on which the castle was built (*Section 1.0.1*) whilst the next section reviews the evidence for settlement and occupation prior to the medieval period (*Section 1.0.2*). The next five sections trace the history of Mont Orgueil as a medieval castle (*1.0.3*); as an artillery fortress (*1.0.4*); as an administrative centre (*1.0.5*); as a military garrison and residence (*1.0.6*); and finally as a historic monument and tourist attraction, interrupted by German occupation during the Second World War (*1.0.7*). The next section is a description of the castle in the form of an illustrated gazetteer (*1.0.8*), whilst the final two sections consider its value as a wildlife habitat (*1.0.9*) and the various uses for which it is valued by the community (*1.0.10*).

A historical overview considers the intrinsic value of Mont Orgueil to the community (*1.1*) and this is followed by an assessment of the castle's broader significance in the context of Jersey and the Channel Islands in general (*1.2*). These are followed by a Statement of Significance (*1.2.1*) and observations relating to assessment of significance of individual elements, which for the purposes of brevity are included in the description (*1.2.2*).

Part Two of the Plan is concerned with conservation policy and commences with an introduction (2.1). It then describes the ways in which the various areas of significance of Mont Orgueil are or may be vulnerable to damage during programmes of repair, restoration, and adaptation (2.2) and considers the various issues that are brought out by a consideration of the need to preserve the historical integrity of the site, whilst at the same time as maintaining and developing it as a sustainable heritage asset (2.3).

The Plan then sets out a series of Conservation Plan Policies which, if adopted, would either remove or substantially reduce the threats posed to the historical integrity of the site during repair and adaptation (2.4). Finally in this part of the Plan there is a statement by the Jersey Heritage Trust indicating how they intend to conduct an implementation and review of the policies in the Plan (2.5).

At the end of the Plan there is the supporting information. This comprises an extensive, but perhaps not exhaustive, *references and bibliography*, and appendices referring to relevant archival sources held in Jersey.



PART ONE : SIGNIFICANCE

1.0 UNDERSTANDING THE SITE

INTRODUCTION

It is the intention here not to attempt a full account of the history of the castle and its owners and occupiers, but to highlight events and activities that have moulded its present form; contributed to the political and military histories of the Jersey and the Channel Islands; and influenced the lives of residents and visitors to the island down to the present day.

Following an account of the geology and topography that resulted in a natural promontory of land that was suitable for defence (1.0.1), there is a description of the evidence for settlement and occupation on and in the vicinity of the site in the Prehistoric and Roman periods (1.0.2).

There then follows a history of the castle from its origins in the early thirteen century down to its abandonment by the military in 1907, which for the purposes of the Conservation Plan has been divided into four stages – the medieval castle (*circa* 1204-*circa* 1470 AD – 1.0.3); the artillery fortress (*circa* 1470-1593 – 1.0.4); the administrative centre, prison, and part-time residence for the Island (1593-1680 – 1.0.5); and the military garrison (1680-1907 – 1.0.6). This is followed by an account of its role as a historic monument and heritage attraction down to the present day, interrupted by the German occupation during the Second World War (1907-2007 – 1.0.7).

These are followed by a description of the castle as it is today, which is broken down into the form of a gazetteer with elements grouped within the four Wards that comprise the basic ground plan of the property – the Upper Ward or Keep, the Middle Ward, the Lower Ward, and the Outer Ward (1.0.8). There is then an account of the role of the castle as a wildlife habitat (1.0.9) and a description of the ways in which the property is used today by the local community and visitors to the island (1.0.10).

SOURCES

The version of the history provided here is based on the early published accounts attributed to Lieut-Col John Oldfield (*Anon* 1838); by Edmund Nicolle (1921 – especially pages 1-95); and by Major Norman Rybot (1933 – especially pages 5-9, 47-59 and 62-77).

These are supplemented by the results of more recent investigations and research by Howard Colvin (1963); Howard Colvin & John Summerson (1982); Kenneth Barton (1984); Philip Dixon (1997); Warwick Rodwell (1997, 2001a, 2001b, 2002a, 2002b, 2006a, and 2006b); Philip Dixon, Michael Jones & Christopher Philpotts (1998); Neil Rushton (2001 & 2002); Philip Dixon & Jane Kennedy (2002a and 2002b); John McCormack (2006); and Doug Ford (2007).

The documentary evidence or parts of it have been reviewed and interpreted variously by Professor Colin Platt (2001, 2002, 2003a, 2003b, 2004a, 2004b, 2005, 2006a, and 2006b); Tim Myres (2001a, 2001b, 2001c, and 2002); Tim Myres and Neil Molyneux (2001a, 2001b, 2002a, and 2002b); Neil Rushton (2002 and 2003); John McCormack (2002); and Colin Platt and Rosemary Mesch (2005).

The only primary sources consulted during the preparation of the Conservation Plan have been Richard Popinjay's plan of Jersey, held at the British Library, and plans, drawings, and photographs held either as originals or as copies in Jersey.

Not all the research undertaken on the castle has been published, but it is understood that a final report of his investigations in the Keep by Dr Warwick Rodwell is envisaged.

What is evident from the material available at the time of preparation of the Plan is that there is some disagreement between interpretations of the sequence of construction, particularly of the works undertaken in the sixteenth century; the precise dates when alterations and additions took place; the persons responsible for those works; and the functions of elements of the property at different times during its occupation.

It is not the intention of the Conservation Plan to attempt to reconcile these differing views, as many of them are not especially relevant to the day-to-day management of the property and its development as a visitor attraction. However, the Conservation Plan recognises that these differing views exist and acknowledges that the problem arises from the absence of dates for many of the elements, particularly the early ones, and the fact that these have to be interpolated from the few precise dates that actually exist; from associations with particular Governors or those responsible for building operations; by interpreting structures, many of which have been altered on many occasions and are now only partially intact; and by analogy with similar structures elsewhere.

The two disciplines involved in historical research at Mont Orgueil are for the most part complementary in their contributions that they can make to achieving a full understanding of the origins and development of the castle.

Archival research - based on the study of written and printed sources, maps and plans, and illustrative material, provides sound dates, associations with individuals, sometimes function, and may provide reasons for construction. The documentary sources need to be transcribed and translated and, given that some of the Mont Orgueil material is written in old French, interpretations of the true meaning may be difficult to comprehend. The main difficulty with the written sources is that there are very few instances where references can be linked to specific, identifiable structures in order to provide a secure framework on which the development of the castle can be hung.

Architectural history and Archaeology – the study of the standing fabric and the buried remains, can provide a good understanding of the form of the structures; the alterations that have been made to them; their functions; and, in certain situations, their relationship with adjacent structures. As with the archival research, the evidence needs to be extracted from the sources, in this case the fabric of the building, which may involve excavation or detailed recording of the standing structures.

Precise dates can usually only be obtained where, as in the case of Cornish Bastion, Mount Gate, and Fourth Gate, they are provided by dated inscriptions in the fabric or can be provided by dendrochronology, but the latter has not been possible at Mont Orgueil. Approximate dates can be inferred by associations with particular individuals who might, for example, be represented by their shields of arms, or by analogy with dateable structures elsewhere.

In the case of Mont Orgueil the two sources of information are protected - most of the archival material being deposited at the British Library, at the National Archives, or at Hatfield House, Hertfordshire, whilst the fabric of the building is not under threat. Hence, both sources of information remain available for future research.

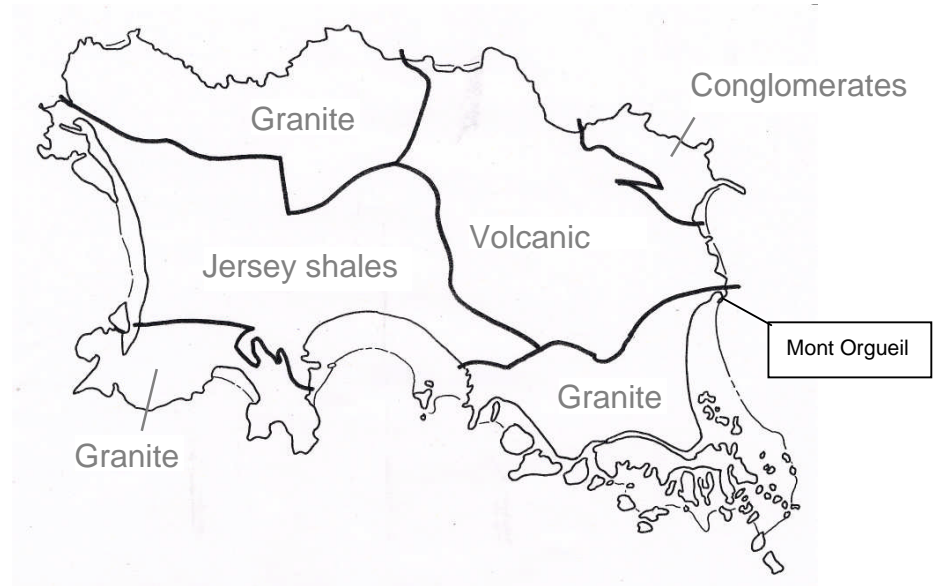
The two sources of information are for the most part accurate records of the past. The challenge for the historian, the architectural historian, and the archaeologist is to firstly read them and then, as far as is possible, correlate one with the other. It needs to be borne in mind, however, that it may not be possible to resolve all apparent contradictions and it may not be possible to answer all questions. However, interpretations of the evidence need to be interdisciplinary and should include all the material available, whether or not it appears to fit with an overall pattern.

The most reliable answers to questions asked of the sources are likely to be those that best fit all the available evidence; involve the least amount of speculation; and require the fewest assumptions to be made.

For the purposes of the Plan, it is assumed that the precise dates given on buildings and the published sequence of construction, for example of Mount Gate and the Tudor Keep, are correct. The Jersey Heritage Trust's published interpretations are, therefore, mostly adopted, but the Plan recognises where differing views have been expressed and suggests areas for further research.

1.0.1 GEOLOGY AND TOPOGRAPHY

In geological terms, the island of Jersey is a northward extension of Brittany and is described as a 'dissected plateau' composed of four types of rock, which in order of deposition are – the Jersey shale formation, volcanic rock, gabbro/granite, and conglomerates.



Simplified map, showing the divisions between the four principal rock types of Jersey.

The *shales*, which lie across the centre and western parts of the island, are sedimentary deposits of mudstone, siltstone, and sandstone which have been folded four times, but dip generally about 30 degrees to the south-east and have been eroded by the sea in St Ouen's Bay, to the west, and St Aubin's Bay, on the south coast.

The *volcanic rocks*, which run in a band diagonally north-west to south-east from the north coast to the east coast, include the tuffs, ignimbrite, but mostly rhyolite.

The *granite* intrusions, which occur in the north-west, south-west and south-east, and include the outcrops on which Mont Orgueil has been built, contain a high proportion of pink feldspars, making them a valuable source of building stone both on the island and elsewhere, such as the London Embankment. There are also small outcrops of *gabbro*, which occur as *diorite*, on the north and south-east coasts.

Finally, the north-east corner of the island is covered by an area of *conglomerates*.

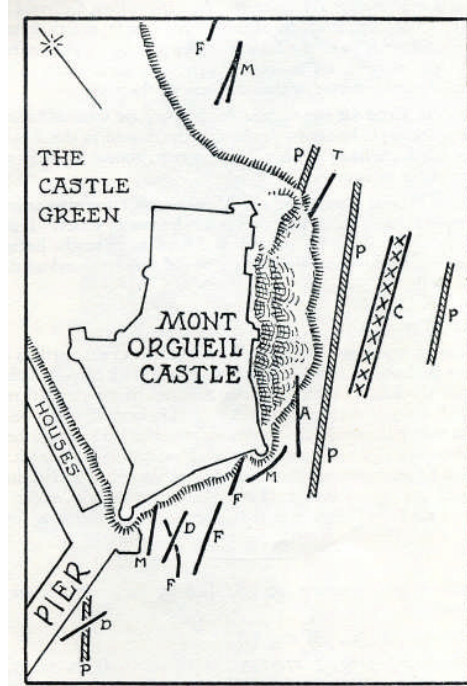
In view of the extensive outcrops of *granite*, it is not surprising to find this as the predominant building stone used at Mont Orgueil. It is used in a variety of forms, including random rubble stonework, regular coursing, for forming openings, and as large quoins, and also in a variety of colours, from near white through a range of greys to near black, and from pink to purple.

The geology of the Mont Orgueil promontory was described and illustrated in 1933 by Dr A E Maurant (*Rybot 1933: 78-80 and Figure 58*). It consists of dark red granite which, apart from the foreshore for about a quarter of a mile to the south, is the only place on Jersey where this precise type is found. The Faldouet Dolmen, half a mile to the north-west, is built, with the exception of the great capstone, of Mont Orgueil granite so the outcrop must have been exploited as a stone quarry as early as the Neolithic period. Further study of the outcrop, both as visible on the surface and buried beneath the castle might throw light on the extent of this activity.

The granite contains seams of other igneous rocks, which were intruded in a molten state along cracks in the previously solidified granite, and these are described by Maurant and indicated on his plan.

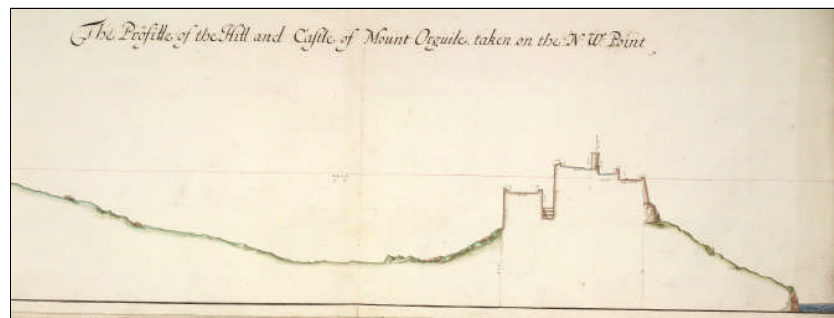
Maurant's sketch map illustrating the geology of the Mont Orgueil promontory.

- Reference
- A Aplite
 - C Quartz porphyry with dolerite margins
 - D Dolerite newer than porphyry
 - F Flow-banded granophyre
 - M Mica trap
 - P Quartz porphyry
 - T Spotted granophyre

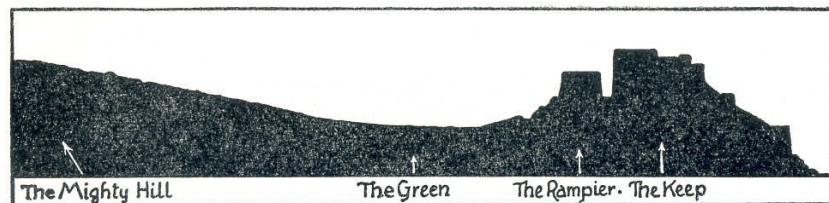


The low ground between the Mont Orgueil and Mont Saint Nicolas, to the north, is covered with Head – a rock-debris mixed with clay laid down during the Ice Ages. This is overlaid by Loess – a stoneless yellow clay, blown into place as dust during an arid phase of the Glacial Period, and this has a covering of wind-blown sand which is of more recent origin and now forms the sandy soil of Castle Green.

It has long been recognised that the medieval castle was overlooked by the hill known as Mont Saint Nicolas, to the north – referred to by Norman Rybot as 'The Mighty Hill' (Rybot 1933 : 9 and Figure 3), and the potential for artillery bombardment from this location was addressed in the sixteenth century by the construction within the castle of the tall rounded, bastion known as the Somerset Tower, with Mount Battery erected on the top, and then the great masonry-faced rampart known as Grand Battery. Enemy access to Mont Saint Nicolas was denied in the nineteenth century by the construction in 1837 of Victoria Tower, just below its summit on the north side.

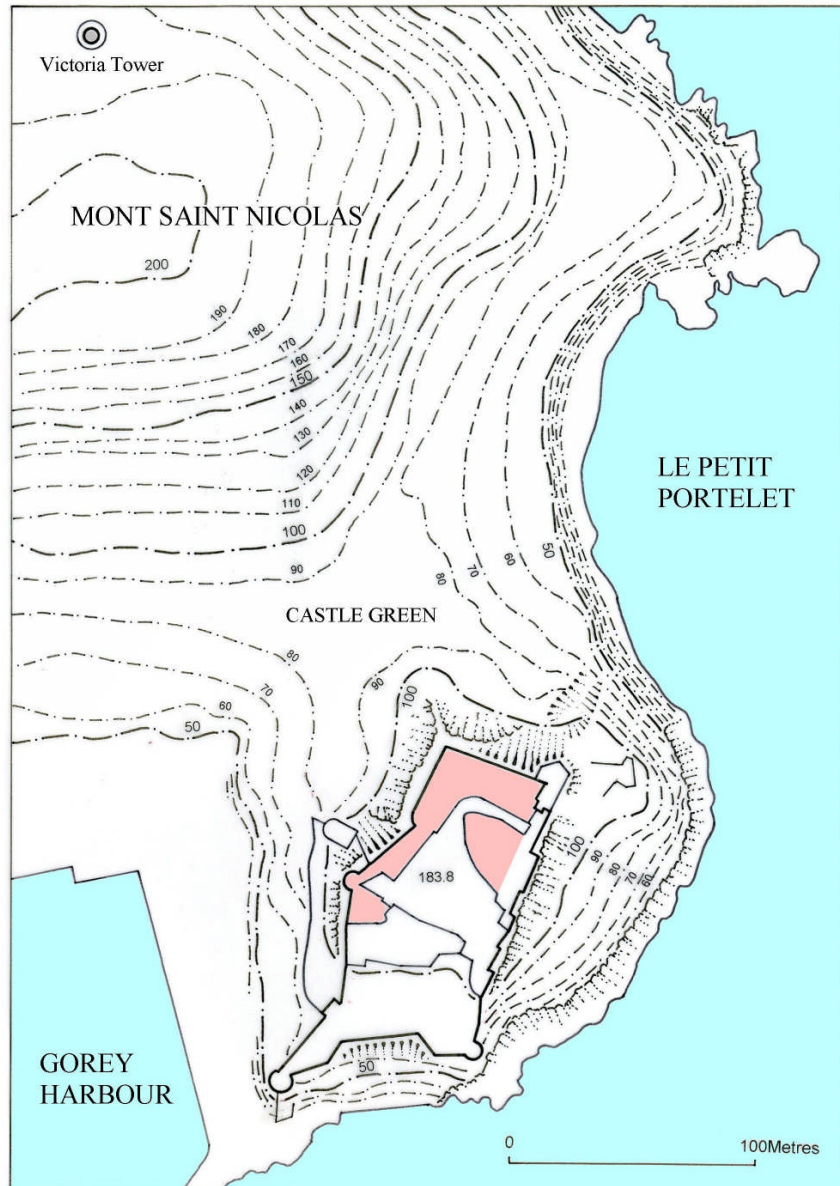


A drawing produced by Thomas Phillips in 1680, showing the relationship between Mont Saint Nicolas, to the left, and Mont Orgueil, to the right.



Norman Rybot's profile, showing the same relationship.

Whilst the topography of the general environs of Mont Orgueil can be determined with some degree of accuracy from the cartographic evidence, the precise form of the outcrop on which the castle was built remains in some doubt, due to quarrying which appears to have taken place from the Neolithic period, for example to supply the stone for the Faldouet Dolmen to the north-west; by works which may have been undertaken in the Iron Age to create the promontory fort; by the substantial shaping of the natural outcrop to facilitate construction of the castle; by the deposition of large amounts of rubble and soil in the sixteenth century to create the Tudor keep, Grand Battery, and Sir John Peyton's Bastion; by the creation of Gorey Harbour and pier in the nineteenth century; and by some natural erosion around the periphery of the natural outcrop.



*The topographical location of Mont Orgueil, showing the areas of the castle where substantial amounts of rubble and soil have been deposited to raise the natural ground levels (coloured pink).
The contours are in feet.*

The natural outcrop of granite on which the castle was built projects out into the sea, between the small bay known as Le Petit Portelet, to the north, and the much larger bay to the south, known as Grouville Bay, the northern extremity of which was adapted as Gorey Harbour in the nineteenth century.

Mont Saint Nicolas, to the north, rises to a little of 200 feet above sea level at its highest point. To the south of this is a saddle of lower ground between the two bays, now known as Castle Green, which falls to about 85 feet above sea level, before the ground rises again to the highest point on the rocky outcrop on which Mont Orgueil was built.



Aerial view of Mont Orgueil, from the north-east, at relatively low tide. The bay know as Le Petit Portelet is to the right whilst Gorey Harbour can be seen top left.



Aerial view of Mont Orgueil from the south-east, with the partially wooded Mont Saint Nicolas and Victoria Tower visible in the middle distance.

The highest part of the rocky outcrop on which the castle was built is believed to have been a ridge along its north-east side, where the earliest of the surviving structures – the medieval Great Hall, was built at the beginning of the thirteenth century, and along which, to the north and south, the North-East Passage and Tower, the Square Keep Tower, and Prynne's Tower were erected shortly afterwards. The ground then falls away on all four sides, most steeply on the east side where there is a cliff and then steeply sloping ground down to a sea cliff.



Mont Orgueil from the east, with the oldest buildings of the castle on the highest point of the rocky outcrop in the centre.

Within the area enclosed by the castle walls the ground levels have been much altered through time, and one of the few areas where the original surface, or something very close to it, survives is on the south side of Middle Ward where the remnant of the footings of an Iron Age rampart were uncovered, at about 183 feet above sea level, in excavations in the 1970s (*Barton 1984*). To the south of the rampart the ground is likely to have fallen away quite steeply, perhaps initially in the form of a cliff which extended on all sides of the Iron Age promontory fort, and then as sloping ground sloping quite steeply to the sea, at what is now Gorey Pier, which was later terraced and adapted as Lower Ward.



View of the castle from the south, with Lower ward in the foreground.

On the north and east sides the natural lie of the land was altered when the Tudor Keep, Somerset Tower, and the Grand Battery were erected in the sixteenth century. Before this an approach could be made to the outermost gate and the foot of a short cliff and the curtain walls across the gently sloping ground of Castle Green.

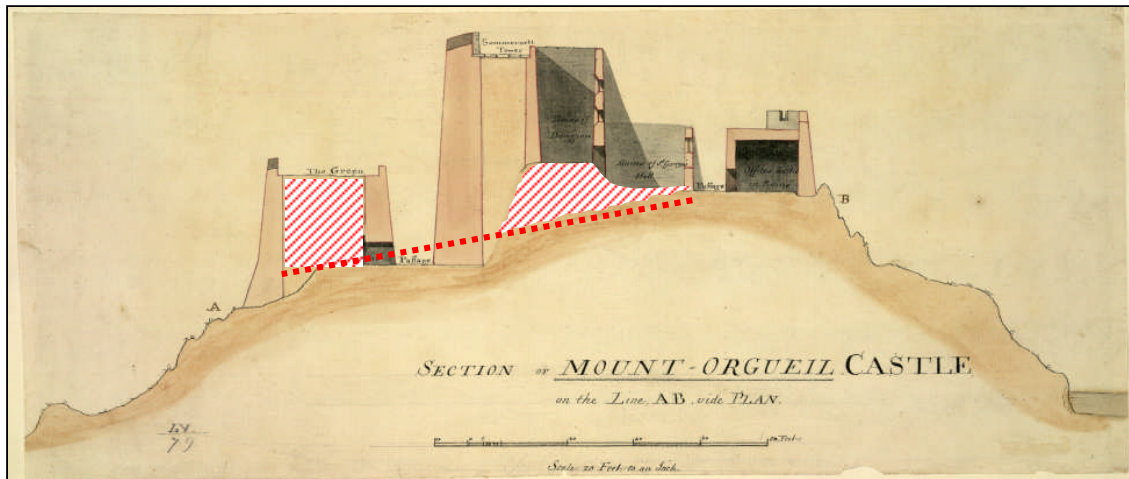
Excavations within the Tudor keep in the 1990s indicate that it was built on ground which sloped down to the west, the footings of the wall between the hall and the so-called D-shaped chamber having been dug through 12 feet of fill.

The creation of the Grand Battery involved the construction of a tall curtain wall encircling the north and west sides of Upper Ward; the erection of an inner retaining wall to the north and west of the Tudor keep; and the infilling of the void between them with large quantities of rubble and soil to form a huge protective rampart.



The curtain walls of Grand Battery, from Castle Green.

Several attempts have been made in the past to produce cross-section drawings through the castle and that produced in 1755, to accompany a plan of that date, can now be adjusted to take account of the information revealed in the keep in the 1990s.



The 1755 section through the castle from west to east, showing (dotted red) the approximate ground level prior to the construction of the Tudor keep, Somerset Tower, and Grand Battery, and (hatched red) the extent of fill associated with their construction.

By utilising the existing topographical information available for the castle and all the past observations from excavations, it might be possible to begin to re-establish the form of the ground prior to the construction of the castle and, hence, the extent to which previous and early occupation layers may survive.

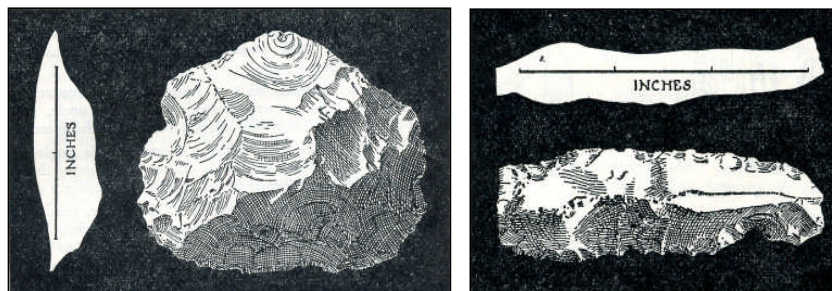
1.0.2 ARCHAEOLOGY

The purpose of this section of the Conservation Plan is to review the evidence for settlement and occupation on and around the site prior to the construction of the medieval castle.¹

The first indications that the site had been occupied at an earlier date were discoveries made by Norman Rybot during excavations at the north-western side of the castle, outside the curtain wall of Grand Battery (Rybot 1950).

PALAEOLITHIC

Two flint implements found by Rybot in the loess clay, which makes up much of Castle Green, are likely to be Palaeolithic in date.



The two flint implements illustrated by Rybot 1933 Figures 46 & 47.

The castle collection contains a considerable quantity of waste material, essentially cores and flakes, as well as some complete implements, and these appear to mostly derive from investigations by Norman Rybot in the 1930s and 1940s in the loess deposits of the last glacial period. A fine handaxe was found in the raised beach and loess levels of the small bay to the north-west of the castle, and waste flakes have been found from time to time during work on the castle and on Castle Green.

Palaeolithic handaxes have been found at a number of other cliff positions around the island, where glacial loess is exposed, and the finds in the vicinity of Mont Orgueil are seen as occupation of a vantage point by hunters watching animal herds as they moved across the then open plains of what is now the channel.

No evidence for occupation or activity during the Mesolithic period has yet been uncovered, however, further evidence for prehistoric occupation was revealed by excavations in Middle Ward in the 1970s, when some Neolithic worked flints and pottery were found, associated with dark earth and burning, and the remains were also found of an Iron Age rampart (Cunliffe B and Bradley R in *Barton 1984* : 230-240).

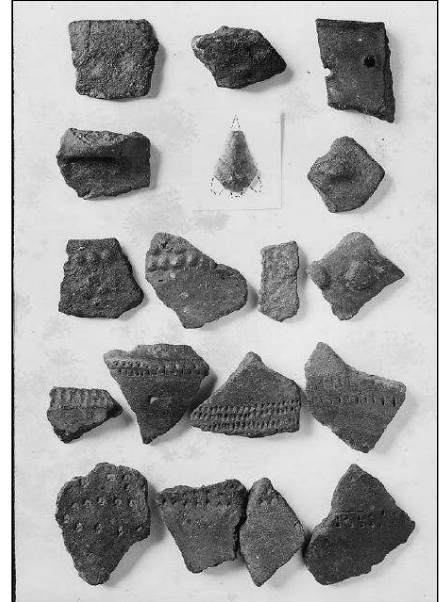
¹ We are grateful to Margaret Finlaison for contributions to the prehistoric elements of this section of the Conservation Plan.

NEOLITHIC

According to the published account, none of the layers containing Neolithic material found so far have been sealed, and Philip Dixon has suggested that the material may have been introduced from elsewhere during earthmoving operations associated with the refurbishment of the castle in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries (*Dixon & Kennedy 2000a*: 12-13). However, Margaret Finlaison, who was site supervisor during the excavations in 1973, believes that undisturbed Neolithic deposits survived below the stratified Iron Age levels.

The flintwork comprises a range of tools, including twelve arrowheads, a knife, scrapers, and burins, as well as cores, flakes, and blades, covering the entire range of the Neolithic, possibly deriving from a strong indigenous Mesolithic influence, through to the later Neolithic or earliest Bronze Age of the Channel Islands.

Prehistoric pottery and a flint arrowhead from Mont Orgueil.



It has been suggested that the best comparative material comes from Megalithic tombs and although it is tempting to suggest, in the absence of a mound over the nearby Dolmen of Faldouet, that some of the material may have been derived either from this site or from a settlement associated with it, the pottery from Mont Orgueil is now considered to be earlier than the Dolmen or any occupation associated with it by as much as one thousand years.

The pottery found during the excavations was said, in 1984, to be without parallel in the Channel Islands, the only other substantial group of Neolithic material from an occupation site on Jersey being from the other end of the island at Pinnacle, from which a date of *circa* 3070 bc has been obtained. More recently the material has been compared with a site at Fouaillages, on Guernsey, and with others in Normandy and in the Paris Basin (for sub references see *Dixon & Kennedy 2002a*: 12).

The pottery and flint found in the 1940s and 1970s is now considered subtly different from the other two early Neolithic Channel Island sites – Le Pinnacle, in Jersey, and Les Fouaillages, in Geurnsey. It is considered closer in design to the Cerny Style of Northern France, whilst the other two show the emergence of a distinctive local style, although still with close similarities to the French pottery.

The rarity of sites of this period in northern and western France makes the deposits containing Neolithic material at Mont Orgueil of considerable archaeological significance even if, as seems possible, they may derive from elsewhere in the vicinity. There is a strong possibility that this activity at Mont Orgueil is the earliest Neolithic evidence so far uncovered in this area, which once formed part of the mainland now called France.

The only evidence for later Neolithic activity on the site during the period between six thousand and four thousand before present, is the use of the red granite outcrop as a quarry for the construction of the nearby Dolmen of Faldouet, at a time when the island's other great megalithic monuments were also built and used, as well as the discovery of a single arrowhead, perhaps lost during hunting, and a small axe-shaped pendant of imported Jadeite.



The Dolmen at Faldouet.

It is important that any surviving deposits containing evidence for Palaeolithic, Mesolithic, or Neolithic occupation or early quarrying activities are protected to allow for future investigation.

IRON AGE

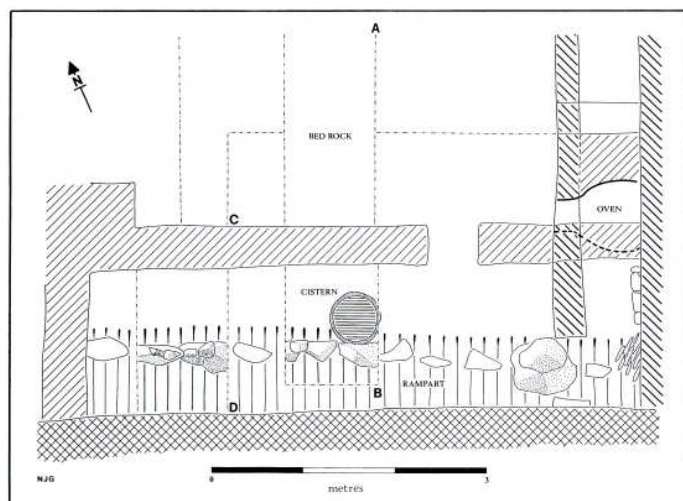
No pottery distinctive of the Bronze Age or of the early Iron Age has yet been found at Mont Orgueil.

The wall of water-washed boulders revetting a mound of sand and soil, identified in 1973, was associated with an area of occupation, comprising at least four hearths and containing late Pre-Roman Iron Age pottery immediately behind, north of, it (*Barton 1984* : 230-232 Figure 3). It is believed to represent the footing of a rampart forming the southern defences of a promontory hillfort extending around the summit of the rocky outcrop, which may have been subdivided internally. (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 13).

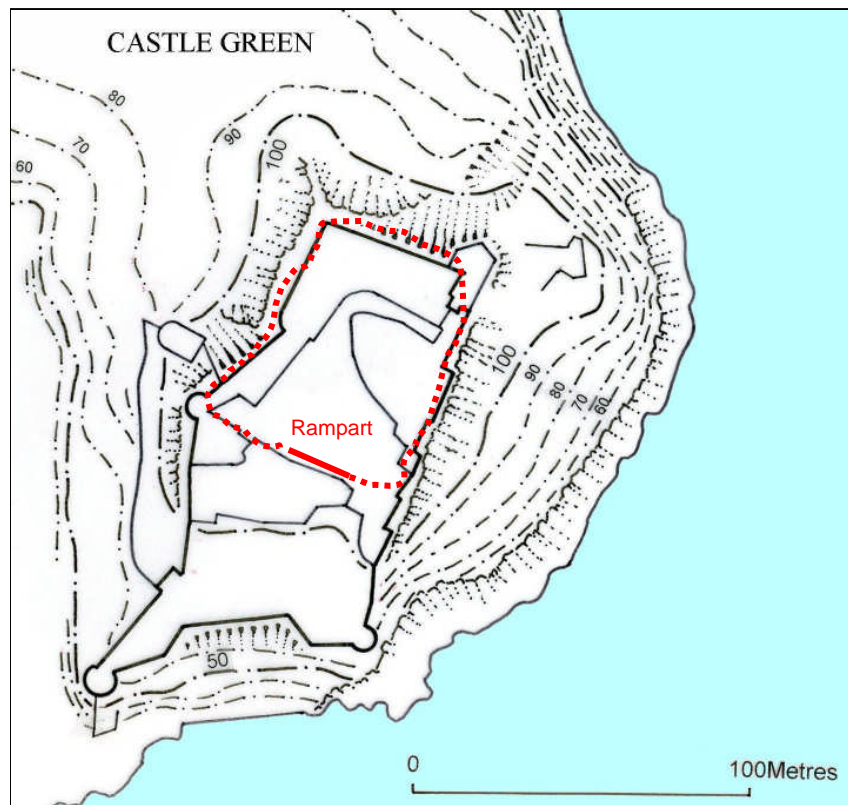
The remainder of the defences would have utilised the steep rocky cliffs, supplemented by lengths of rampart and possibly rock-cut ditches.

Margaret Finlaison has suggested that at least one other rampart may have existed, following the contours of the hill at a lower level.

*The remains of the Iron Age rampart
(after Barton 1984 Figure 3).*



Other traces of the former rampart, or ramparts, any defensive ditches associated with them, and contemporary occupation within the enclosed areas may survive elsewhere on the site beneath later structures and infill deposits. It is important that any areas where they might exist are protected for future investigation.



Simplified plan, showing the location of the rampart and the possible extent of the promontory hillfort.

ROMAN

Norman Rybot records six coins which have been found either in or from the vicinity of the castle. They range in date from 72 to 307AD, and presumably represent activity in the area for much of the period of Roman occupation (Rybot 1933: 44-45 Figures 37 & 38).

The silver coin of Nerva (see below No 2) was found on the outer side of the old exterior ditch of the castle where it crosses Castle Green, presumably during Rybot's excavations in this area in 1930 (Rybot 1933: 11 Figures 4 & 5), and may have been in an original context.

However, the coin of Faustina (No 4) was found in 1922 during re-pointing of the portcullis room in the Second Gatehouse and had clearly been placed there during construction in the Medieval period.

The contexts of the other coins is not known, but all six were identified by the British Museum and listed and illustrated by Rybot as follows :

No.1 Dupondius of Imperator Caesar Vespasianus Augustus AD 72.

No.2 Sestertius of Imperator Caesar Nerva Traianus Augustus Germanicus Pontifex Maximus. AD 100.

No.3 Silver tetradrachm of Emperor Caesar Nerva Traianus Augustus Germanicus Dacicus. AD103-111. Minted in Syria.

No.4 Sestertius of the Empress Faustina II. 'Diva Faustina pia'. AD 175.

No.5 Sestertius of Lucius Aurelius Commodus Caesar Augustus Filius Germanicus Sarmaticus. AD 180.

No.6 Emperor Licinius Pius Felix Augustus. AD 307.



Roman coins from Mont Orgueil (after Rybot 1933 Figures 37 & 38).

Apart from these six coins, no other evidence for occupation during the Roman period has been found at or in the vicinity of the castle, such as pottery or building materials, but it should not be precluded as a possibility, since a later Iron Age hillfort has been identified on the site and some form of continuity is possible, perhaps, given the location of the site, a temple or a signalling station.

1.0.3 MEDIEVAL CASTLE : *circa* 1204-*circa* 1470

INTRODUCTION

All writers agree that there is no evidence in the documents, the surviving structures, or the archaeological remains investigated this far to suggest the presence of a fortification, or indeed any occupation, on the site of Mont Orgueil immediately prior to the early days of the thirteenth century.

Indeed, there was no need for a fortification here before that date as it was the Channel Islands were a peaceful backwater of Normandy.

The Islands had been annexed to Normandy since at least 933 AD, and when William, Duke of Normandy, defeated Harold at the Battle of Hastings he had been crowned King of England. From 1066 Normandy and the Channel Islands were united under one rule – that of the King of England, who was also Duke of Normandy, although England and Normandy were administered separately from London and Caen respectively, with different languages, law, and coinage.

In 1204 King John lost Normandy to the French King Phillip II Augustus and the Plantagenet rule came to an end. However, the Channel Islands remained loyal the Crown of England, as they are today. They were no longer a peaceful backwater and became a potential frontier on the edge of a war zone, automatically becoming involved whenever war broke out between England and France. Consequently, there was a pressing need to defend the Islands against the French and castles were built at St Peter Port, Guernsey (Castle Cornet) and at Gorey, in Jersey (Mont Orgueil).

Gorey derives its name from *Gorroic*, of 1180 and *Gorryk* of 1274, eventually descending as Gorey in the 1330s when referred to as *Gorri*, *Gurri*, and sometimes as *Le Château de Goray* in French manuscripts. For much of the medieval period it was referred to as Gorey or the King's Castle and acquired the name of *Mont Orgueil* ('Mount Pride') in the early fifteenth century (*Ford 2007* : 7).

THE MEDIEVAL **DONJON** : *circa* 1204

The construction of Mont Orgueil was probably begun in or shortly after 1204, but the precise date of commencement is not recorded. Materials for the construction of fortifications were shipped from Southampton to the Channel Islands in 1206, whilst soldiers and equipment were landed in Jersey in 1209. (For the few early documentary references to fortifications on Jersey and Guernsey see *Colvin 1963* and *Dixon et al 1998* : 1-2).

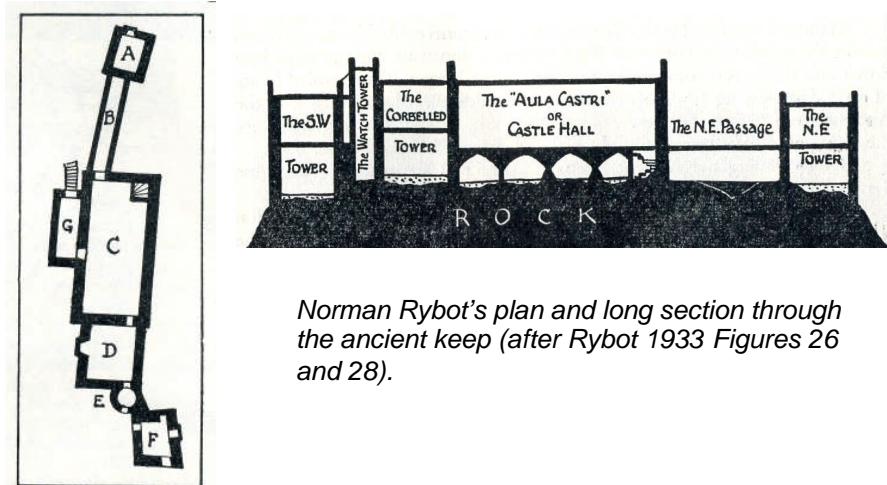


Shield of Arms of
Philippe d'Aubigny

The first documentary evidence for the existence of a castle at Mont Orgueil was a letter dated November 1212 in which the king ordered Hasculf de Suligny, Warden of the Channel Islands, to hand over 'our castle' to **Philippe d'Aubigny**, who had been appointed Warden of the Isles in his place. Military garrisons were then sent to both Jersey and Guernsey and the building programme was continued.

The earliest masonry structures to be built formed a first Keep or *Donjon*, located in a line on the highest point of the rocky outcrop, overlooking steep slopes and cliffs extending down to the sea on the east side, and comprising a great hall, a forebuilding, a chamber, a passage, and a pair of lodging towers, one at either end.

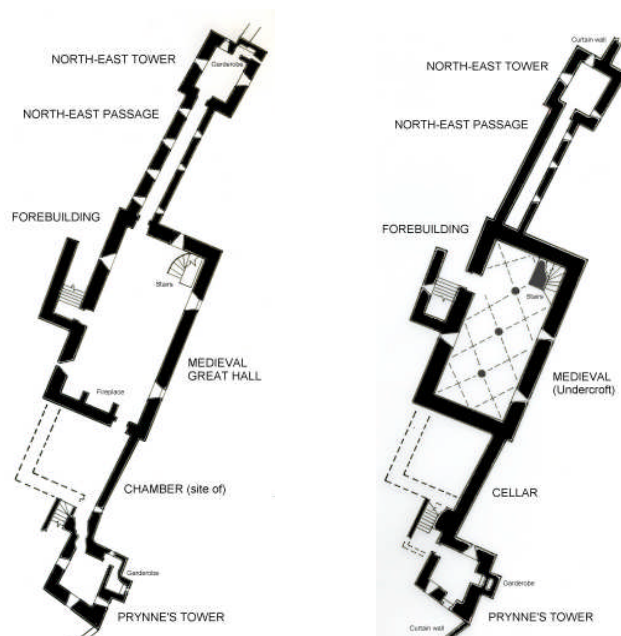
These structures were referred to as the 'Ancient Keep' and as 'the last line of defence' by Norman Rybot, who also described them in some detail (1933 : 29-33 Figures 26 and 28).



Norman Rybot's plan and long section through the ancient keep (after Rybot 1933 Figures 26 and 28).

The structures were the subject of detailed study by Dr Warwick Rodwell in 1997 and he was able to determine the following sequence and details of construction (Rodwell 1997, Rodwell 2002a : 29-48; and Rodwell 2006a : 6-8), which were also discussed by Philip Dixon (Dixon & Kennedy 2002a : 14-16).

The rectangular medieval Great Hall was the first to be constructed and was on two levels – a first floor hall, serving as living accommodation, over an undercroft, perhaps used for storage. Initially the hall had a timber floor and a hipped timber roof which would have been covered with slates or lead. Later in the thirteenth century the hall was given a solid floor carried on stone vaulting, with a small staircase constructed in the north-east corner, to provide internal access between them.



The ground and first floor plans of the medieval donjon (after Rodwell 2006 : 7 & 8).

A great fireplace was erected at the southern end of the hall and entry to both the hall and the undercroft was by doorways in the west wall. When the vaulting was added the security of access into both spaces was improved by the addition of a forebuilding, serving as a form of porch and/or gatehouse. This has an arrow-loop in its west wall, which formerly overlooked the adjoining ward of the castle, and was later extended in the sixteenth century as the long passage (for a description of the Great Hall as it is today see the Gazetteer in Section 1.0.8, Entry No. 102).¹

John McCormack has disputed the original function of this structure suggesting, on architectural grounds, that it may more likely built as a chapel. Both he and Professor Colin Platt, who has reviewed the documentary evidence, suggest that the pitched roof attributed to the medieval period may have been erected in place of a flat roof between *circa* 1790 and 1803, suggesting that it could have been erected by Philippe d'Auvergne (*McCormack 2006* and *Platt 2003a* : 154 & 2006a). However, Warwick Rodwell has previously proposed that the 1755 section cross section, which McCormack and Platt quote as evidence for the flat roof, was taken not across the roof but along the northern parapet (*Rodwell 2002* : 40-41).

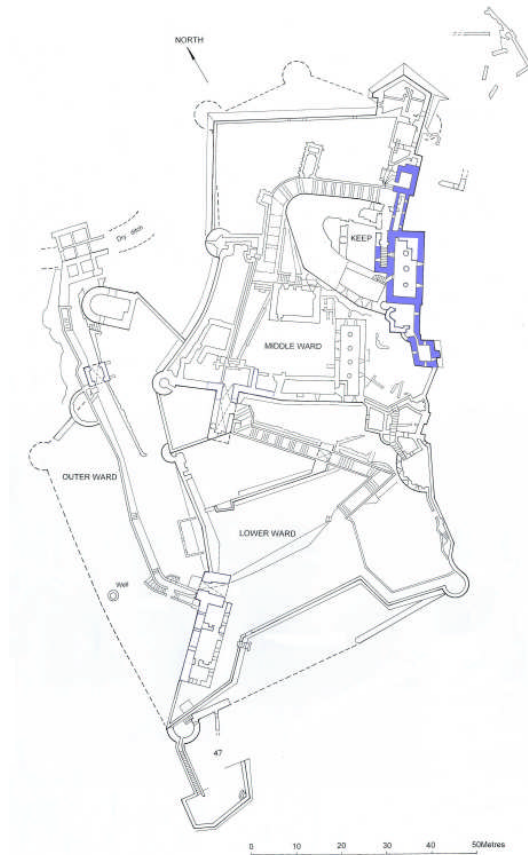
To the north of the Great Hall was the surviving north-east passage [104] which led to the north-east lodging tower [105]. Both were of two storeys and the passage has arrow-loops on either side to allow for firing in both directions. The tower had its own garderobe discharging onto the rocks below. Adjoining the southern end of the hall was chamber block, consisting of a square room with a half-cellar beneath it. This was replaced in the fifteenth century by a new two-storied block, referred to by Rybot as the corbelled tower but now known as the Square Keep Tower [106]. Beyond this was the surviving near square, two-storied south-east lodging tower, now known as Prynne's Tower [108], which also contained its own garderobe.

These first masonry buildings were clearly designed and built to occupy the highest levels of the granite outcrop, in order to take advantage of the natural defensive position, and Philip Dixon has looked at various parallels in the UK and Ireland (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* :16-17). He suggests that Mont Orgueil falls into a class of structures in a recognisable family of *hall and tower houses*. Whilst Mont Orgueil is not the earliest of these, it does belong to the first stage of development of what is essentially a series of important semi-domestic buildings of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries. He suggests that in its position on the top of the rocky outcrop, where it is flanked by lodging towers and shielded by a forebuilding on its west side, it would have provided symbolism for the holder of the dominating authority on the island.²

¹ Henceforth in this Part of the Conservation Plan the gazetteer entry numbers for elements of the castle are identified by square brackets [] – thus for the medieval Great Hall the entry would read [102] and that for the forebuilding/long passage would read [103].

² Although several writers have referred to the existence or the possible existence of a late medieval free-standing, square or round, stone tower keep on the site, no conclusive evidence has been found to indicate that this was the case. Indeed, Philip Dixon's explanation of the original form as a hall and tower house is perfectly acceptable, the structure falling into a class of monument lying somewhere between a more traditional tower keep and a fortified manor house.

The keep provided secure accommodation for the Constable of the castle and official visitors to it. The soldiers would have been accommodated elsewhere within the castle walls.



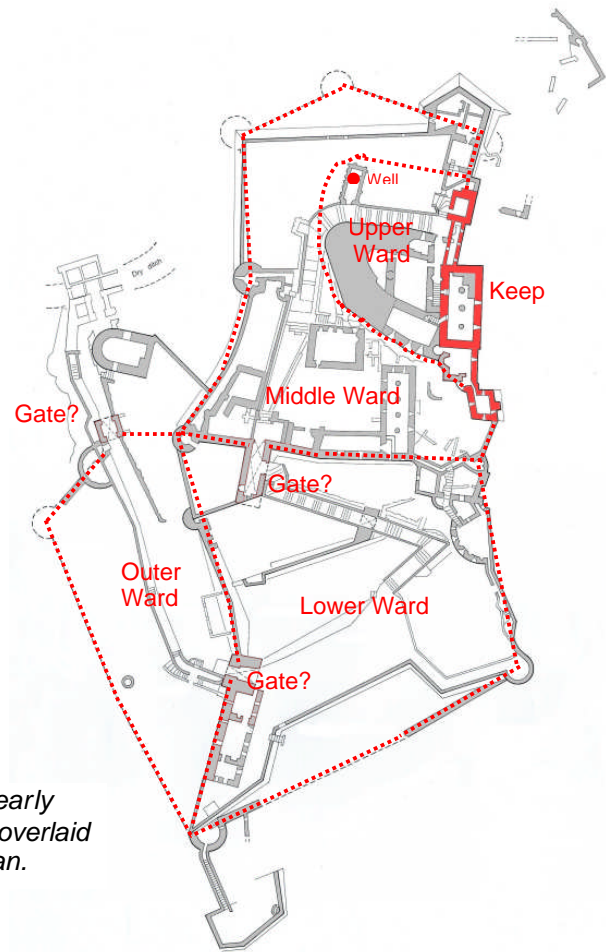
The surviving early thirteenth century buildings (shown dark blue) identified on the existing plan of the castle.

The layout of the remainder of the castle at this time is not known, though Philip Dixon has noted that, in their original form, all three stone gates are early (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a :19*). The wards may have been partially enclosed in wooden palisades and as late as 1224-1225 some one thousand tree trunks were sent to the Channel Islands from the New Forest to make palisades for the two new castles. Whether these were for new works or to supplement existing defences on Jersey and Guernsey is not known.

In addition, Jersey was supplied with five cartloads of lead, sixty bags of nails, and the timber from twenty oak trees, to assist with building works (*Ford 2007 : 9*).

The most likely explanation is that attached to the west side of the keep or *donjon* was an Upper Ward, enclosed by a curtain wall and containing the surviving well [225] and ancillary buildings which may, as Warwick Rodwell has suggested, have included a chapel. This ward may have survived until the new Tudor keep was built in the sixteenth century.

Beyond the Keep and Upper Ward there may have been a series of other enclosed spaces or wards – Middle, Lower, and Outer Wards, whose ground plans are represented by the later thirteenth century walls (see below), but as yet the evidence for this has yet to be determined on the ground.

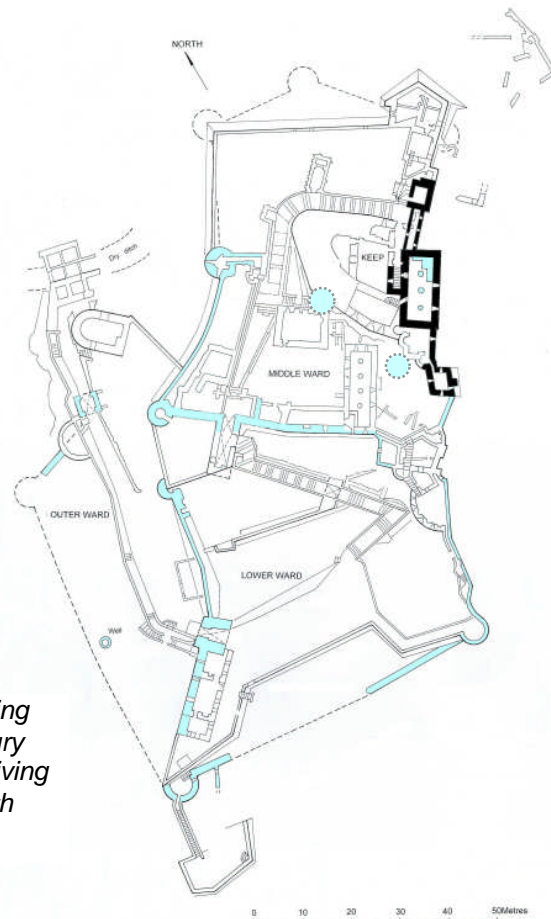


Conjectural layout of the early thirteenth century castle, overlaid (in red) on the existing plan.

**MEDIEVAL CASTLE :
circa 1225**

Assuming that they did not form part of the original castle, the next phase in the development of the defences of Mont Orgueil comprised the construction of a series of masonry curtain walls, linked by round and square towers, and the small square gatehouses, forming at least three, and possibly all four, wards.

The round towers could be entered at a low level and the best-preserved example – Bell Tower [204], contains some of the finest arrow-loops in the castle. These and the surviving gatehouses, which may have been open at the back or finished in timber, provide, according to Philip Dixon, a good indication of a thirteenth century date for the construction of these defences.



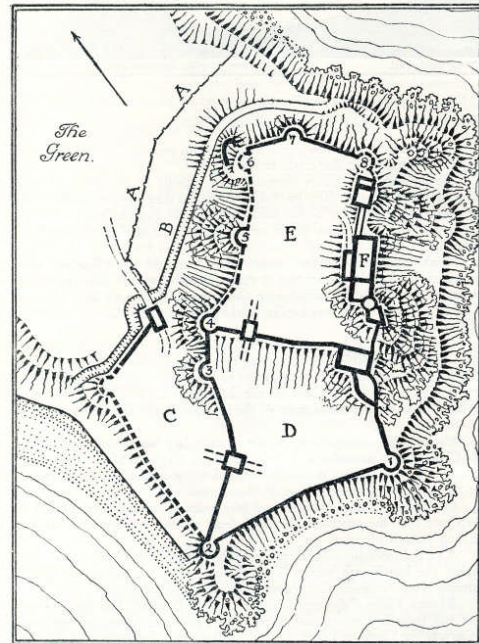
The existing plan of the castle, showing the pre-existing early thirteenth century buildings (shown black) and the surviving structures added later in the thirteenth century (shown light blue).

Philip Dixon also reached a similar conclusion for all three gateways – now first gate, second gate, and fourth gate, and this suggests that the Outer Ward was built at the same time as the others. Comparative evidence from elsewhere suggests that single square towers like those at Mont Orgueil are mostly found in the eleventh and twelfth centuries and were fairly old fashioned when employed here. However, they do occur elsewhere in the first part of the thirteenth century and this suggests that they may have been part of the original plan (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 19).

It is tempting to suggest, therefore, that the gates may have been built at a very early stage in the construction of the defences and be roughly contemporary with the keep or *donjon*, possibly providing the castle with stone gates at a time when the defences were otherwise of timber.

Using comparative evidence from the UK and the documentary evidence, which shows considerable activity at the time, Philip Dixon suggests a date of about 1225 for the completion of the masonry walls of at least the Middle and Lower Wards (*Dixon et al 1998* : 2-5 and *Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* :19-20), and the similarity in the form of the gate would suggest that the Outer Ward was constructed at about the same time.

There have been several alternative proposals for the layout of the defences of Middle and Outer Wards at this time. Norman Rybot investigated the area north of Grand Battery and found traces of an earlier curtain wall and an intermediate bastion (Rybot 1933 : 19 and Figure 12 'L'), which he took to be the remains of the north curtain wall of Middle Ward [202], between two flanking bastions ('J' & 'M'), as well as traces of an ancient 'Salient Bastion' ('S' –[203]). Beyond this he excavated a section across an outer defensive ditch [404 – Rybot 1933 : 11 and Figure 10 'B') and also refers to a palisade beyond the ditch [403] although it is not clear where the evidence was derived for this (Rybot 1933 : 11 and Figure 10 'A').



Norman Rybot's plan of the medieval castle (after Rybot 1933 Figure 4).

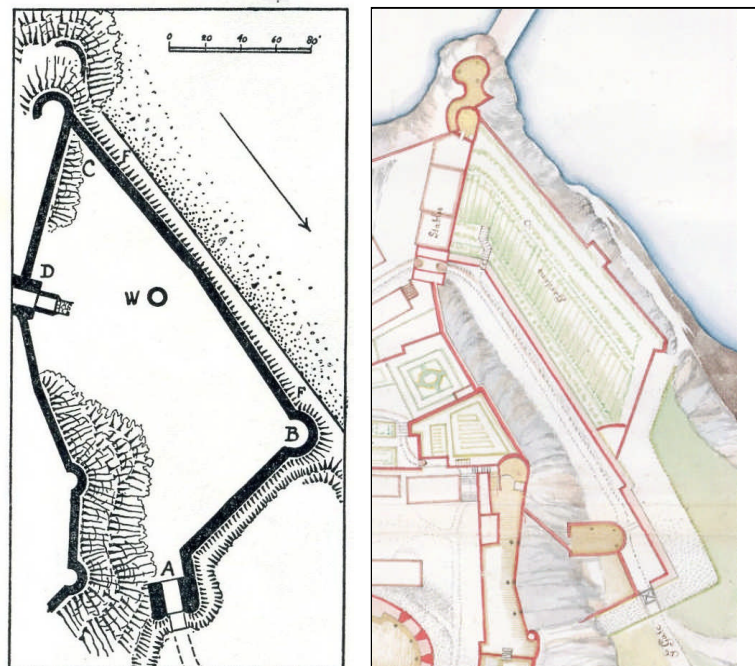
More recent interpretations by Philip Dixon, followed by Warwick Rodwell, and Doug Ford, postulate that the curtain wall found by Rybot was not part of the defences of Middle Ward, as Rybot had supposed, but an outer curtain skirting the lower edge of the rocky outcrop and forming an extension of Outer Ward, with an original inner curtain forming the north side of Middle Ward being buried beneath Grand Battery when it was constructed in the sixteenth century (Dixon & Kennedy 2002a : 20; Rodwell 2006a : 12-13; and Ford 2007 : 9).

This conclusion is based on the supposition that without a return of Outer Ward around the north side of the castle, the Middle Ward would have been vulnerable from attack from the north and north-west. However, the west wall of Grand Battery is thought to incorporate the remains of the earlier curtain wall, and the alternative interpretation could be that there might, indeed, be a curtain wall buried beneath Grand Battery which originally formed the north side of an Upper Ward, rather than Middle Ward.

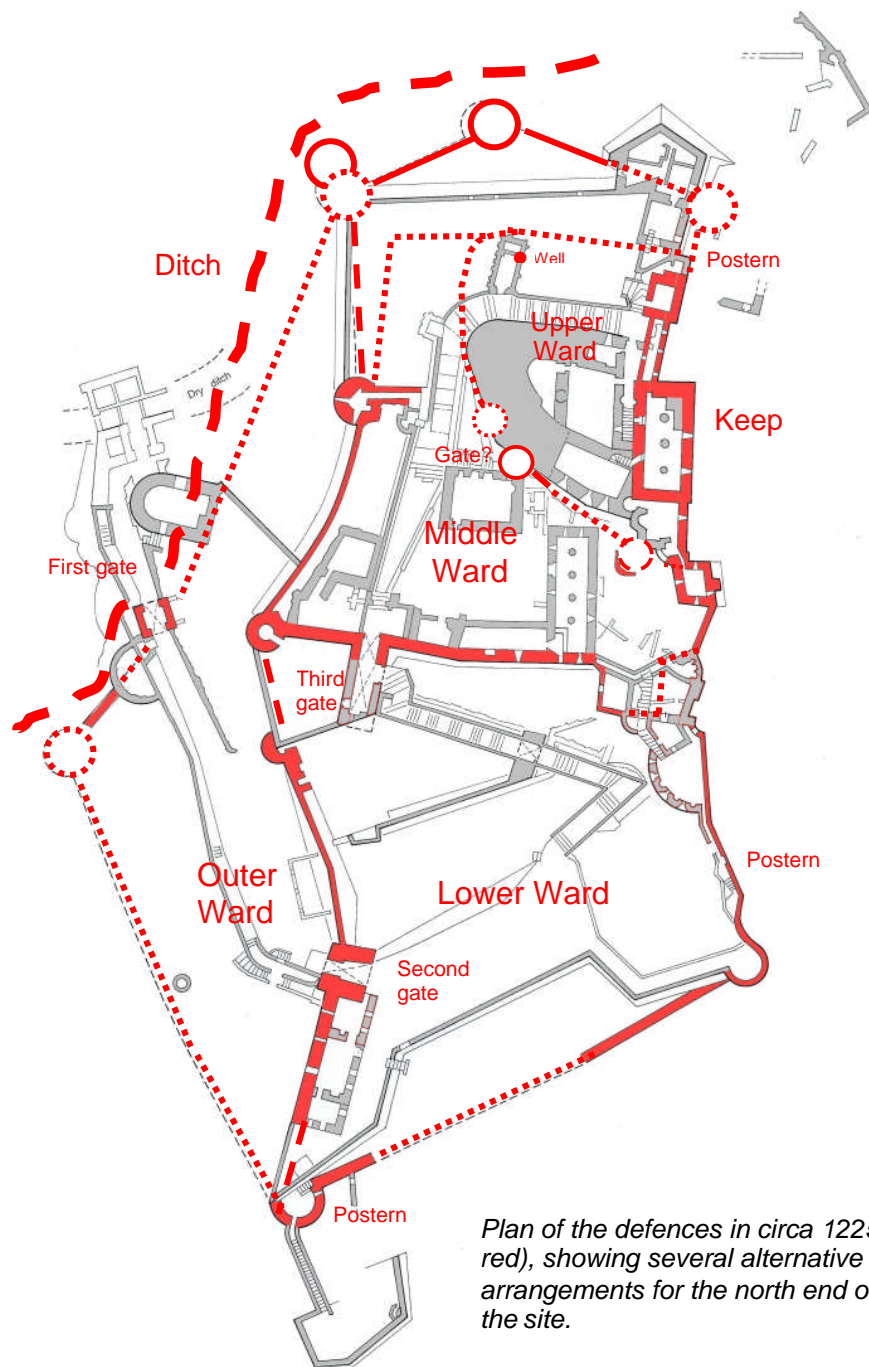
The picture is further confused by the existence of the possible remains of a round tower partially obscured by Somerset Tower [210], which Philip Dixon has suggested might be one of a pair of gate towers at the end of an approach to the top of the rock, perhaps into Upper Ward, for which there is a parallel at Sandal Castle, Yorkshire, dating to 1269-70 (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 18). Abutting this on its east side is a fragment of walling which may also pre-date the Somerset Tower and have formed part of the curtain wall of an Upper Ward extending to the east.

To the south-east of this is another semi-circular wall which may also be the remains of another round tower [211], forming part of the circuit of a curtain wall around an Upper Ward, though if it is the remains of a small ruined wall tower it must, as Doug Ford suggests, have been entered not at the lower level, like all the others, but from above (*Ford 2007* : 34). Hence, the curtain wall of an Upper Ward may have extended around as far as Philip Dixon's postulated gate and then have formed a link with the tower south of the keep.

The defences around Outer Ward were for the most part destroyed by the late eighteenth century, but Rybot postulated a round tower at the north-west corner, whereas Thomas Phillips plan of 1680 had depicted a square projection at the corner; a rectangular one part way along the west side; and an external ditch continuing along the north wall as far as the edge of the cliff.



The plans of Outer Ward, by Rybot (1933 Figure 7 - left) and Thomas Phillips in 1680 (right). Note north is to the bottom in both cases.



Plan of the defences in circa 1225 (in red), showing several alternative arrangements for the north end of the site.

The various alternative suggestions about layout and doubts about precise dates, all point to the fact that, although a great deal of research has been undertaken in the past, there is still a considerable research potential in the site and a need to preserve areas so that they can be fully investigated at some future date.

Each ward of the castle appears to have taken on a particular role – the Upper Ward or Keep, being the most strongly-defended part, functioning as the residence of the Constable of the castle and providing accommodation for distinguished visitors to it. The Middle Ward probably contained residential and service accommodation for the garrison, and some of the footings of buildings appear to survive amongst the later structures. The Lower Ward appears to have adopted a civil role and housed, at least at a later date, a courthouse, referred to in 1350, and a viscount's office [319]. The Outer Ward enclosed a piece of land which fell away steeply to the west. It contained a well and was probably used to keep livestock.

LATER 13th CENTURY

In 1232 the Constable of the castle, Gerrard de Lambersard, handed command back to Philip d'Aubigny, who had been re-appointed Warden.

During the remainder of the thirteenth century the documentary sources include regular references to the Keepers of the Isles and to unidentified repairs to Gorey castle (*Dixon et al 1998* : 6-7). Most of the work appears to have been concentrated in the 1240s and early 1250s, but after this the structure appears to have been allowed to decay.

In 1252 Philip de Carteret and Jourdain de la Hougue were directed to report to the King on the state of the castle, and in April 1253 Richard de Grey, Keeper of the King's Isles, was required to 'repair the King's castle in the isles where necessary'.

In 1254 Prince Edward was given the lordship of the Channel Islands and when he later became King Edward I, in 1272, he appointed his cousin, Otto de Grandison, as keeper. De Grandison appears to have been an absentee for almost the whole of his fifty two-year tenure, and, despite a French attack in 1294, little work appears to have been undertaken at Gorey castle (*Dixon et al 1998* : 8-9).

Original accounts of the warden, Henry de Cobham, refer in 1294 to repair of certain towers and walls in the castle and also to the building of new walls near the outer gate (*Rybot 1933* : 62 and *Bulletin of the Société Jersiaise* for 1937).

14th CENTURY



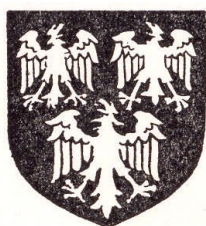
Shield of Arms of
John de Roches

In 1309 and 1323 commissions were appointed to investigate grievances against de Grandison and he was ordered to proceed to Gorey to make investigations of the castle.

In 1327 **John de Roches** was made Warden and he was responsible for repairing and strengthening the castle, notably around the north-east sallyport, where he is attributed with having constructed a large tower to the north of the keep, which became known as Rochefort [220]. His accounts refer to repairing damage to buildings caused by a 'great wind' and he names elements of the castle, which included – a chapel, a pantry, a kitchen, a bakehouse, a prison, as well as houses, turrets and walls. He was later accused of unduly lavish expenditure but was subsequently exonerated from this.

When de Grandison died in 1328 the castle reverted to the Crown, but it had been left in an inadequate state for over half a century.

The documentary sources show something of the cost of restoration, but provide only a little detail about the actual construction and fabric of the castle, apart from those referred to by de Roches in 1327 and references to the supply of arms and other necessities as well as to some repairs in the period 1328-1332 (*Dixon et al 1998 10-21*).



Shield of Arms of
John de Barentin

When the Hundred Years' War with France broke out the castle was revictualled and garrisoned with archers and other infantrymen. In 1337 the Constable was the seigneur of Rozel, **John de Barentin**, who had a garrison of eighty men, which was increased to ninety-four the following year.

In March 1337 a French army landed in Jersey and spent the summer laying waste to the island and besieging the castle. De Barentin was killed in September, but the siege was finally lifted in the late autumn. In 1338 the castle was again attacked, unsuccessfully, and in the following year a fleet of thirty-five French ships and seventeen Genoese galleys ravaged the island but was unable to take the castle, which was now under the control of the Constable, Sir Reginald Carteret.

The documentary sources for the period of the Hundred Years' War, which lasted until 1453, include numerous references to military activity in Jersey (*Dixon et al 1998 : 26-73*).

In 1372 Ivan of Wales, a notorious sea-rover and mercenary for the French, raided Guernsey, and the keeper of Jersey and Constable of the Castle, Edmund Rose, increased the garrison. The following year, when Rose had been replaced by William de Asthorp, the King ordered the sheriffs of Plymouth and Southampton to hold ships in readiness for the transport of troops and supply to the Channel Islands.

In July 1373 Jersey was attacked and the castle was laid siege by Bertrand du Guesclin, Constable of France. His large force eventually broke through the outer defences but the small defending force, under William de Asthorp, held the keep and eventually negotiated a settlement whereby the island paid tribute to de Guesclin until the end of 1375.

15th CENTURY

In 1403 Jersey was again plundered by a French fleet, led by Admiral de Pehouet, and in 1406 a joint force of French and Spaniards invaded the island and set up a base on the islet off St Helier, where Elizabeth Castle was subsequently built, but Gorey Castle was not besieged.

In 1435-36 the castle was strengthened, probably for the reception of canon, though it is believed that only small scale repairs were needed at that time. In 1437 Humphrey, the Duke of Gloucester, was granted the Channel Islands, in succession to his late brother John, Duke of Bedford (*Dixon et al 1998 : 66*).

French occupation : 1461-1468



The Arms of the
Comte de Brézé

The end of the Hundred Years' war in 1453 did not initially bring a lasting peace to Jersey, as political discord in England brought the start of the war of the Roses and the deposition of King Henry VI in 1461. His French-born wife, Margaret of Anjou, plotted to install her cousin, Pierre de Maulevrier, **Comte de Brézé**, and Grand Senescal of Normandy, as Lord of the Isles, and in 1461 the warden, John Nanfan, surrendered the castle to the Earl of Carbonnel, the lieutenant of de Brézé.

Ordinance of Maulevrier in 1462 are said to include the first reference to cannon in the armaments of Gorey Castle (Rybot 1933 : 65).

For the next seven years Jersey was under French control, but by 1467 political power had shifted, King Edward IV was on the throne of England, and he was intent on recovering Normandy.

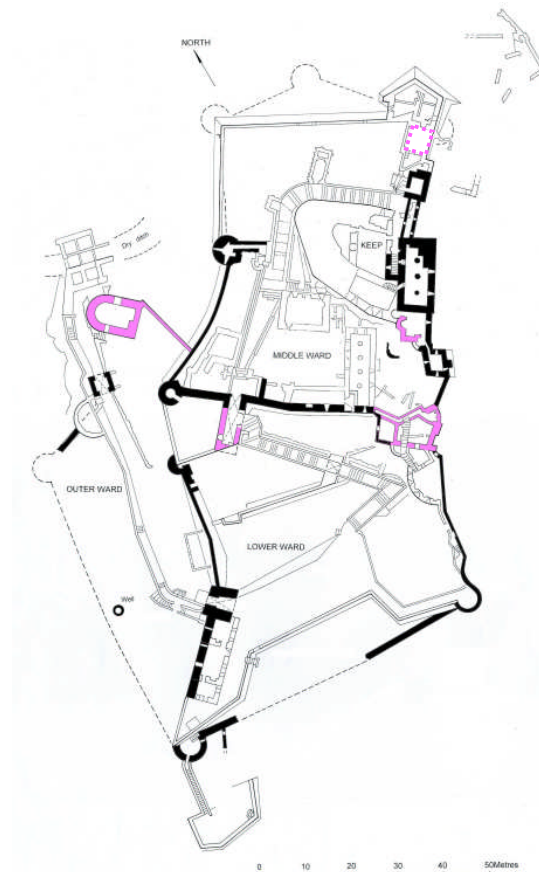
**Richard Harliston :
1468-1485**

In 1468 the King sent the Vice-Admiral of the English fleet, Richard Harliston, to the Channel Islands and, with the assistance of local forces mustered by Philippe de Carteret, he laid siege to the castle, by now referred to as Mont Orgueil, for five months until the French surrendered.

After this the office of warden of the Isles was abolished in 1470, to be replaced by an appointed Governor for each Bailiwick, a system which has continued to the present day.

Richard Harliston became Jersey's first Governor. He settled on the island and set about modernising the castle. He is attributed with having built the D-shaped bastion alongside the first gate, known as Harliston Tower [407], which was designed to mount canon. He was probably also responsible for up-grading accommodation in the keep by creating the surviving, two-storied, Square Keep Tower, also known as the Corbelled Tower [106] at the south end of the medieval great hall, with two chambers, both with fireplaces, linked by a spiral staircase [107].

Other works undertaken during the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries include Rochefort Tower, built in *circa* 1330 and later adapted as part of the north-east outworks [220 & 221]; the extension of the gate into Middle Ward [201]; and the extension or rebuilding of the easternmost square tower in the south wall of Middle Ward to form Busgros or Prison Tower [212].



The existing plan of the castle, showing the pre-existing buildings (shown black) and the structures added in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries (shown pink).

Given that muskets and small canon were in use in Europe by 1350 and that by *circa* 1380 loop-holes for firearms had begun to be incorporated into defensive structures in southern England, for example at Carisbrooke Castle and in the medieval city walls at Canterbury and Southampton, it is, perhaps, surprising that there is no specific reference to the use of canon at Mont Orgueil before 1462.

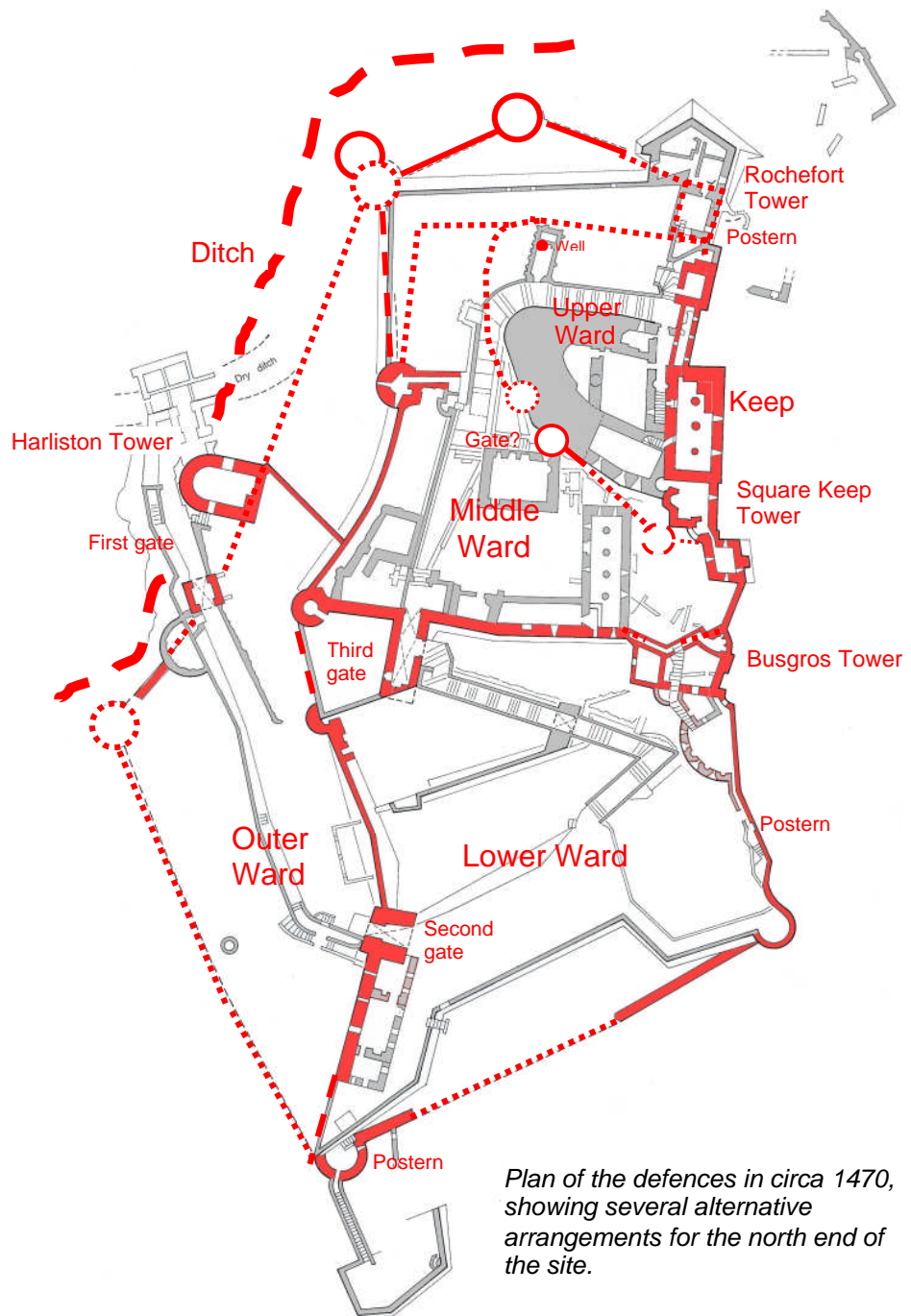
However, the accounts of Edmund Rose for 1373-74 refer to the supply of cross-bows, quarrels (arrows for cross bows), ... and one iron gun.. (Dixon *et al* 1998 : 60), and a document of 1394 refers to the supply of victuals, armour, and artillery ... (Dixon *et al* 1998 : 63). Whilst it may be misleading to read too much into the terms 'iron gun' and 'artillery' in these contexts, it is perhaps surprising to note that as late as 1403 there are still references to the supply of bows, arrows, lances, and armour (Dixon *et al* 1998 : 64) at a time when artillery warfare was in widespread use elsewhere.

During his excavations north of Middle Ward in 1940, Norman Rybot recovered two slabs of Caen-stone, both containing loop-holes for fire-arms or small canon (Rybot 1933 : Figure 59), and these may have been employed in the north curtain wall before it was demolished and replaced by Grand Battery in the period *circa* 1560-1593. These and other early examples may have existed in the castle but have been removed during later alterations.

One of the two loop-holes for canon, found by Rybot in 1940, and now preserved in the castle museum.



Philip Dixon has suggested that the so-called outer curtain wall where the gun ports were found may have been built at the same time as Harliston Tower, ie in *circa* 1470 (Dixon & Kennedy 2002a : 22).



Plan of the defences in circa 1470, showing several alternative arrangements for the north end of the site.

1.0.4 ARTILLERY FORTRESS : *circa* 1470-1593

A major change in the conduct of siege warfare had arrived at Mont Orgueil, with the employment of cannon and muskets at least by 1462 and possibly some decades earlier. Over the next century this was to have a dramatic effect on the castle which, due to the fact that it was overlooked by Mont Saint Nicolas to the north, appeared for a while to be indefensible. Despite this it was over seventy years until the first real steps were taken to refortify the castle from artillery bombardment, and this was partly due to an agreement made in 1483 between the Kings of France and England that the Channel Islands should be neutral territory.

In 1485 Edward Weston was appointed King's Commissioner by King Henry VII, but Richard Harliston refused to hand the castle over to him until compelled to do so following a siege which lasted five months.

There are various references to the Castle of Mountorgelle (1483); to the castle of Gurrey, alias Mount Orgell (1487); to Gurrey castle (1487); and to Mountorgill (1499) in documents of the latter part of the fifteenth century (*Dixon et al 1998 : 75-77*). In 1982 the later development of the castle was reconstructed for *The History of the King's Works* by Howard Colvin and John Summerson (1982) from architectural evidence and documentary references for the period after 1485.

In 1488 Matthew Baker was appointed to the office of Keeper, Governor, and Captain of the Isle of Gersey and of the Castle of Gurrey, and in 1494-95 Orders in Council were issued to check his arbitrary powers (*Rybot 1933 : 66*). In 1499 Thomas Overay was appointed to the post previously held by Baker, but he died the following year. Responsibility then passed to John Lemprier and then to Hugh Vaughan.

In 1515 the inhabitants complained about unjust levies being imposed to make good dilapidations caused by Thomas Overay's neglect. In 1531 Royal Commissioners held an enquiry into the state of the castle and garrison. They reported that the castle was in general appearance a medieval fortress, with little or no proper provision for cannon of large calibre, though at that time it supported twenty-three pieces of ordnance (*Rybot 1933 : 55*). Their report was considered unfavourable and in the following year the Governor, Sir High Vaughan was recalled and replaced by Sir Anthony Ughtred, but he died shortly afterwards. He was replaced by Sir Arthur Darcy in 1533 and then by Thomas Vaulx in January 1536.

In 1536 Sir Edward Seymour, Duke of Somerset, was made Keeper, Governor and Captain of Jersey and the castle of Gurrey, alias Montorguill, and with his lieutenant, Henry Cornish, a godson of King Henry VIII, commenced the remodelling of the defences, in order to convert the medieval castle, designed for bow-and-arrow warfare, into a near-impregnable artillery fortress, – a process which he undertook for some fourteen years, and was subsequently continued into the 1590s. Though well-placed for seaward defence, the castle was overlooked by Mont Saint Nicolas and could easily be forced into surrender by a battery sited there.

There are a number of documentary sources referring to Cornish's works (*Dixon et al 1998* 82-86), in which he was succeeded in 1550 by Sir Hugh Paulet, with his son Amias as lieutenant; then by Sir Amias with his brother Thomas a lieutenant from 1571; and then by Sir Anthony Paulet in 1590 after his father Amias died in 1588 (*Dixon et al 1998* : 86-93). The post-1540 documentary evidence for the history and architectural development of Mont Orgueil held in British mainland archives has been presented by Neil Rushton (2002).

The construction of a new first gate, north of both the old gate and Harliston Tower, is generally attributed to the early sixteenth century but no dating evidence was found during excavations in 1912 [409]. Several eighteenth century illustrations depict remnants of a wall extending from the north-east corner of the gate and this may have been built as part of or to link up with the medieval outer wall suggested by some writers.

Philip Dixon also attributes the construction of the half-moon battery [413] to about the same time, suggesting that it was designed to cover access through the Outer Ward (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 22). He also drew attention to the former existence of another tower, or tower-like structure, possibly detached from the remainder of the castle at the south-west corner of the site, where Water Battery now stands [317], and suggested parallels with early sixteenth century gun towers at Dover (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 22-23). The structure is recorded on Thomas Phillips' drawing and plan of 1680 and survived at least until 1755 when it was recorded on the plan of that date as 'detached works in ruins'. It appears to have been constructed to protect approaches to the castle on the more sheltered west and south sides.



The structure at the south-west corner of the castle, as depicted on the 1755 plan.

It is conceivable that all or some of these structures were already in existence when Cornish arrived in Jersey, and were the works of an earlier Governor.

The long, narrow passageway or *chemise* [410], linking the new first gate and the second gate, seems, according to Dixon and Rodwell to have been formed during the Governorship of Amias Paulet (1571-1590) (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 4.0/1 and *Rodwell 2006a* : 38-39), but it includes several stages of construction, as well as two openings into the west side of Lower Ward [411 & 412], and may have evolved over a period of time, commencing in the early sixteenth century when the new first gate was erected.

All the works undertaken on the west side of the castle appear to result from the separation of the west side of Outer Ward, perhaps following the collapse or partial collapse of the original west curtain wall.



The Shield of Arms of
Henry Cornish
on Cornish Bastion

The first work attributed to **Henry Cornish**, in or shortly after 1536, is the construction of a gate and cross wall within Lower Ward, which separated off an area on the north side and provided additional protection to the extended gate into Middle Ward. The new gate [309], which was at the west end abutting the west curtain wall, would have given access via steps up to the next gate and the wall adjoining it on its east side, later incorporated into De Carteret's Rampart in 1648-50, would have supported a battery of long-range guns pointing across Grouville Bay, to the south (*Rodwell 2006a* : 21-22).

The next task of Henry Cornish was to construct a quadrant-shaped bastion at the east end of this new cross wall, which still carries his coat of arms and the date 1547, and is still known as Cornish Bastion [213]. This is an unusual structure, built mostly of re-used masonry, with a tightly-packed array of gun-ports for three different types of weapons protecting the approaches to the gate into Middle Ward (*Rodwell 2006a* : 22-23).

THE TUDOR KEEP : 1547-1551

In the late 1540s Cornish was involved in the construction of 'an artillery platform of great strength' and in 1548 wrote to Sir Edward Seymour that, when it is complete 'you may boast of a castle impregnable ... worthy to be named Munte Orguyle'. It is evident from contemporary accounts that the purpose of the new structure was to defend the castle against attack from Mont Saint Nicolas and the works probably comprised at least the commencement of construction of the massive tower to provide an elevated platform for cannon facing inland, then probably referred to as 'New Mount' but later named after the Protector Somerset, who was governor from 1537 to 1550 (*Colvin & Summerson 1982* : 451). Somerset Tower [111] rises to a height of about 26 metres (85 feet) above Middle Ward and on its summit, a little higher than the top of Mont Saint Nicolas. It has a main battery facing the hill and smaller ones on the north and south sides [112].

The Jersey Chronicler, writing in the early 1580s and considered a reliable source by historians, attributed the commencement of construction of 'the Mount', later identified by the same writer as the [Somerset] tower, to Henry Cornish (*Eaglestone 1938* and *Platt 2005*). A detailed inventory of the castle's ordnance and supplies was drawn up in December of 1549 and it would appear from this that the Somerset Tower had been completed and six large cannon were in place on it at that time. Works were partially financed from the revenues of dissolved religious foundations on the Island. In 1550, when Somerset was succeeded as governor by Sir Hugh Paulet, £706 19s 6½d was found to be due to Cornish on his account 'for the fortification of the castle of Jersey' (*Nicolle 1921* : 49 and *Colvin & Summerson 1982* : 451).

Behind the tower were a long passage [103], a gatehouse and guard chamber [109 & 110], a great chamber [113]³, an ancillary D-shaped space [114], and a suite of rooms forming a Governor's residence and other residential apartments [115].⁴

³ This space has been identified as a Tudor great hall, but this attribution has been disputed by some writers. For the purposes of the Conservation Plan it is referred to as the Tudor great chamber or the great chamber (for further discussion see below).

⁴ For the purposes of the Conservation Plan this group of structures, certainly known to have been erected between 1485 and 1600, is referred to as the Tudor keep.

The works were continued by Hugh Paulet who, in 1550, had a warrant for £100 to obtain lime from Normandy and was sent 20 *fathers* of Mendip lead by the receiver of the Crown lands in Somerset, presumably for roofing.⁵ In 1551 Paulet commemorated the completion of the Tudor keep by setting up the inscription in French over Mount Gate (Colvin & Sommerson 1982 : 451).

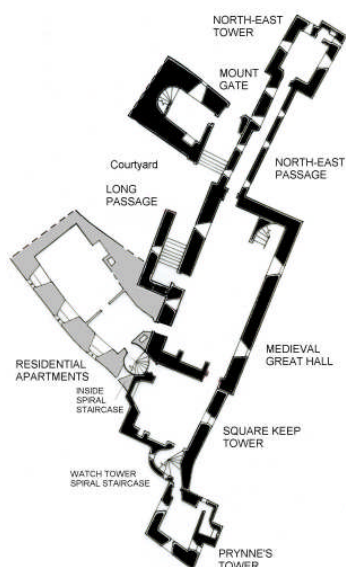
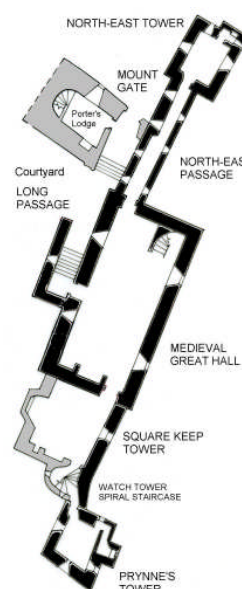
This sequence of events was confirmed by investigations in the Tudor keep in the period 1997-2001 (Rodwell 2002a : 7-10).

The chamber immediately adjoining the south side of the Medieval great hall appears to have already been rebuilt or replaced by the Square Keep Tower by about 1500.

The new complex of structures was an extension of the original medieval keep or *donjon*, which was adapted to complement the new structures, and they were all connected by three sets of spiral stairs, two of which also gave access to the roof. Some of the basement levels of the old buildings were filled with soil and rubble to support new gun emplacements above them (for descriptions see Section 1.0.8).

The first structure to be added to the existing medieval keep (Phase 1) was Mount Gate, a two-celled and two-storeyed gatehouse and guard chamber [109 and 110] built as an extension to the medieval forebuilding to form a long passage [103]. This may date to the very end of the fifteenth century or the early years on the sixteenth. An open area or a courtyard appears to have existed to the west of the long passage at this time.

The Tudor keep – Phase 1 (right). The earlier medieval structures are shown black whilst those added in about 1500 or shortly after are shown grey.

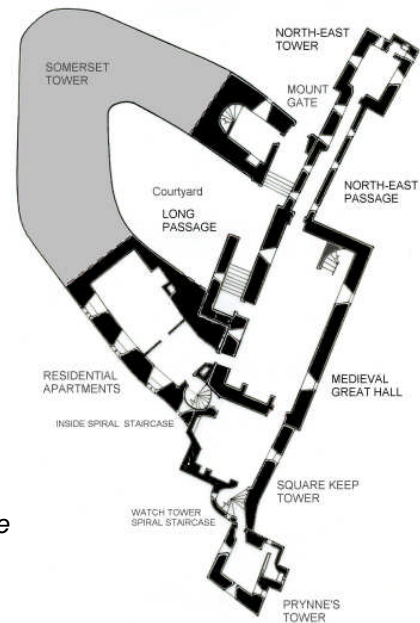


The next structure to be added (Phase 2) was the four-storey residential apartment block to the west of the south end of the Medieval great hall [115], served by its own inside spiral staircase [117].

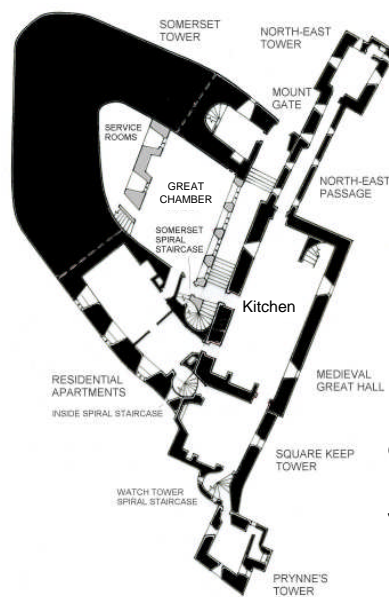
The Tudor keep – Phase 2 (left). The existing structures are shown black, whilst those added at this stage are shown grey.

⁵ A *fother* was an old English measure of metal equating to 19.5 hundredweight, each of 112 pounds, ie 2184 pounds. 20 *fathers* would equate to about 19.5 tons of lead - a substantial quantity of material, certainly sufficient to roof the whole of the Tudor keep.

The huge block of solid masonry known as Somerset Tower and Mount Battery [111 and 112] were erected to the west (Phase 3), possibly at the same time or very shortly after the apartments, to enclose a U-shaped space which appears to have been created as an enclosed courtyard.



The Tudor keep – Phase 3 (right). The existing structures are shown black, whilst those added at this stage are shown grey.

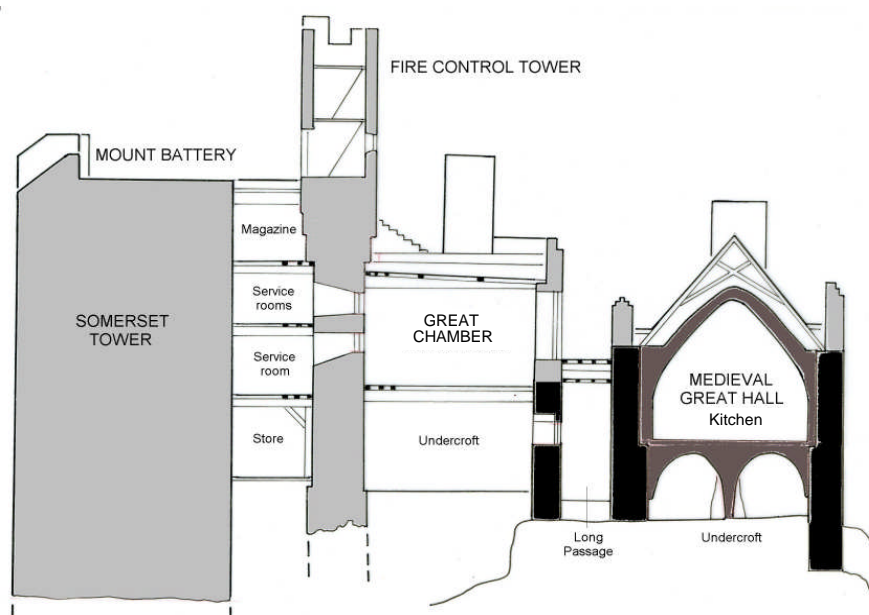


Finally (Phase 4), the great chamber and undercroft [113] were created within that enclosed space, with a D-shaped space evidently designed to contain service rooms to the west [114] and a spiral staircase to the south [116]. The substantial dividing wall between the great hall and the service rooms supported an octagonal fire control tower [118].

The Tudor keep – Phase 4 (left). The existing structures are shown black, whilst those added at this stage are shown grey.

The medieval great hall was adapted as a kitchen at this time.

At some stage during these works a small chamber and a gate chamber were added over the gatehouse and porter's lodge [109 and 110], and it is this addition, presumed to have been made at the same time as the creation of the great chamber, that is dated '1551'.



*West-east section through the Tudor keep, looking north
(based on Rodwell 2002a Figure 11).*

This version of events, which was proposed by the architectural historians Howard Colvin and John Summerson in *The History of the King's Works* and confirmed by investigations in the keep in the period 1997-2001, has been challenged in a series of articles, a privately published book, and typescript comments. In these studies, which are not mutually consistent, the attribution of the construction of Somerset Tower to Henry Cornish in the period 1547-1549 is refuted in favour of full construction by Sir Hugh Paulet and his son Amyas, commencing in the period 1564-1567 and with the completion of the Tudor keep continuing through into the 1590s (Platt 2001, 2002, 2003a, 2003b, 2004a, 2004b, 2005, 2006a and 2006b; Myres & Molyneux 2001a, 2001b, 2002a and 2002b; and Rushton 2003).

The difficulty with the arguments put forward by the writers supporting the later date for the construction of Somerset Tower and the Tudor keep, commencing in or shortly before 1564, is that they propose that some of the documentary sources are unreliable, for example the *Jersey Chronicler* and the one piece of cartographic evidence provided by a sketch plan of the castle produced in 1562, and they ignore the sound evidence provided by the archaeology and the fabric of the buildings.

During the preparation of the Conservation Plan, all the published and unpublished evidence has been reviewed, adopting an interdisciplinary approach, on the basis that all the documentary sources are true representations of what was understood or seen at the time of their compilation, and that the archaeological and structural evidence provides a reliable chronological sequence for the construction of the elements of the Tudor keep, completed in '1551'.

Adopting the principle of *Occam's Razor*, which advocates the choice of an explanation that requires the least amount of speculation and assumption, the Conservation Plan accepts the dates and sequence of construction proposed by *The History of the King's Works* and confirmed during investigations in the keep in the period 1997-2001 (*Colvin & Summerson 1982* : 450-451 and *Rodwell 2002a*). It believes, therefore, that it was, as the Jersey Chronicler had stated in the early 1580s (*Platt 2005*), Henry Cornish who started work on the construction of the Tudor keep, probably shortly after but possibly before completing Cornish Bastion in 1547, by commencing the residential apartments and Somerset Tower, to form a courtyard finished on the north-east corner by the existing Mount Gate and gatehouse and on the east by the existing medieval hall.

The tower can be identified as one of the first two entries referred to as major structures supporting canon in the 1549 inventory, where it is referred to as 'the Mounte' – the other being the 'Dongeon tower' interpreted as the medieval hall, and it must have been sufficiently complete at that time to support at least six guns. The absence of the term 'dongeon' from later references is seen to imply not that a structure had been demolished but that its function was changed, probably to a kitchen.

The later assertion by the Jersey Chronicler that it was 'Sir Hugh Paulet during his time .. [1551-1567] ..he did make the great tower of the castle of Mont Orgueil, that tower is called the Mount' (*Eaglestone 1938* and *Platt 2005*), is seen as reflecting the completion of the Tudor great chamber, the upper chamber over the porter's lodging, and the chamber over Mount Gate, which is dated '1551' – a sequence confirmed by the archaeological investigations.

The absence of shields of arms in the three empty recesses on the tower is seen as most likely reflecting the fall of favour of Somerset and Cornish – had the Paulets claimed responsibility for the tower then it would seem likely that their shields of arms would have been inserted and survived to the present day.



The Shield of Arms of
Anthony Paulet

A long series of documentary references, including accounts, indicate that works were continued into the 1590s by a succession of Governors – Sir High Paulet (1551-1571); Sir Amias Paulet (1571-1590); and **Sir Anthony Paulet** (1590-1600), all probably culminating in *circa* 1593 with the refurbishment of the gate into Middle Ward which is dated in that year and became known as Elizabeth Gate [201].

In 1562-63 Queen Elizabeth became aware that the castle was in a ruinous state and demanded a report on the defences and proposals for their improvement. A Commission, assisted by her Commissioner of Works at Portsmouth, Richard Popinjay, prepared a report which included a map or 'Platte' of the island with a detail depicting the castle at 'mount orguyle'.



Richard Popinjay's map of Jersey in 1562 (above); a detail showing 'mount orguyle' at the actual scale of the original drawing (right); and an interpretation of that detail (far right).



The cartographer clearly depicts two wards enclosed by curtain walls and round towers on a rocky outcrop surrounded by the sea on three sides, which could well equate with Middle and Lower Wards. The more northerly of the two wards, which might equate with Middle Ward, contains a tall tower, with windows on the south-east side, surmounted by a small turret, which could well equate with the new Tudor keep and fire control tower.

Richard Popinjay's little sketch, usually attributed to 1563 but evidently completed by 15th December 1562 (*Platt 2003*: 55), is seen as indicating the general arrangement of the castle in 1562.

Popinjay was a distinguished military engineer and surveyor to the fortifications of Portsmouth. He is known to have visited the island to inspect Mont Orgueil and he produced the plan of the island, at a scale of 3 inches to the mile, which included a number of sketches of important buildings. It is clear from his drawings of parish churches, chapels, and especially fortifications, such as Grosnez Castle, that a genuine attempt was made to depict their differing forms, and there seems no reason to believe that he produced anything other than something very similar to what existed and what he saw at Mont Orgueil in the little sketch, which measures only 2.5 centimetres across in each direction. Since there is no conclusive evidence that an earlier tower existed on the site, as has been suggested by some writers, it is assumed that the feature depicted on the 1562 map was a representation of the, completed, Tudor keep.

Philip Dixon has reviewed the documentary and architectural evidence, particularly the level of expenditure during the period 1551-1593, and has demonstrated that on completion of the Tudor keep in 1551 works were then concentrated on the two parts of the Grand Battery, or *rampire* [217, 218 & 219.], which may be the new 'device' proposed by Paulet in 1558 (*Colvin & Summerson 1982* : 451). Work was probably commenced at the south end and continued in stages around the north-west and north sides and culminating with Caesar's fort [216] and the north-east outworks [220 & 221] (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 26-28). There are many documentary references which refer to these works.

Richard Popinjay is known to have favoured stone-faced ramparts for defence against artillery, a device which he employed at Chamberlain's Mount, Castle Cornet, Guernsey – a rubble and earth-filled bulwark built in 1564 inside the west wall of the medieval southern bailey to create an artillery-resistant bulwark (*Le Patourel 1958* : 13-14 & 31-40). He built a similar structure known as the 'Great Platform' at Portsmouth in *circa* 1568, which can probably be identified with the Saluting Battery, near Square Tower. Neither of these structures in any way resemble Somerset Tower, which has been attributed to Popinjay by some writers, but they are both very similar in form and function to Grand Battery.

Richard Popinjay's recommendations and the works that followed his visit to Jersey in 1562, which he supervised between 11th April and 27th July 1564 whilst sharing his time with works at Castle Cornet, Guernsey (*Platt 2003* : 55 & 62), and were continued through until 1593, are seen to refer to the construction of Grand Battery – a huge earthen bank flanked by stone walls at the front and rear, along with the angled bastion of the north-east outworks, attributed by the Jersey Chronicler to Sir Hugh Paulet – where 'he did fortify and increase Rochefort', and alterations to the gate into Middle Ward, undertaken by Sir Anthony Paulet and dated '1593'.

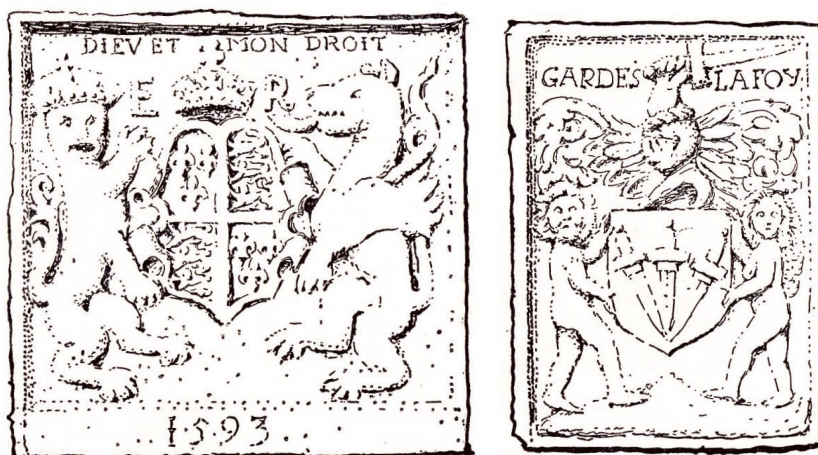
The reference in 1584 to one of the two curtains 'wanting a third part or thereabouts of his full perfection', which repeats a similar complaint made in 1567, is seen as referring, not to Somerset Tower, as has been suggested by some writers, as this appears to have been completed by Sir Hugh Paulet in 1551, but to the curtain or retaining wall on the internal face of Grand Battery, at its south end, which was never completed, though the angled bastion adjoining the gate into Middle Ward, which completed the external face of Grand Battery, was evidently not completed until 1621-1630 by Sir John Peyton.

The Jersey Heritage Trust recognises that there are views that differ with these, but have chosen to adopt them for the purposes of the Conservation Plan as they appear to best fit the available evidence.

Philip Dixon has suggested that the construction of the southern part of the Grand Battery, which incorporated the old curtain wall, was probably intended to provide a lower level defence across the Outer Ward and the approach from Gorey village, with the old curtain wall, then dominated by Somerset Tower and Mount Battery, protecting the north side of the castle.

The north part of Grand Battery, which involved the demolition of the old outer curtain wall and the burial of the remains of any inner one and buildings contained in that part of the Upper or Middle Wards, was better built than that to the south, with a new face of solid masonry constructed in the form of a slope or *batter*, though it lacked the ability to provide flanking fire from either end (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 26-27). The north-east outworks [220 & 221] comprise a demi-bastion with recessed flanker, with a single-gun port shielded by a small orillon.

The final part of these works appears to be the construction of the angled bastion at the south-west corner of Middle Ward, which involved alterations to provide a new access to the gate on its east side, which is dated '1593' and the partial burial of the remainder of the structure. This appears to have been to a design by Paul Ivy, who was consulted by Sir Anthony Paulet in that year, but the works appear not to have been completed until some time later, perhaps during the Governorship of Sir John Peyton (1603-1630) and it may be for this reason that it has been known as Sir John Peyton's Bastion [310] (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 27-28).



The Royal arms with the date 1593 and the Paulet family arms, both built into the gate giving access to Middle Ward (after Rybot 1933 Figures 20 & 21).

A detailed account of expenditure at Mont Orgueil in 1594-95 suggests the infilling of new masonry with earth (*Dixon et al 1998* : 85).

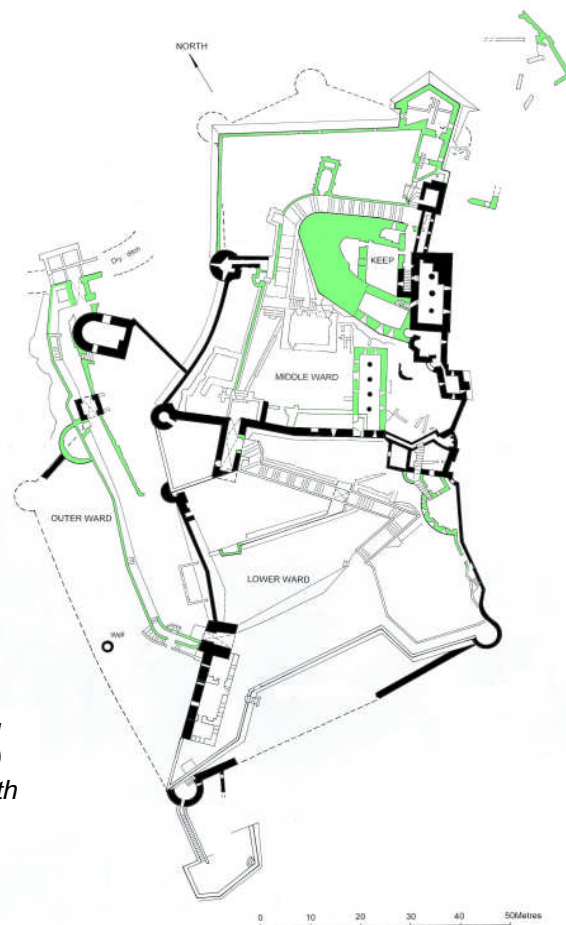
A number of other parts of the castle were adapted to take cannon during this period, in addition to the infilling of basement levels in the original keep to form gun platforms, and these included the insertion of gun-ports where only arrow-loops had previously existed.

An external stone staircase was at some stage added to southern face of the Tudor keep, to provide additional access. The best evidence available suggests that this probably took place at the very end of the seventeenth century and it was demolished in 1911 [115].

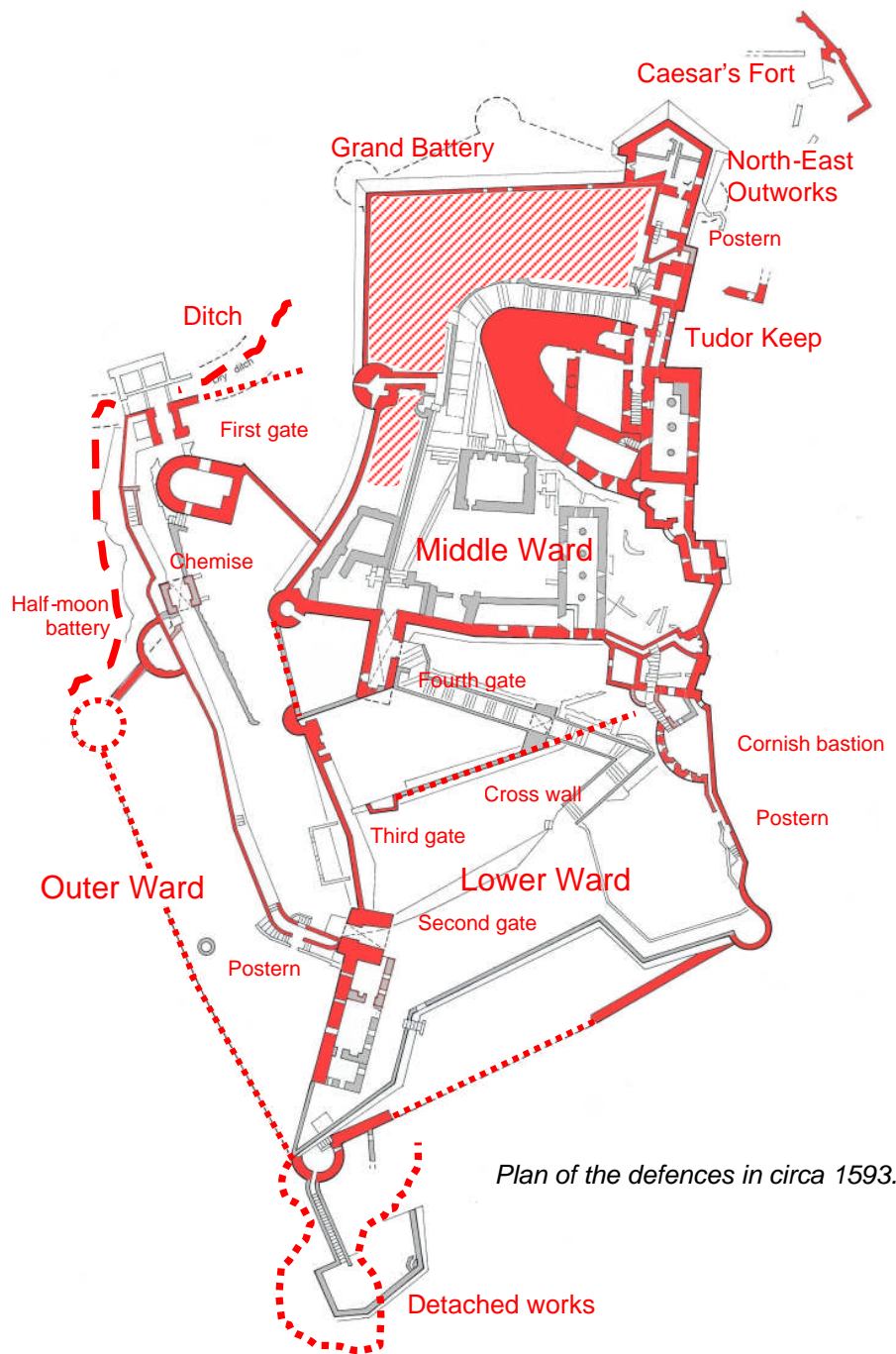


The former staircase on the south side of the Tudor keep.

The only domestic building known to have been constructed at about this time which survives to anything like its original form is the so-called 'St George's Chapel' [215], in Middle Ward, which was dated to the late fifteenth or early sixteenth century during excavations in the 1970s, and appears to have been incorrectly identified as a chapel due to the crypt-like form of the lower of its two storeys.



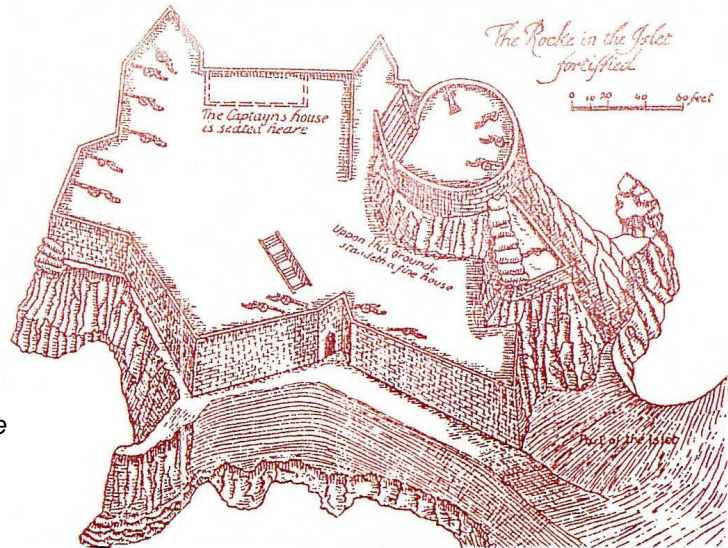
The existing plan of the castle, showing the pre-existing buildings (shown black) and the structures added in the sixteenth century (shown green).



**ELIZABETH CASTLE :
1593-**

In 1593 the Queen's Council expressed its dissatisfaction with the tactical situation of Mont Orgueil. The following year it decided to suspend all its work there and devote resources to a new castle at St Helier. The first part of that new fortification was built in 1595-1600 during the Governorship of Sir Anthony Paulet, to designs by Paul Ivy.

The earliest defences, constructed on a rocky islet in St Aubin's Bay, were in the form of an Upper Ward, strongly protected by gun batteries and triangular bastions, with a raised area, referred to as 'The Mount' or Upper Keep surmounted by a gun battery – rather reminiscent of the medieval motte and bailey.



*Paul Ivy's design for the castle
at St Helier.*

Originally called 'Fort Isabella Bellissima', the castle included a Captain's House, which is dated '1594'.

In 1600 Sir Walter Raleigh became Governor. It was at this time that his residence was transferred from Mont Orgueil to a Governor's House in this new castle, which had been known as 'New Castle', but was re-named Elizabeth Castle by Raleigh.

The castle was extended for Sir Walter Raleigh in 1600-1603, and extended again in 1626-1636; 1646-1647; and 1668, and has since been refurbished on many occasions.

1.0.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CENTRE, PRISON AND PART-TIME RESIDENCE : 1593-1680

The castle of Mont Orgueil was not abandoned after the Governor's residence was officially moved to Elizabeth Castle in 1600. Sir Walter Raleigh recommended its retention and it was periodically repaired, used for a variety of military, civic, and domestic purposes, and some of the seventeenth century Governors preferred to reside at the old castle rather than at the new one.

Sir John Peyton succeeded as Governor in 1603. In 1607 he reported that 'the Old Castle is much decayed' and in 1611 stated that in Lower Ward there was a Victualling House and a Great Granary maintained by the Government. He also noted that there were twenty other houses in Lower Ward in a state of ruin and recommended that they should be repaired by their owners who held them as places of refuge in wartime.

Accounts for the period 1617-1620 record large-scale repairs undertaken by Peyton and these included works to the roof of the Tudor keep, installing fashionable plaster ceilings in the Tudor great chamber, and the completion of the 'Western Bulwark', which was probably the bastion adjoining the gate into Middle Ward for some time known as Sir John Peyton's Bastion [310]. These works appear to have included the construction of a gunpowder store and a gunners' room behind the bastion [224].

In May 1617 an inventory was taken of ordnance and this included twenty-one mounted brass and iron cannon; nine unserviceable pieces of ordnance; a large quantity of projectiles, one hundred and eight barrels of gunpowder; and a large number of portable weapons including muskets, pikes, halberds, bows and arrows (*Rybot 1933* : 56-57).

Other works undertaken at this time included repairs to the chapel, the minister's chamber, and other chambers in Middle Ward; to the Courthouse and houses in Lower Ward; and to the granary, store-houses, workshop, stable, forge, chimneys and water cisterns in unspecified places. There is also a reference to a tennis court (*Rodwell 2006a* : 42).

In 1627 a request was made to the Privy Council for an engineer to be sent to Jersey to oversee work on entrenchments close to the castle, and Warwick Rodwell has suggested that this may have been to create a defensive position on Mont Saint Nicolas, at a time when the garrison was increased following threats of a French attack.

Sir John Peyton died in 1630 and was replaced by Sir Thomas Jermyn, with Sir Philip de Carteret as his lieutenant. Accounts for the period 1634-1637 once again record refurbishments undertaken to the Tudor keep and probably to the north-east outworks. The provision of a nursery for de Carteret's children, indicate that he must have been living in the castle at that time, and there are also references to work on the castle gardens.

The Courthouse and the civil prison in Lower Ward were refurbished and in 1637 a special prison was created within the main body of the castle to detain William Prynne, a renowned Puritan, who was held until 1640. The space where he was detained was probably the south-east tower of the medieval keep [108], which is still known as Prynne's Tower. It appears, however, that he became friendly with the de Carteret family and enjoyed many privileges which included using other spaces in the castle. Amongst his writings was a *Poetical Description of Mont Orgueil Castle*, which was dedicated to Sir Philip Carteret and published in 1641, and this referred to fifteen cast pieces of artillery in the castle.

In 1643 the English Civil War arrived in Jersey and the Parliamentary forces besieged both Elizabeth Castle, held by Philip de Carteret, and Mont Orgueil, held by Lady de Carteret. After several sorties from Mont Orgueil the Parliamentary forces were driven from their entrenchments on Mont Saint Nicolas and their arms and munitions were captured. Some of the local Parliamentary sympathisers were subsequently arrested and imprisoned in Mont Orgueil.

Captain George Carteret, who had married Sir Philip de Carteret's daughter, Elizabeth, in the Castle Chapel in 1640, assumed command and moved the seat of government of Jersey to Elizabeth Castle, leaving his brother Philip as Captain at Mont Orgueil.

In 1646 Charles, the Prince of Wales, fled England and spent six weeks in Jersey, before a period of exile in France, after which he returned to Jersey to take up residences at Elizabeth Castle, but visiting Mont Orgueil on several occasions.

In 1648 George de Carteret began the construction of additional defences within Lower Ward, which now bear his name – de Carteret's Ward [311]. The works included blocking the existing third gate, built by Henry Cornish in about 1536; replacing it with a new gate further to the east [312]; and refurbishing the Tudor battery as a new wall [313]. Access up to and beyond the new gate was by means of a wide staircase [314] and within the south side of the enclosed space, completed by 1651, a small formal garden was laid out.

Following the execution of his father, King Charles I, in 1649, the Prince of Wales was proclaimed king whilst still in Jersey, but the Civil War was not over and he had to remain in exile.

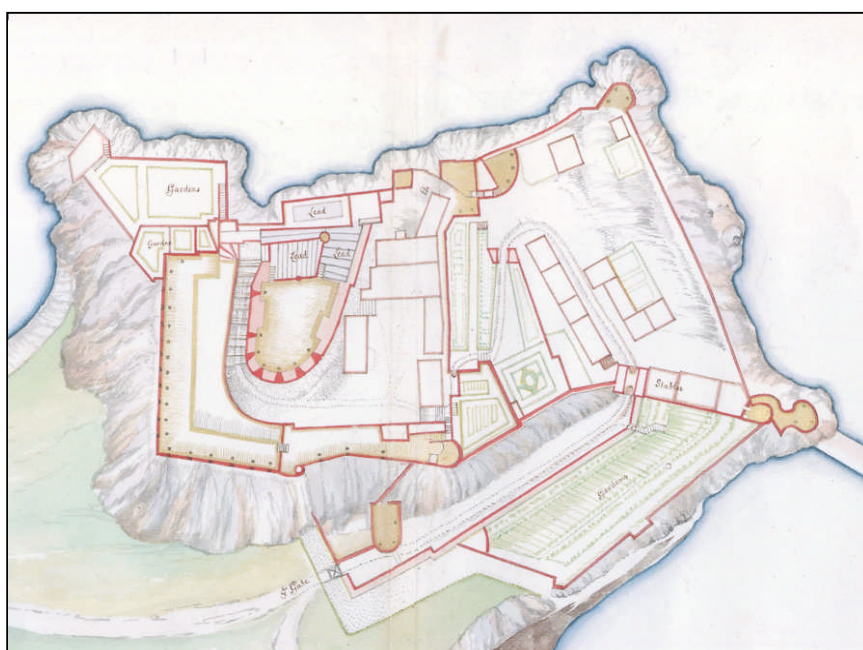
In 1651 the English Parliament sent Admiral Blake with a fleet of eighty ships and three thousand men to quell royalist Jersey, and in October of that year the castle, commanded by Colonel Philip de Carteret, was forced to surrender, but Elizabeth Castle held out for a further seven weeks.

Mont Orgueil was subsequently employed as a prison, firstly for royalists in the 1650s, then for Parliamentarians and signatories of the death warrant for Charles I in the 1660s, and subsequently for civil criminals. At the Restoration in 1660, the arms of Charles II were placed in the wall of the Lower Ward battery, which until it collapsed into the sea in 1801 carried the names King Charles Battery [306].

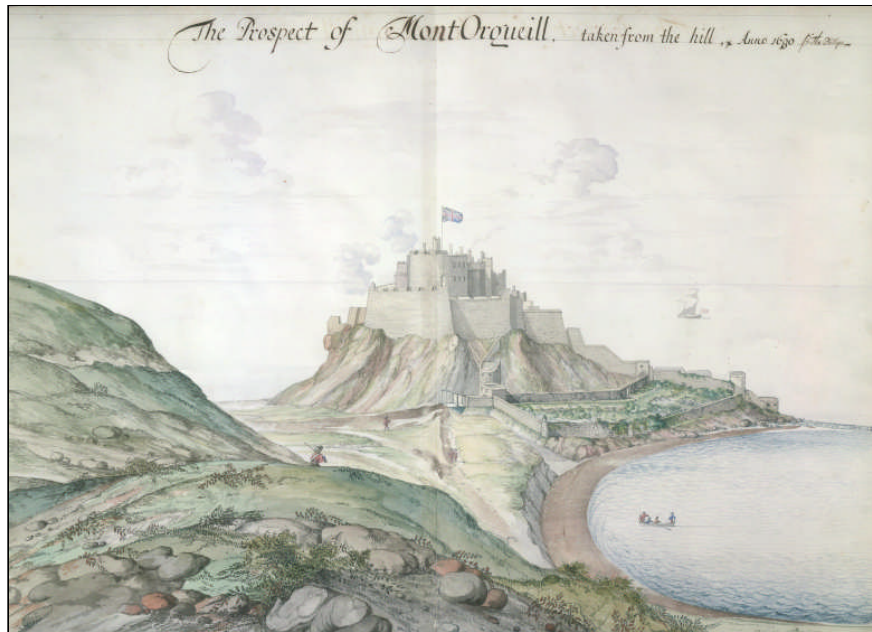
In 1678-1679 the King sent officers under the command of Lieutenant-Colonel George Legge to report on the state of the castle at Mont Orgueil, which was threatened with demolition. He was accompanied by Thomas Phillips, a military engineer, who prepared a coloured plan and a coloured 'prospect' of the castle in 1680⁶, and possibly also by the Engineer-General, Sir Bernard de Gomme, who prepared a report on the structure.



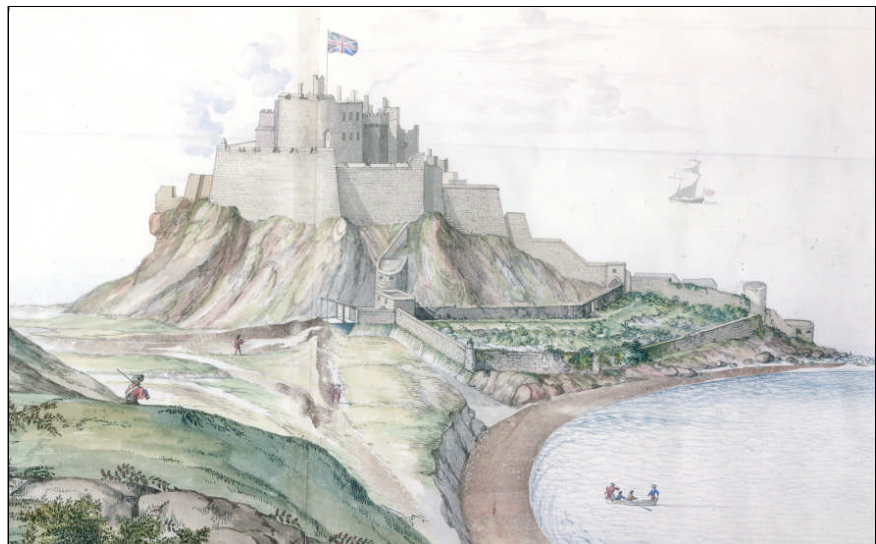
Thomas Phillips' plan of Mont Orgueil, produced in 1680 (right), and a detail of it (below). North is to the left in both cases.



⁶ The originals are held in the British Library, reference *King's MS 48 fols 74v-77r*. The Jersey Heritage Trust holds copies in digital form whilst the Jersey Archives holds a black and white copy of the plan, reference *C/D/P/B/1/2*.



Thomas Phillips' 'Prospect of Mont Orgueil' produced in 1680 (above) and detail of the same (below)



In June 1680 Bernard de Gomme signed a special report on Mont Orgueil which read as follows :

'This castle is in several places out of repaire. There is a great hill lyes before the said castle about 350 yards distance. To preserve the castle against the hill, the parapet of the great platfforme requires to be raised 6 foot higher than the parapet is att present and to make the parapet 12 foot thick upon which platfforme may be planted 10 whole culverings and 8 demy-culverings. On the left hand of this great platfforme on the lower line, the parapet is to be made 6 foot broad and one foot higher.
(cont)

(cont)

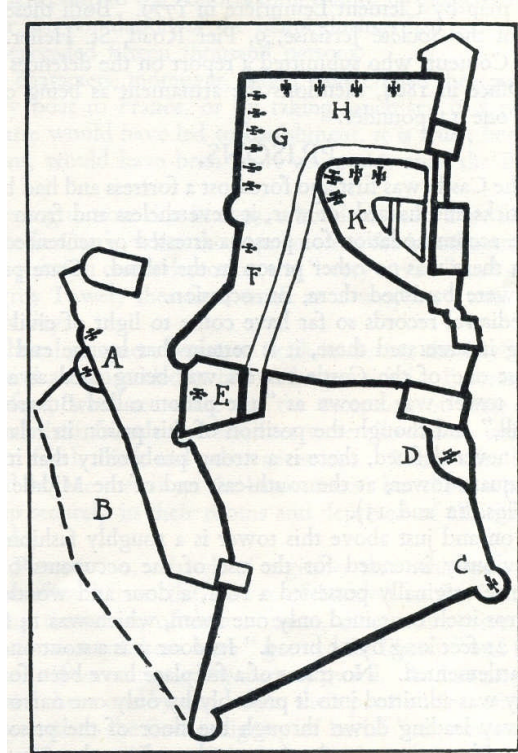
At the top of the upper castle the parapet is to be made 4 foot thicker, 80 feet long, which platform had the command of the hill, and to turne an arch where the leads are att the end of the said platforme, being 15 foot long and 14 foot broad, and also to make 7 or 8 steps to come upon the platforme.

In 1680 the Master Gunner of England, Richard Leake, examined and prepared 'An accompt taken of all the Ordnance, etc. in Mount Argile Castle', which stated, for the first time, where each gun was situated. This enabled Norman Rybot to reconstruct the positions of the armaments at that time (Rybot 1933 57-58 Figure 45).

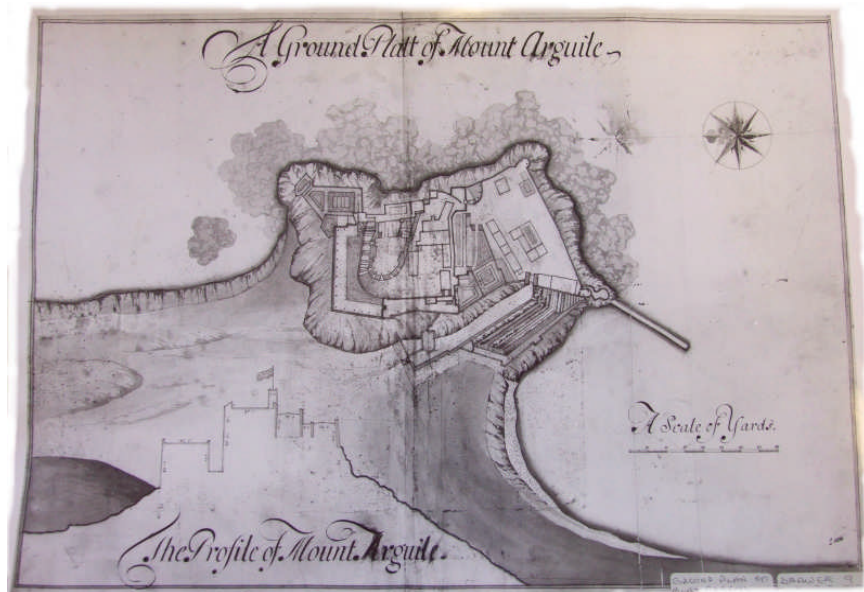
The positions of the guns at Mont Orgueil in 1680 (after Leake and Rybot).

Key

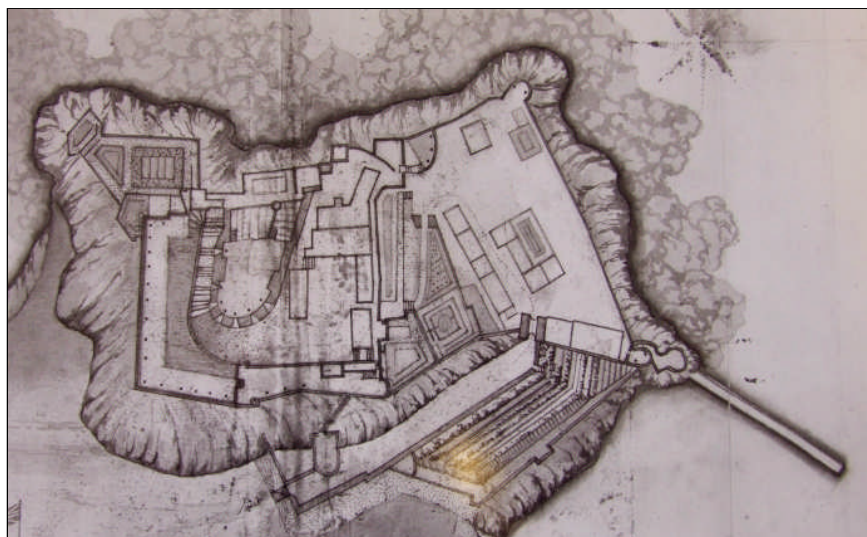
- A. Two Sakers
- B. Suggested that two Demi-Culverins of 11 feet be placed here.
- C. One Saker.
- D. One Murderer (24 pounder).
- E. One Minion.
- F. One Murderer (24 pounder).
- G. Three Demi-Culverins and three Sakers.
- H. One Demi-Culverin, two Sakers, and one Minion.
- K. Three Demi-Culverins and one Saker.



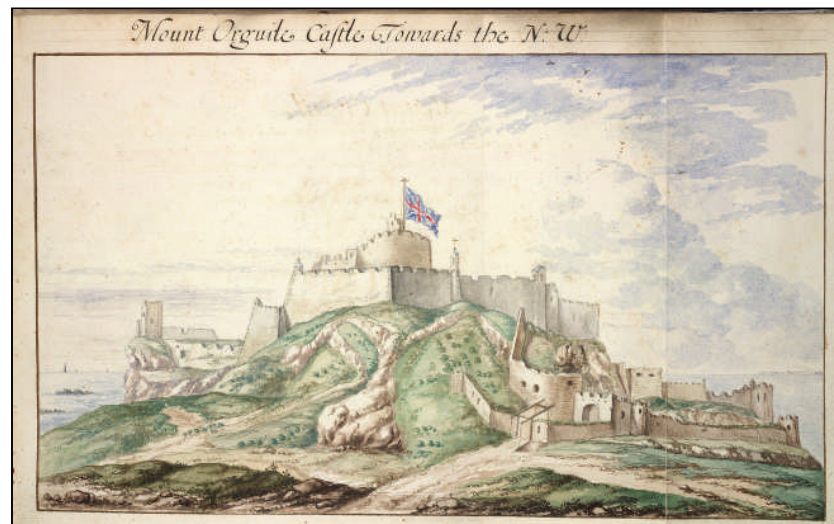
The plan and prospect produced in 1680 by Thomas Phillips appear to be the earliest reliable, detailed representations of the form of the castle. However, the library of the Société Jersiaise holds a copy of an anonymous and undated plan of the castle, captioned 'A Grand Platte of Mont Arguile'. It includes a dimensioned profile of the castle and is believed to be a copy of an original once held at the National Maritime Museum. The detail on the plan is very similar to that on the Phillips' plan with which it must be roughly contemporary.



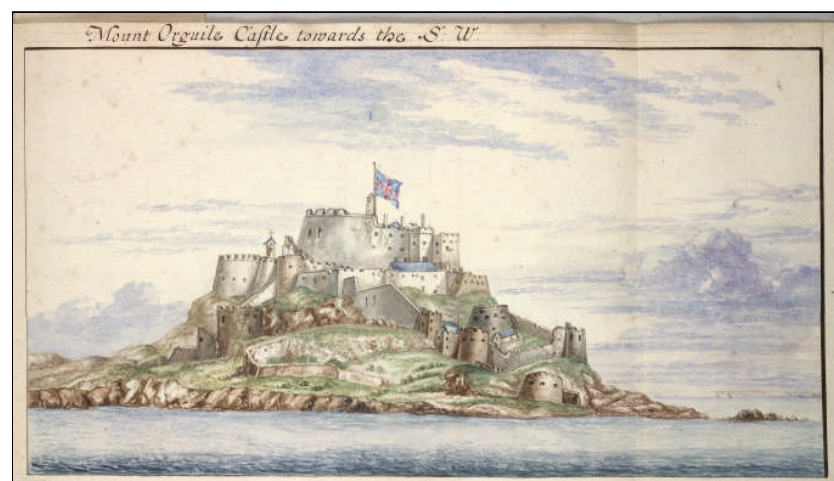
The anonymous and undated plan and profile of Mont Orgueil, probably produced in circa 1680 (above); a detail showing the plan (below); and a further detail showing the profile (bottom). North is to the left in the plans.



The British Library also holds two colour sketch views of Mont Orgueil, from the north-west and from the south-west.⁷ They are contained within a bound folio entitled 'Of the Landing Places about the Isle of Jersey', and are also said to have been produced by Thomas Phillips in 1680. However, they are unsigned and undated and also include a small amount of detail that does not appear on Phillips' plan, such as the new entrance to the castle alongside Harliston Tower. Together with the differing styles of the two drawings from that signed and dated by Phillips in 1680 and the different spellings of the place-name – 'Mont Orgueill' on the first drawing and 'Mount Orguile Castle' on other two, this may indicate that their attribution to Phillips is incorrect and that they were produced at a slightly later date, perhaps nearer to or shortly after 1700.



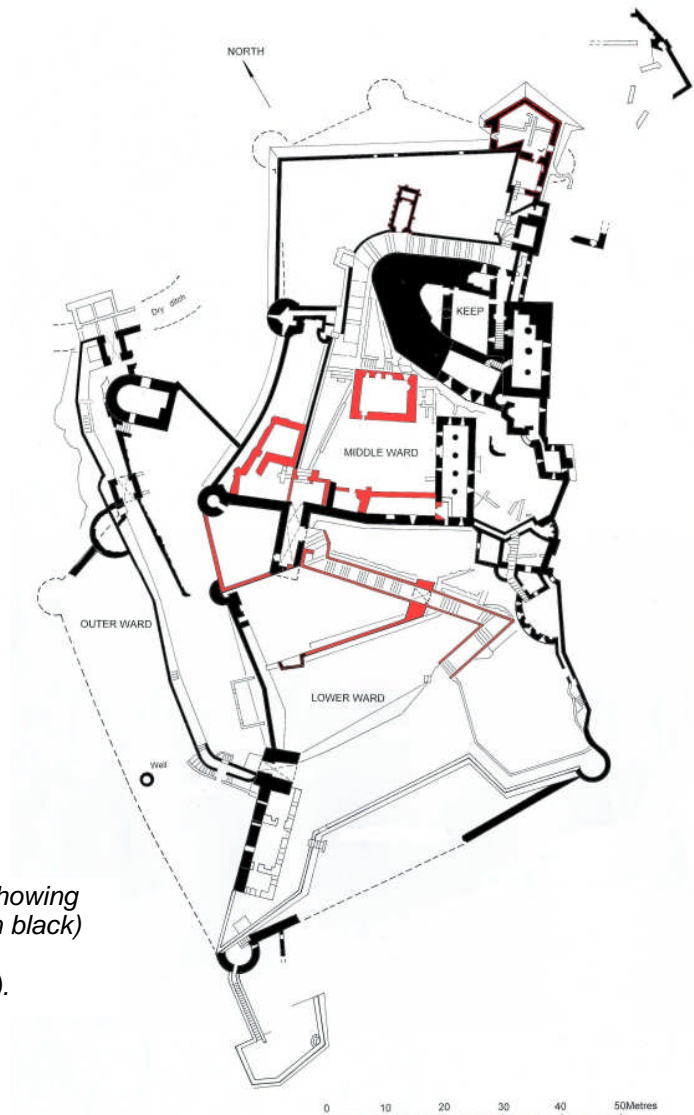
Mont Orgueil in circa 1700, from the north-west (above) and from the south-west (below).



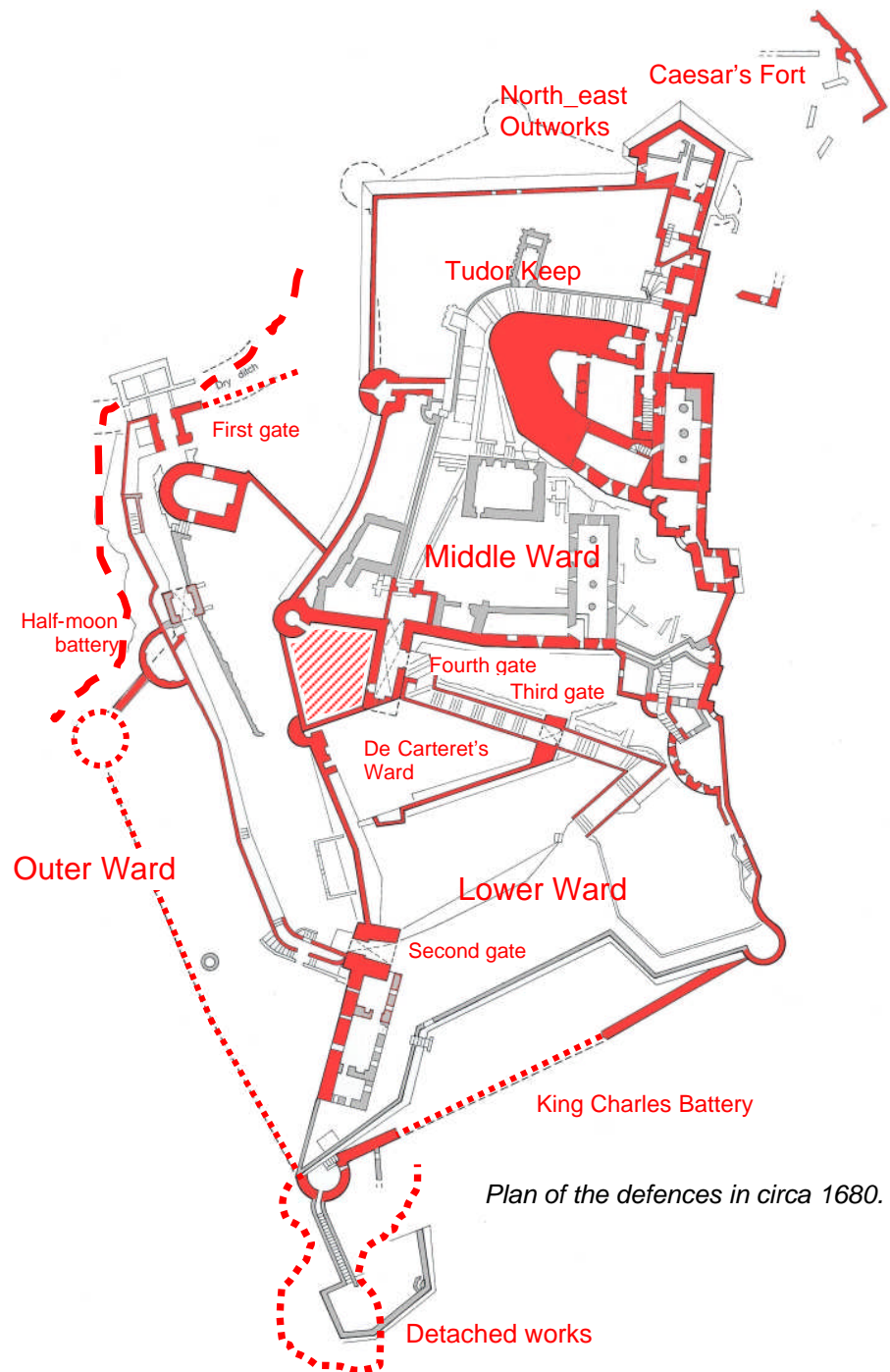
These earliest of plans and drawings of Mont Orgueil record a variety of details, including buildings within the Outer Ward which are identified on the later 1755 plan (see Section 1.0.6).

⁷ British Library *King's MS*, 49 folios 4 & 5.

Despite the various surveys and reports produced at this time, it appears that few, if any, works were undertaken and during the Governorship of Sir John Lanier (1679-1684) it was reported that the castle had turned into 'a common tippling house and the garrison prostituted' (Rybot 1933 : 72).



The existing plan of the castle, showing the pre-existing buildings (shown black) and the structures added in the seventeenth century (shown red).



1.0.6 MILITARY GARRISON : 1680-1907

The castle of Mont Orgueil appears to have remained mostly unoccupied at the end of the seventeenth century, except perhaps in the Lower Ward where the Courthouse and some cottages were located.

In a report presented to James II in 1685, entitled 'A Survey of ye Island of Jersey', Philip Dumaresq reported that the castle was only fit for barracks for a company of foot and that the carriages for the guns had perished.

In October 1691 it was reported that the lodgings in Mont Orgueil were in such a state of dilapidation that it was impossible to quarter the soldiers there, and that they had to be billeted with the local inhabitants. In 1693 the castle was declared to be in a ruinous state and that the guns had been broken 'by throwing them down from the top'.

It was about this time that Mont Orgueil ceased to be a prison and prisoners were henceforth taken to a town prison in St Helier which had been completed in 1693.¹

A plan of the castle with French annotations was produced in about 1700, and this identifies a building at the south-east corner of Lower Ward as a 'Prison' and may, perhaps, therefore date to before 1693. The plan was subsequently used in 1872 to record a transfer of responsibility for the castle (see below).

Between 1730 and 1734 an engineer from the Ordnance Department, John Bastide, was actively engaged in the Channel Islands, mostly in strengthening the defences at Elizabeth Castle, but he also mounted some guns at Mont Orgueil.

In 1741 a very detailed and coloured plan was produced of 'The greatest part of Mont Orgueil Castle', which not only included several profiles through the defences but also a proposal (coloured yellow on the original) for a new curtain wall along the west side of what then remained of the Outer Ward, immediately adjacent to the outer wall of the chemise.² This was to extend between a new round tower alongside a new first gate which had been created adjoining Harliston Tower and another new round tower at the south-west corner of Lower Ward.

It appears, however, that the proposed works were not proceeded with, but the detailed references on the plan provide an insight into the condition and use of the castle at that time. The old Tudor keep appears to have been used as lodgings at this time and the plan includes the external stairs on the south side of the Tudor residential apartments [115]. Only one building is shown within Lower Ward and this was identified as '8. Suttling House and Gunr.Room'.

¹ We are grateful to John Clarke for this information.

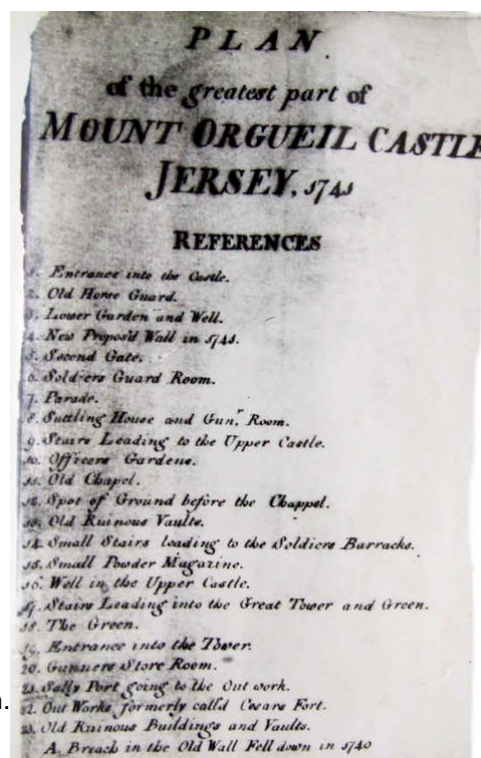
² The original is held in the Public Record Office, London, reference *MPH 1/252* – previously *WO 78/1218*. The Jersey Heritage Trust holds a coloured copy of the plan in digital form, whilst the Jersey Archives holds a copy in black and white – Reference *C/D/P/B1/2*.



The 1741 plan, with the proposed new curtain wall arrowed (above) and a detail of the references (right).

The references read as follows :

1. Entrance into the castle.
 2. Old Horse Guard.
 3. Lower garden and wall.
 4. New Proposed Wall in 1741.
 5. Second Gate.
 6. Soldiers Guard Room.
 7. Parade.
 8. Suttling House and Gunr. Room.
 9. Stairs Leading to the Upper Castle.
 10. Officers Gardens.
 11. Old Chapel,
 12. Spot of Ground before the Chappel.
 13. Old Ruinous Vaults.
 14. Small Stairs leading to the Soldiers Barracks.
 15. Small Powder Magazine.
 16. Well in the Upper Castle.
 17. Stairs Leading into the Great Tower and Green.
 18. The Green.
 19. Entrance into the Tower.
 20. Gunners Store Room.
 21. Sally Port going into the Out Work.
 22. Out Works formerly called Cesars Fort.
 23. Old Ruinous Buildings and Vaults.
- A. Breach in the Old Wall Fell down in 1740.

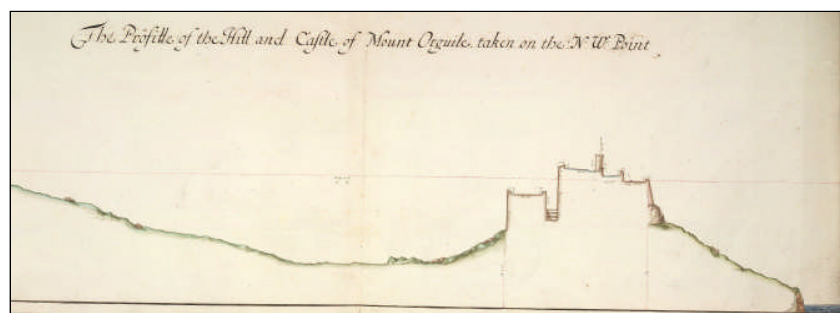


It would appear from the 1741 plan that already by this time the sixteenth century first gate had been demolished and replaced by an opening alongside Harliston Tower [414]. Previously it has been suggested that this new opening had been created in the 1780s, but this is clearly not the case as it was in existence in 1741.

In 1755 a new plan was made of Mont Orgueil and a profile was produced showing the relationship between the castle and the nearby Mont Saint Nicolas, which remained a subject of concern.³



The plan of Mont Orgueil produced in 1755.



The profile produced in 1755 showing the castle and Mont Saint Nicolas.

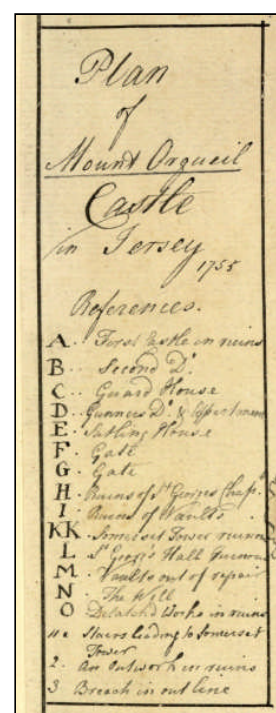
³ British Library reference *Maps King's Topographical*, 55 pages 78 & 79. The Jersey Heritage Trust holds copies in digital form.

The references attached to the 1755 plan provides an insight into the condition and use of the castle at that time.

The references (reproduced to the right) appear to read as follows :

- A First castle in ruins
- B. Second ditto
- C. Guard House
- D. Gunners ditto & Apartments
- E. Sutling House
- F. Gate
- G. Gate
- H. Ruins of St Georges Chapel
- I. Ruins of Vaults
- KK. Somerset Tower ruin
- L. St George's Hall ruinous
- M. Vaults out of repair
- N. The Well
- O. Detached Works in ruins

- 1. Stairs leading to Somerset Tower
- 2. An outwork in ruin
- 3. Breach in outline



The castle remained mostly unoccupied and in a ruinous state for much of the remainder of the eighteenth century and it might have fallen into complete collapse if it was not for a revival of interest in the defence of the island during the American and French wars, culminating in the Napoleonic Wars of 1793-1815. In 1770 rooms in the upper part of the castle, probably in the medieval and Tudor keeps, were repaired for use by officers and soldiers.

A drawing of Mont Orgueil from the north, produced in July 1777, appears to show remnants of a curtain wall beyond the, by now demolished, sixteenth century first gate, which had also been depicted on the view from the north-west in about 1700, so it may well have existed at that time as a remnant of a curtain wall built at the same time as the gate to connect with the outer medieval curtain suggested by some writers.



Mont Orgueil from the north in 1777.

In 1778 a structure referred to as Saint Mary's Chapel, which appears to have been the medieval great hall later adapted as the Tudor kitchen, was converted as a barrack room for sixty men and the uppermost levels of the lodging range on the south side of the Tudor keep were modified to take guns which were directed to the south towards Grouville Bay.

Jersey Round Towers : 1778-1801



These works coincide with the commencement of construction of some twenty-three round towers around the coast of Jersey in the period 1778-1801, under the direction of the Governor, General Conway, in response to the possible threat of French invasion following their coalition with the America in their War of Independence.

The threat culminated in the Battle of Jersey, which took place at St Helier in January 1781 in the location now known as Royal Square, and this led to a decisive British victory.

By the late eighteenth century Mont Orgueil, now in ruins, was beginning to attract artists, and amongst these was a local man, George Heriot, who produced two studies in January 1790, one from the east and the other from the west, and these appear to be accurate portrayals of the structure at this time.⁴



Extracts from the two paintings by George Heriot in 1790, showing the castle from the east (above) and from the west (below)



⁴ British Library reference *Maps King's Topographical*, 55 pages 80A & 80B.

NAPOLEONIC WARS : 1793-1815



Admiral Philippe
d'Auvergne

In 1793 France declared war on England and, once again, Jersey was in the front line. The defence of the Channel Islands was entrusted to **Admiral Philippe d'Auvergne**, a Jerseyman by birth, who made Mont Orgueil the base for his French anti-Revolutionary spy network.

In 1794 there were several threats of invasion from France. The first, in March, saw additional detachments of troops stationed at Mont Orgueil, and the second, in late December, saw a French convoy of over forty vessels pass the east coast of the island, close to the castle.

In the period 1799-1801 d'Auvergne carried out extensive works to the castle, which included re-roofing the rooms in the keep and restoring them for his own use. He made a number of alterations to the buildings, including the conversion of the Tudor great chamber to a kitchen and inserting a number of niches for statuary in the walls.

In 1801 King Charles Battery, formerly the south curtain of Lower Ward, collapsed onto the beach below. A new line of defence – Parade Battery [316] was constructed in its place and at the same time a new Water Battery [317] was constructed at the south-west corner of Lower Ward, where some fortifications had previously existed.

Martello Towers : 1808-1811

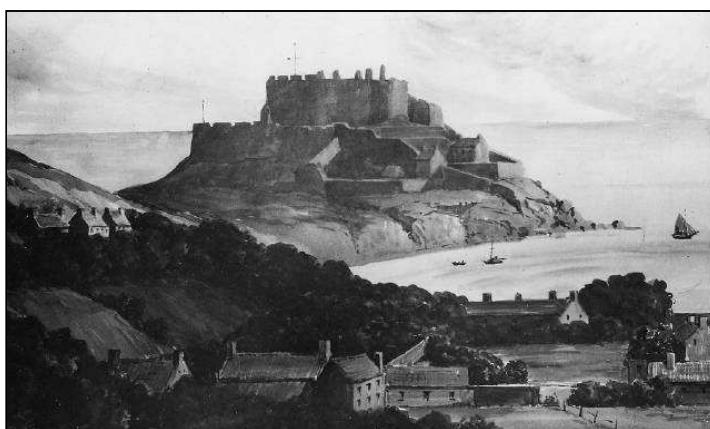


During this period seven Martello Towers were erected around the coast of Jersey, to supplement the earlier round towers, and in 1806 a new fortification was commenced in St Helier, which became known as Fort Regent on its completion in 1820.

In 1812 Philippe d'Auvergne was relieved of his command and his departure marked the end of six hundred years of official residence in the castle of Mont Orgueil by representatives of the English Crown.

The castle rapidly fell into ruin, although detachments of troops were briefly housed in the buildings during the course of the nineteenth century.

In 1815, Tobias Young produced an oil painting of the castle and neighbourhood from the hill above Gorey village, and this appears to be a fairly reliable portrayal of the buildings at that time, which included a large property within Lower Ward [319].



*Tobias Young's painting of
Mont Orgueil in 1815.*

Pier Road : 1821

By this time much of the outer wall of the Outer Ward had fallen into the sea and in 1821 the land at the foot of the rock on this side of the castle was sold for development. Pier Road was created, and between then and 1840 a series of houses were built along the bottom of the cliff.

In 1832 William Frederick Wells produced a painting of the castle from the north.

Frederick Wells' painting of Mont Orgueil from the north in 1832.



Visitor attraction : 1834-

In 1834 a retired Lieutenant-Governor, Sir Hilgrove Turner, obtained permission from the Board of Ordnance to open the castle to the public and to use the proceeds to tidy up the ruins and carry out antiquarian investigations.

Victoria Tower : 1837



In 1837 the last Martello Tower to be built on Jersey was erected on Mont Saint Nicolas and named after the Queen – Victoria Tower. It appears that it was constructed to deny an enemy access to the hill from which it could bombard Mont Orgueil.

Also in 1837 the Tudor great chamber was partly demolished and the roof was taken off the Long Passage, presumably as a safety precaution. During these works, conducted by Lieutenant-Colonel Oldfield, a mutilated statue of the Virgin Mary was found embedded in the walls.

A first history of the castle, entitled 'Some account of Mont Orgueil castle', was published in the same year. Although it lacks the name of the author, it is usually attributed to Oldfield – probably the first antiquarian to delve into the history of Mont Orgueil.

In 1846 there was a proposal that the castle should be re-armed with twenty-three guns of large calibre and that the accommodation for three officers and seventy men should be greatly augmented, but this was not implemented.

**Queen Victoria's
visit : 1846**

By 1846 the site had become a popular tourist attraction and a subject for artists. In 1846 Queen Victoria and Prince Albert visited the castle – an event captured in a lithograph by local artists John le Capelain and Philip Oules.



Queen Victoria's visit in 1846. The form of the second gate is of interest whilst the building on the extreme left was in use as a tea and coffee room.

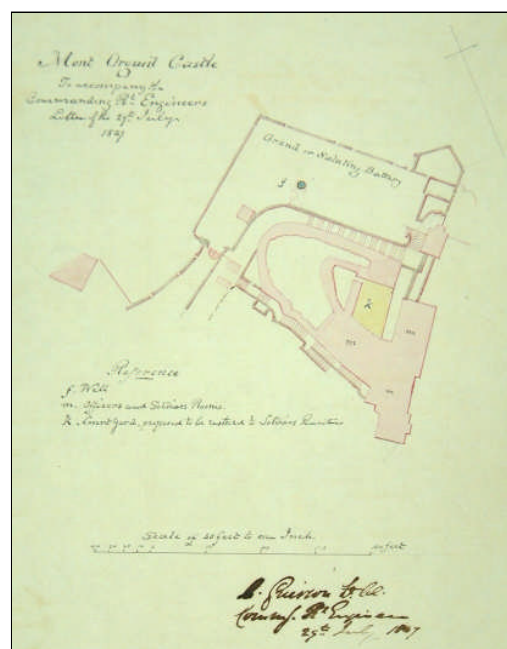


Extract of a painting by John le Capelain (1812-1848), recording a view of Mont Orgueil from the north.

A plan of the keep area, dated 29 July 1847, records that the buildings of the medieval keep and the residential apartments of the Tudor keep were still roofed and contained 'Officers and Soldiers Rooms', whereas there was a proposal to restore the former Tudor great chamber, then a courtyard, as soldiers' quarters.⁵

It is recorded that detachments of troops were housed in the castle as late as 1855 and 1875.

⁵ Public Record Office, London, reference MPH 1/679 (previously WO 55/815, no 25).



A document held in the British Library appears to record a transfer of responsibility for the castle which was 'Handed over to Lieutenant M..... St Ryl Engrs by his father in 1872'.⁶ This inscription is written on a previously unidentified and undated plan of the castle and part of a profile up to Mont Saint Nicolas, on which cannon are shown on the top of Somerset Tower and the parts of the castle are either lettered or numbered, but the key is missing. It is entitled 'Plan du chateau de Mountorguille'. Given that the few captions on the drawing are in French and, since it shows the sixteenth century first gate, now believed to have been demolished in about 1740, it was presumably produced for the French in the late seventeenth or the early eighteenth century, and the British Library index attributes it to *circa* 1700, which would appear to be about right.



⁶ British Library reference *Add MS*, 33231, Q3.

The continuing development of Gorey and its Mont Orgueil castle as a tourist venue, with a string of hotels and guest houses around the new harbour, benefited from the completion of the Jersey Eastern Railway in 1872, linking Gorey directly to St Helier.



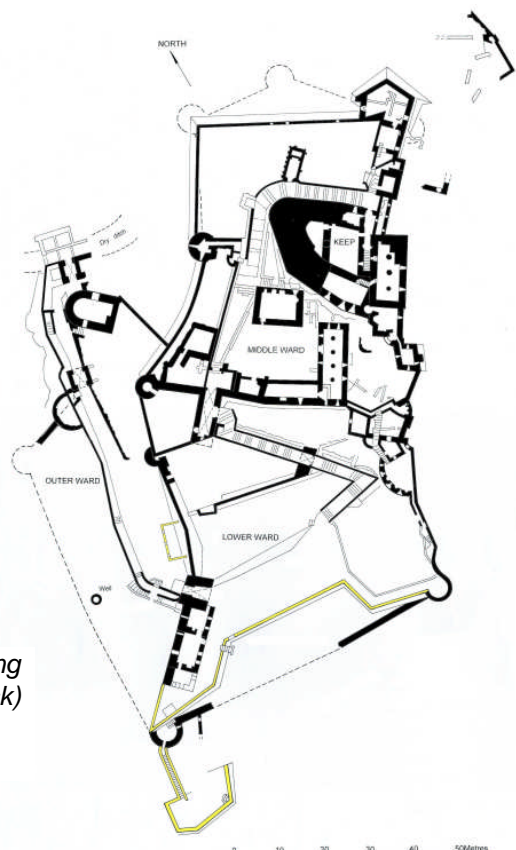
Mont Orgueil with the village of Gorey and its new railway station in the foreground.

TIME TABLE.			
ST. HELIER AND GOREY PIER.			
WEEK DAYS.		SUNDAYS.	
St. Helier to Gorey Pier.	Gorey Pier to St. Helier.	St. Helier to Gorey Pier.	Gorey Pier to St. Helier.
a.m.	a.m.	a.m.	a.m.
18 0	18 30	8 30	9 0
9 0	9 30	9 30	10 15
10 0	10 30		
11 30	12 noon	12 50	1 30
		2 0	2 30
p.m.	p.m.	2 30	3 0
12 45	1 30	3 0	3 30
2 0	2 30	3 30	5 0
3 0	3 30	4 0	5 30
4 0	4 30	5 30	6 0
5 0	5 30	6 30	7 0
6 0	6 30	7 30	8 0
7 0	7 30	8 5	8 35
8 0	8 30	9 15	9 45
9 15	9 45		
10 30	11 0		

Passengers holding ordinary tickets can break the journey at any or each of the Company's Stations.

† Cheap Trains. See page 8.
* These Trains do not stop at Les Marais.

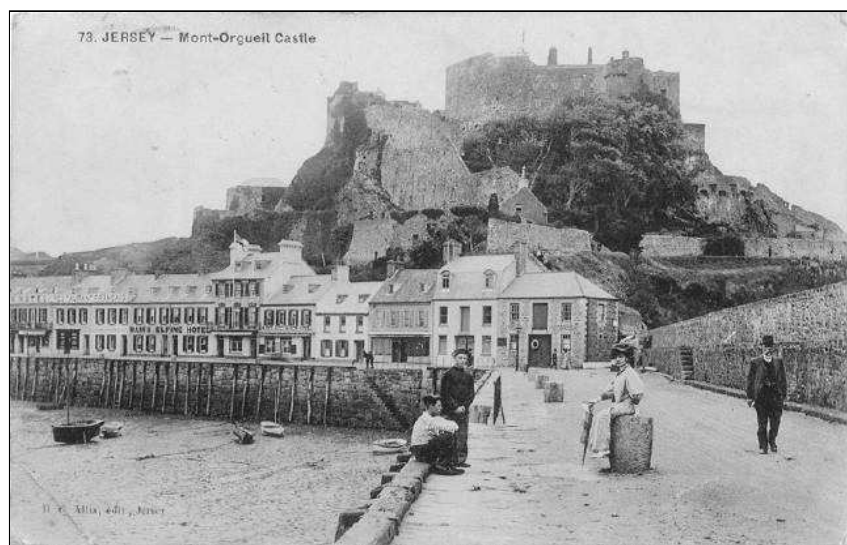
A time table for the railway to Gorey Pier, at the end of the nineteenth century

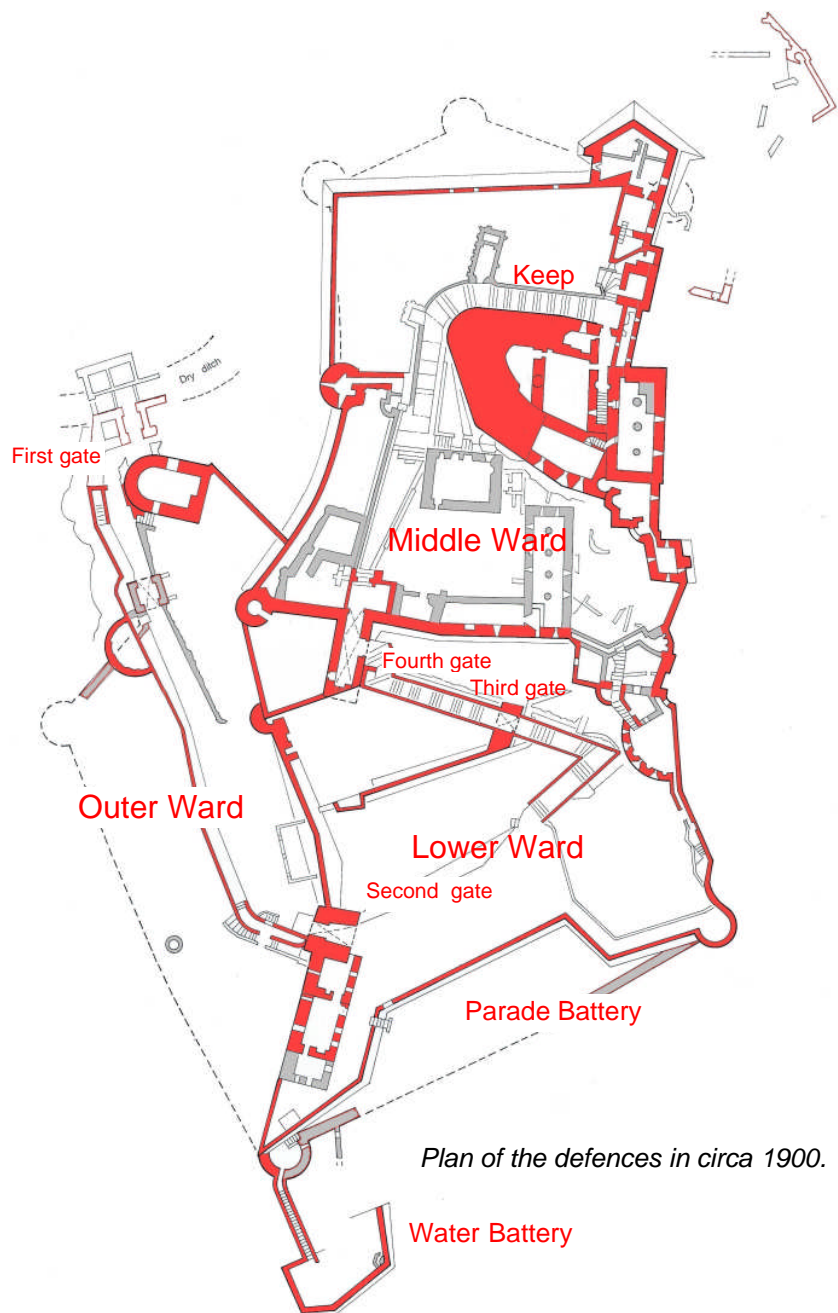


The existing plan of the castle, showing the pre-existing buildings (shown black) and the structures added in the nineteenth century (shown yellow).

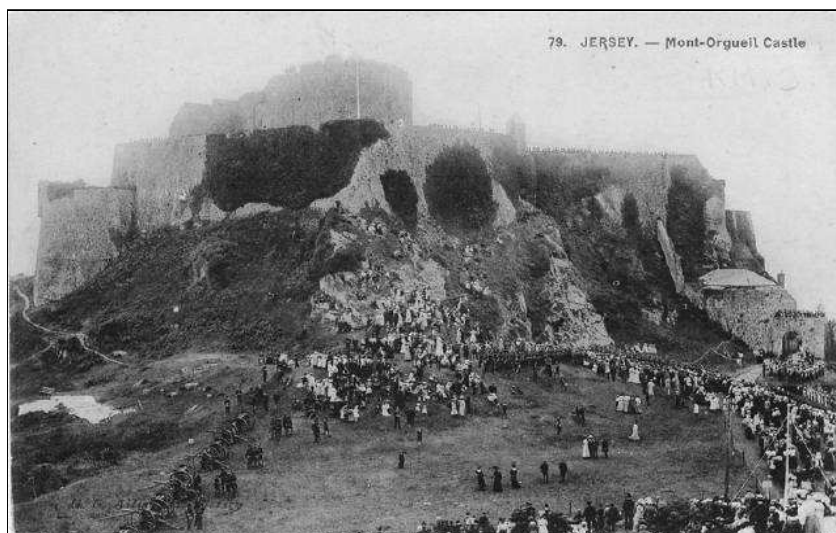
During the latter half of the nineteenth century photography became a popular pastime, and the castle, harbour, and village of Gorey became a popular subject for artistic study and tourist postcards.

Photographic studies of Mont Orgueil, towards the end of the nineteenth century.





Ownership of Mont Orgueil was formally transferred from the Crown to the States of Jersey in 1907 and a new era of research, restoration, and display for public enjoyment began.



Photographs taken on Castle Green in 1907, recording the transfer of Mont Orgueil from the Crown to the States of Jersey (above and below).



1.0.7 HISTORIC MONUMENT : 1907-2007

The transfer of Mont Orgueil to the States of Jersey in 1907 was conditional on its maintenance as a historical monument for public enjoyment and benefit and, with only brief military interventions during the First and Second World Wars, it has served this purpose ever since.

The seeds of this new era in the life of the castle had already been sown in the 1830s, when it was formally opened to the public, and programmes of repair and research had been commenced.

For the purposes of this part of the Conservation Plan, it is not the intention to go into great detail concerning the repairs and investigations that have taken place at Mont Orgueil, although further references are made to these works in the description (Section 1.0.8), but it is the intention to identify the principal sources of information and to say something about the philosophy behind the repairs and of the people responsible for excavations and studies of the fabric.

A list of alterations and repairs undertaken in the period 1752-1835, mostly to accommodate the garrison, had been included in the notes attributed to Lieutenant-Colonel Oldfield (*Anon 1938*).

A programme of repair and restoration was begun immediately in 1908, under the direction of a Restoration Committee comprising members of the Works Committee and of the Société Jersiaise, and appears to have adhered to the prevailing philosophy in the UK, which was to uncover and display as much as possible of the medieval and Tudor castle. This involved stripping away what were then regarded as 'modern' additions; restoring damaged features; and stripping the ruins of all vegetation. Thus most of the eighteenth and nineteenth century additions were removed, including d'Auvergne's remodelling of the keep in about 1800.

A particularly valuable source of information pertaining to works undertaken in the period November 1908 to March 1928 is a notebook of decisions of the sub committee for Mont Orgueil which has recently been identified in the library of the Société Jersiaise, evidently compiled by Edmund Nicolle and Norman Rybot (see Appendix 2). It is not clear whether this is the minute book of the sub committee or simply a notebook of one member of the committee, as the entries are somewhat brief, but the document certainly records decisions made at the meetings and alongside them the pencil annotation 'done' has been added to the majority of entries and it is assumed that this implies that the proposed works had subsequently been undertaken. The document has yet to be fully transcribed, but it is clear that a much better understanding of which works were proposed and undertaken could be obtained from this document. Sample entries include the following :

25th April 1911

1. Harliston Tower – remove slate roof, repairs walls, windows
... Excavate rubbish Done
7. Construct two buttresses in N.W. wall of crypt to ensure roof
..... Done

16th May 1911 Special visit to consider advisability of removing stone staircase under walls of keep, which obstructed the lower windows of Keep in the ground floor or store room .. decided to remove staircase..... Done

In 1911 and/or 1912 excavations were undertaken on the site of the sixteenth century first gate but, although several photographs record these works, only a simplified plan and a short account of the findings were published (*Nicolle 1921 :109-110*).

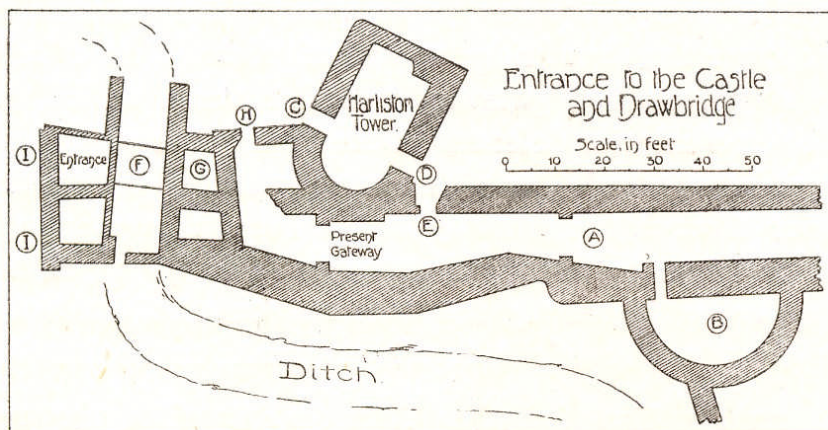


Record photographs of the excavations of the sixteenth century first gate in 1911 or 1912 (above and below).





Record photograph of the excavations of the sixteenth century first gate in 1911 or 1912.

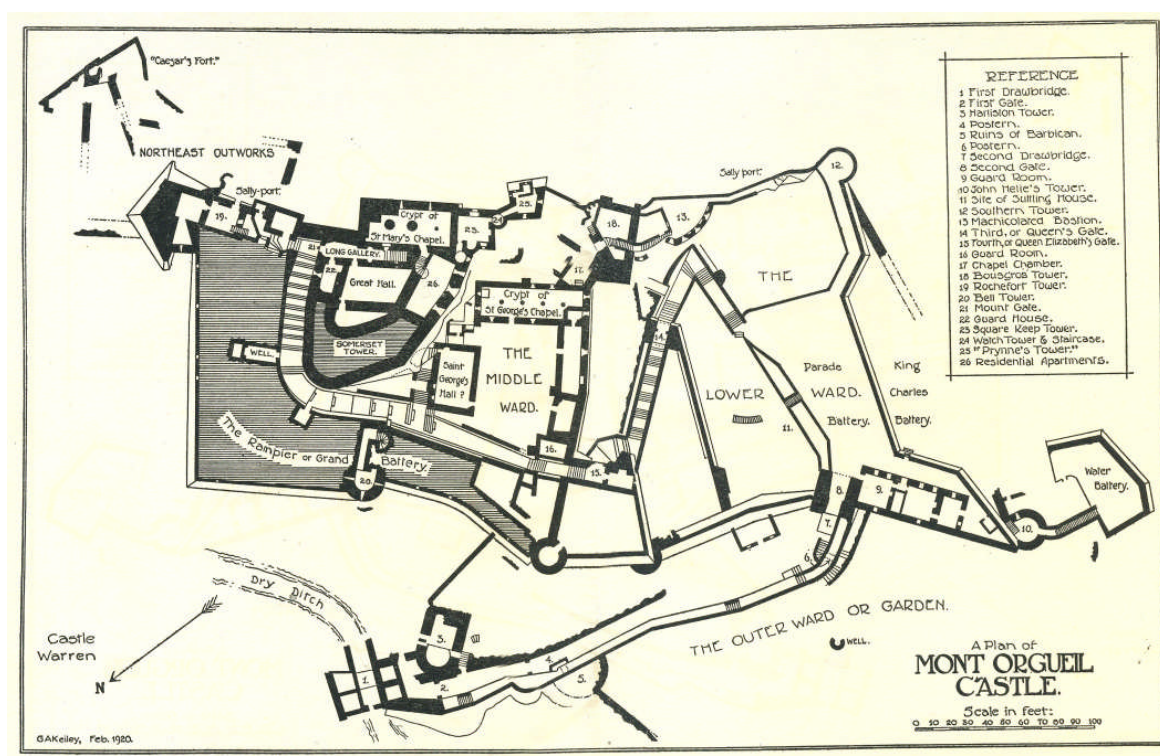


Record plan of the features revealed during excavations of the sixteenth century first gate in 1911 or 1912 (after Nicolle 1921 : 109).

The plan of the gate and associated structures was subsequently laid out as hard landscaping on the ground.

During the First World War (1914-1918) Mont Orgueil was used as an observation post, manned by small detachments of coast guards and the Royal Militia of the Island.

In 1920 a large scale map of the castle was prepared by G.A. Keiley and this was presented by him to the States Committee of Public Works.



Keiley's plan of the castle, prepared in 1920.

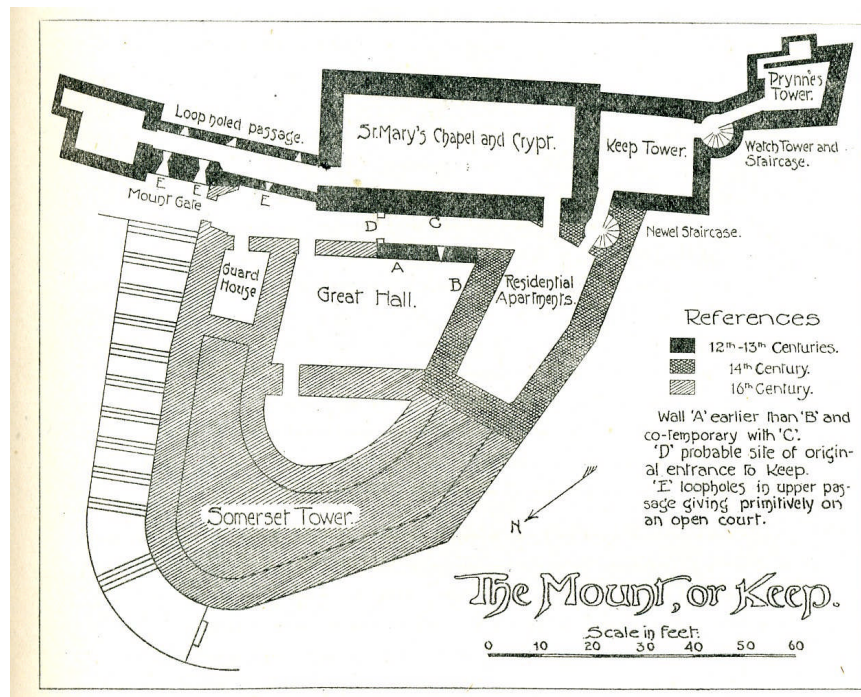


Edmund Nicolle

In 1921 **Edmund Nicolle** (1868-1929), a distinguished historian and His Majesty's Viscount of Jersey, published his 'Mont Orgueil Castle : Its History and Description', which was the first full account of the castle. This includes several photographs of views of the castle as well as details of elements of it.

It comprised a documentary-based history of the castle (*Nicolle 1921 : 1-95*); a general description (*Nicolle 1921 : 99-106*); and a detailed account of the defences (*Nicolle 1921 : 108-139*). It also included notes on 'works in progress', which is in effect an explanation of the principles adopted during repairs commenced in 1908, following advice from representatives of the Council of the Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings in England and the French equivalent, the Société Française d'Archéologie (*Nicolle 1921 : 137-139*), as well as a record of repairs and restoration works undertaken in the period 1908 to 1921 (*Nicolle 1921 : 140-141*). This work is a particularly valuable source of information though interpretations of the actual structures have in some cases since been modified.

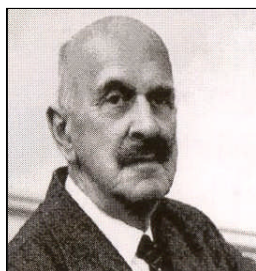
Edmund Nicolle was the first writer to distinguish phases in the construction of the keep, though these have since been modified as a result of the work by Warwick Rodwell in the period 1997-2001.



The phases of construction of the keep, as distinguished by Edmund Nicolle (1921 : 129).

It is evident, however, that the thoroughness of the earliest repair works caused anxiety and in 1926 the architect W.H. Knowles emphasised the importance of retention of ancient fabric; interventions based on evidence – now often referred to as ‘informed conservation’; and reversibility of repairs.

In the 1920s restoration had concentrated on the keep, where the Tudor lodging range [115] was completely gutted and given a new roof and new floors. The Regency sash windows had already been removed and the openings restored to their Tudor form, and similar works had been undertaken in the Square Keep Tower [106].



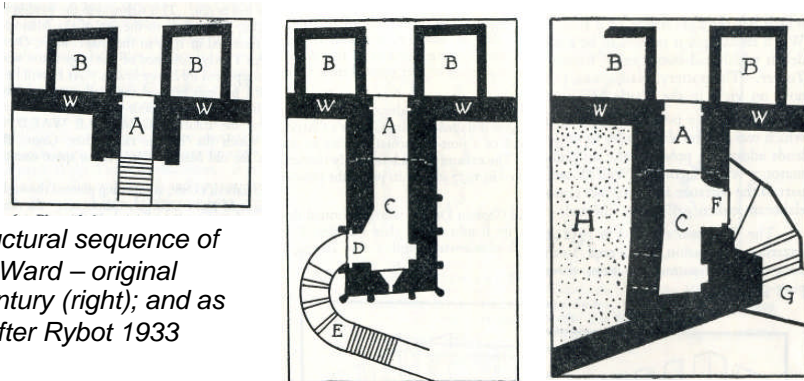
Major Norman Rybot

In the late 1920s a detailed study was commenced by **Major Norman Rybot** (1874-1961) and he revealed a great deal about the archaeological and architectural development of the castle.

In 1929 a castle museum was established for the first time.

In 1930 Norman Rybot reported on investigations and repairs in the period 1921-1929 (*Rybot 1930*), and he later reported on investigations and repairs in 1930 (*Rybot 1931*); in the period 1931-33 (*Rybot 1933a*); and in 1940 (*Rybot 1950*).

Norman Rybot investigated a number of areas of the castle, both by examining the standing fabric and from excavations. This allowed him to, for example, re-interpret the construction sequence of the gate into Middle Ward.



Norman Rybot's structural sequence of the gate into Middle Ward – original (above); fifteenth century (right); and as existing (far right) (after Rybot 1933 Figures 16-18).



Rybot's excavations alongside the gate into Middle Ward in the 1930s.

He also excavated outside the north wall of Grand Battery and located the footings of the earlier curtain wall with a round bastion [202]; a further elliptical bastion [203]; and an external ditch [404].

Norman Rybot also produced several reconstruction drawings of the castle.



Rybot's reconstruction of the fourteenth century castle, from the south-west.

Travel and, hence, tourism had been greatly improved on the island in 1923 when the Jersey Motor Transport Company started a bus service that could carry passengers all over the island, without the restrictions imposed on trains by the need for tracks. This inevitably had an effect on the train company, and all the stations on the St Helier to Gorey route were closed in 1929 and the Jersey Eastern Railway Company Ltd was liquidated in 1932.

Notification of the closure of the railway line to Gorey and Mont Orgueil.



In 1933 Rybot published the first edition of his 'Gorey Castle, Jersey', which has since been revised and republished on several occasions (Rybot 1933). Major Rybot was a remarkable man whose understanding of archaeology, architecture, and military aspects of Mont Orgueil far surpassed those of all others who had expressed view of these subjects, and his articles and guide book provide the foundations for the modern study of the fabric.

Amongst the several collections of old photographs held locally on the island and published in the early reports and guides, is a group of ten studies taken in 1935 by H.L.Nicolle which are now held at the Jersey Archives (Reference D/AL/B2/1-11).

By 1935 the keep had been sufficiently restored for HRH Edward, Prince of Wales, to be entertained there during his visit on the 23rd July.

In 1936 works were completed on the restoration of the curtain wall and gun embrasures of Grand Battery. In Middle Ward, the long building with the stone-vaulted undercroft, sometimes known as St George's Chapel [215] was heavily restored and two medieval altar slabs, found elsewhere in the castle, were set up at the northern in the mistaken belief that this had been a chapel.

In 1937 the entrance to the well chamber [225] was restored to its original form and an ornate openwork screen and oak door were inserted in it.

In the period 1934-1938 over ninety thousand visitors paid for admission to the castle.

SECOND WORLD WAR : 1939-1945

All restoration work to the castle ceased in 1940 at the commencement of the German occupation of the Channel Islands.⁷

At first the Germans simply used the Mont Orgueil as a look-out post, with the soldiers being billeted in the Elfine Hotel on the pier. Some months later, however, it was thought advisable to remove the contents of the castle museum, and with the permission and co-operation of the States Department concerned, the collections and their dismantled cases were transferred to the old building of the Jersey Home for Girls at Grouville.

In 1941 the Second Battalion 319 Infantry Support Division was stationed on the east coast of Jersey. The castle became a self-contained strong-point and received its first resident German garrison. In August of that year Captain Dorey was evicted from the Porter's Lodge [315]; the rooms in the keep were converted into barracks; and the Tudor fire-control tower on the roof [118] became a watch tower.



The Tudor fire control tower in 1935 (above left) and in use as a watch tower during the early period of German occupation (above right), prior to the addition of a concrete roof as it is today.

The additional fortifications of Gorey Castle were built as part of M7 II/319 Gorey by the German Army Construction Battalion in 1941 and included three observation turrets built for an Army Coastal Artillery Range-Finding Position.

A number of dugouts and trenches were also created, as well as innumerable positions for automatic weapons and other small arms. A flame-thrower was placed at the top of the steps leading to the keep and the north-east outworks [221] were heavily protected with concrete to house a Command Post.

⁷ We are grateful to John Clarke for his contributions to this section of the Conservation Plan (see *Clarke 2005*).

The defence of Gorey was concentrated outside the castle. Resistance Nest Hafen Gorey was a reinforced casemate built into the seawall on the site of the Eastern Railway terminus station and camouflaged as a domestic house, with windows painted on the concrete walls and false wooden shutters. It housed a 75mm Pak 40 gun and gave flanking fire across the bay and into the harbour.

Mont Orgueil from the south during the German occupation, with the disguised concrete bunker in the foreground.



A Command Post II/319 Div. Artillery, with mobile Howitzers and 3.2cm Anti-aircraft battery, was located at Victoria Tower on Mont St Nicolas.

At the head of the pier the second house from the end, No 14, was converted to a machine gun guard room on the ground floor and a gun embrasure on the first floor connected to the resistance nest in Water Battery [317]. The battery was a granite- paved platform, built in 1801 on the site of older fortifications. In the eastern angle of the platform a surviving machine gun post was built below the level of the parapet. In the western angle there was a reinforced concrete bunker with a ring stand for a tank turret gun, probably of French origin, perhaps a Renault FT17. This bunker appears to have had a personnel shelter and communicated directly to house No 14 below platform level.



Water Battery, looking south, in 2007.

The Outer Ward had barbed wire along the cliff perimeter and Castle Green had barbed wire along the road and above Petit Portelet. The hotels and houses along the pier were in the military zone and would have been used as military billets.

The outer walls of Grand Battery were defended with hanging mines or roll bombs. These were shells manufactured in the 1914-1918 war. They were 300lb shells hung by a wire from the ramparts with a second wire to the detonator that operated if they were dropped by releasing the first wire. Nineteen of these were found in January 1979 – most of them were destroyed on La Rocque beach, but two were made safe by a bomb disposal officer and displayed on the putlog wall for many years until removed in 1999.

There may also have been a foxhole or shelter trench beside the barbican on Grand Battery, which was partly excavated in 2004 and found to contain two aluminium range-finding charts, many broken Vichy water bottles, and the metal remains of six arch lever files. Vichy water was found throughout bunkers in Jersey as the reserve supply in case of siege.

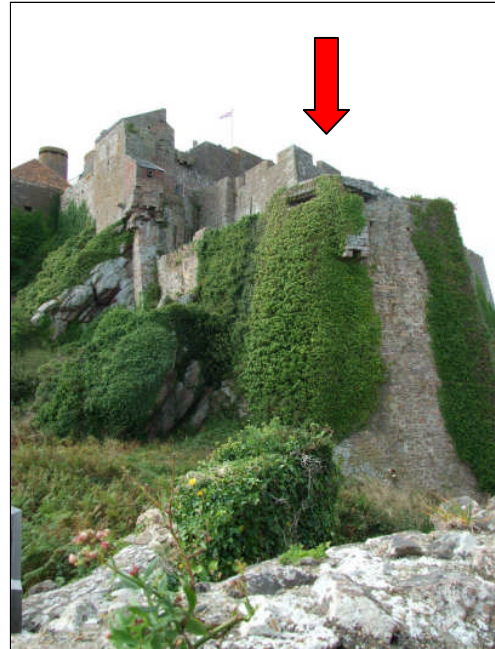
Over the first gate [414] there was an eighteenth century brick walkway, which was removed in 1998. On the western end was a sentry point built only large enough for two or three soldiers. The western wall was raised in granite by about one metre and half the steps were blocked by poured concrete and a hinged door was fixed. There is film footage at the Jersey War Tunnels which shows German officers walking under the first gate. This clearly shows a crack in the centre of the arch which was repaired in 1998.

There were three observation towers on the Tudor keep – one on the Watch Tower Spiral Stair Tower [107]; one on the Somerset Spiral Stair Tower [116]; and one on the Tudor Fire Control Tower [118]. Ladders accessed all from below through a square trap in a concrete floor. Each of the towers was increased in height using stone masonry covering reinforced concrete and all three survive in their adapted forms [see 107, 116 and 118]. All the towers have eight pillars supporting the cap, making eight apertures for observation. Each aperture has a steel fitting below the sill for observation or signalling equipment. It has been suggested that Major Rybot was consulted by the German builder on how to do least damage to the original elements of the castle.

The towers on the roof of the Tudor keep were used for observation, range, and direction finding, together with signalling. The highest tower had a line of sight with La Roque to Archirondel Tower and Verclut Point (St Catherine), as well as inland to La Hougue Bie and to the coast of France.

The functions of the observation towers must have changed in August 1944 when the defence of the east coast of Jersey came under the Commander of Battle Group Sea Targets East, formed with men of 1/HKAR 1265 from the west side of Jersey. Four 15 cm K18 guns were moved to batterie Schlieffen, at Verclut, from batterie Scharnhist, in Guernsey, and four K18 guns were moved from batterie Gneisau, in Guernsey, to batterie Haeslat, at La Coupe, St Martin. The headquarters of 1/HKAR 1265 was moved from St Ouen to Mont Orgueil.

The Command Post for the new Battle Group, 1/HKAR 1265 Heavy Artillery Battalion, was built in the north-east outworks inside the north-east sallyport, where Rybot had been working on the ruins of the Tudor vaulted building. The construction of two observation and machine-gun slits at the north and east angle of the former battery overlooking Petit Portelet were connected by a covered staircase down to two covered rooms at the level of the sallyport.



The machine-gun slits in the north-east outworks (arrowed).

The machine-gun post built into the castle used granite setts, probably retrieved from the slipway. The machine-gun post facing north has a 5-inch square wood lined duct below the right side, whose function is obscure. It may have been for ejecting spent cartridges or in connection with roll bombs. The roof of the machine-gun point was made of railway irons covered with earth. The roof of the lower rooms was of I-girders covered with a thin layer of concrete, rendered with cement and a layer of bitumen, then a layer of steel shuttering, which was filled above with 60 cms of soil and rubble, then a top layer of I-girders.

The medieval great hall was used as a barracks, with hanging bunks, and four hooks for bunks are said to remain in the east wall.

Alterations to a window at first level of the residential apartments [115] are accompanied by graffiti – 'H.Pfiug Dresden-A 1942'. The second level has been known as 'the German room' since 1945, possibly deriving from the fact that specimens of each type of weapon taken from the Germans at disarmament were kept here. The third level has a hole above the fireplace for a stove-pipe, indicating that the space had been used as a barrack. The fourth or top level has two fireplaces into which stoves were fitted.

A hole in the base of the octagonal tower [118] suggests that a stove was placed either in the base of the tower or in the D-shaped space [114], and if the latter was the case it would suggest that it must have been floored and roofed.

The six main rooms of the castle could perhaps accommodate 200 infantry, with smaller rooms being used by officers. The lowest room and the undercroft would have made useful bomb shelters.

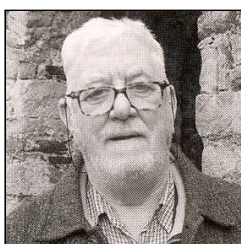
After the surrender of the Germans in 1945 the castle was demilitarised and all their arms, equipment, furniture, and installations were removed. Only a few German military artefacts have been found during recent archaeological investigations. They include shards of bulletproof glass and a heavy machine-gun bullet in the Outer ward, and some small calibre spent cartridges on the Grand Battery. A few insulators for telephone wires were found fixed to various parts of the castle. The timber lining of the Fire Control Tower was salvaged and it was proposed in February 2000 that it be put back, along with other original features that have been saved. The intention being to open the tower so that the public can see as much of it as possible.

POST WAR : 1945 -

After the war the castle was restored to its previous role as an ancient monument and visitor attraction, administered by the Public Works Committee. The castle museum was re-established in 1946 – the collections having been recovered from the Jersey Home for Girls at Grouville, where they had been stored for safety.

On June 1 1948 the castle was visited by HRH The Duchess of Kent and in 1950 the Chief Inspector of Ancient Monuments for England produced a written report for the Bailiff of Jersey.

Mont Orgueil continued to thrive as a visitor attraction, benefiting particularly from the post-war boom in the tourist industry in the Channel Islands.



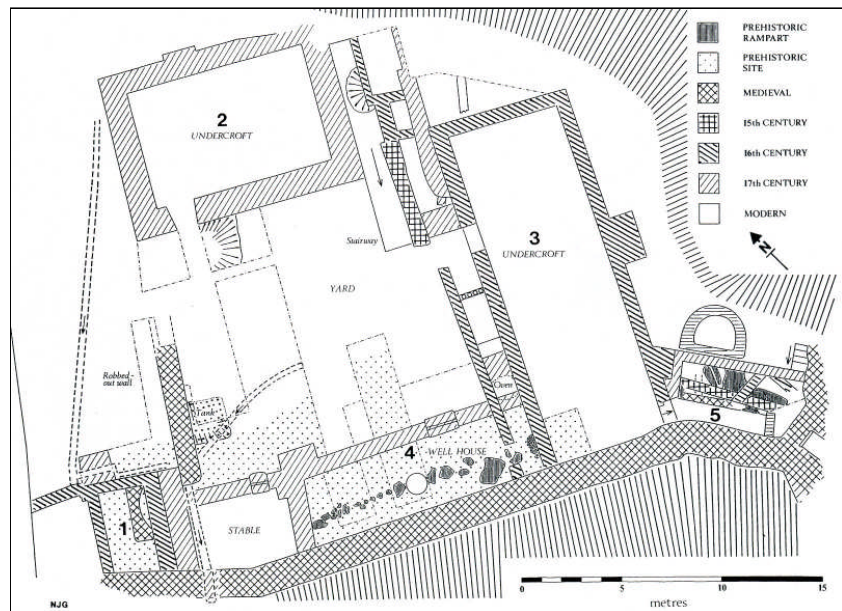
Kenneth Barton

Very little research or archaeological investigation had taken place since 1940, but in 1972, 1974 and 1976 a series of excavations were undertaken in the Middle Ward by members of the Archaeological Section of the Société Jersiaise under the direction of **Kenneth Barton** (Barton 1984). It was during these excavations that evidence for Neolithic occupation was found as well as the remains of the footings of an Iron Age rampart [227]. It was also possible, for the first time, to provide dating evidence for several of the buildings.



The excavations in Middle Ward in the 1970s.

The excavations in Middle Ward in the 1970s.



Plan of the area excavated in the 1970s (after Barton 1984 Figure 1).

The castle was still administered by the Public Works Committee at this time, and they continued to carry out repairs to the fabric until 1997.

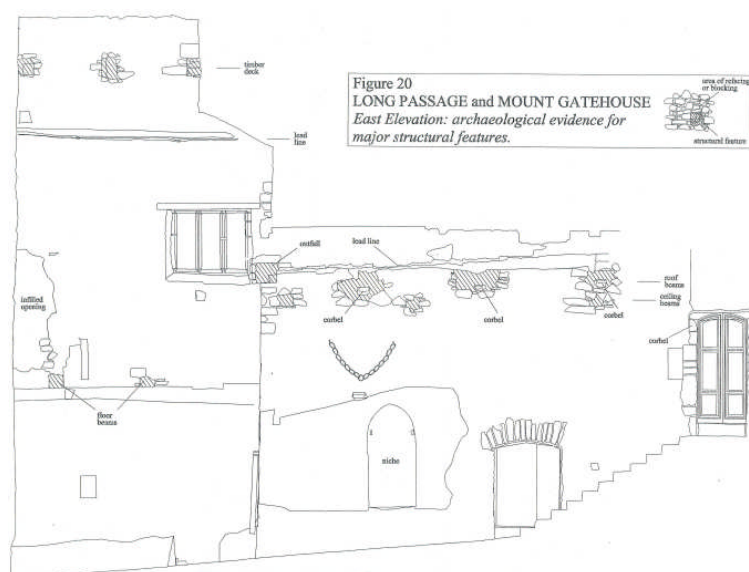
In 1996 a condition audit of the property was conducted on behalf of the Public Services Department, States of Jersey, by the UK-based architects – The Conservation Practice, which was produced in four volumes (*Condition Audit 1996*).

**JERSEY HERITAGE
TRUST : 1997- 2007**

Archaeological Investigations : 1996-2006

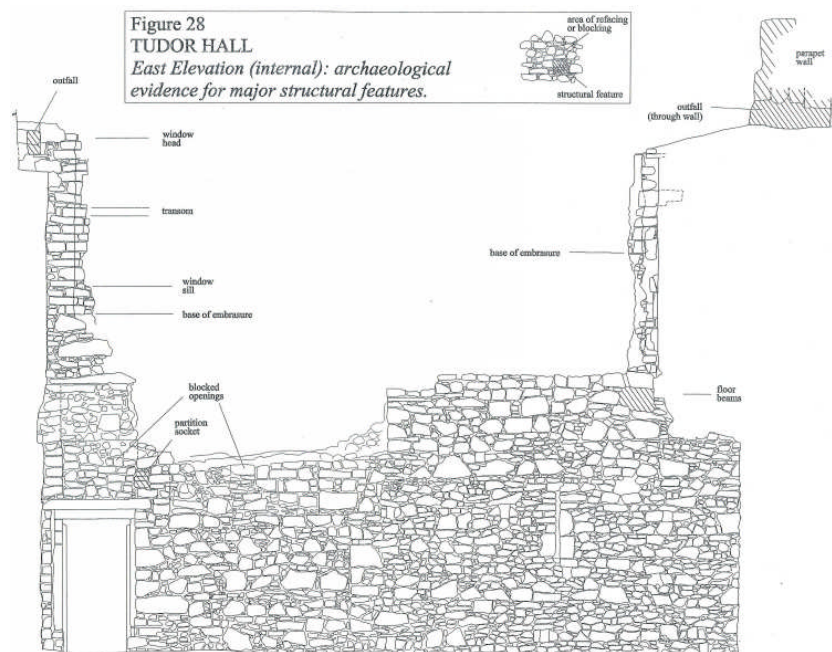
Whilst the main emphasis was on examining the Tudor keep, which remained roofless at this time, the works included some investigations on the medieval keep; the approaches to the castle and its Lower Ward: and several other areas.

Complementary to these works was the commissioning of a detailed survey of the whole castle, which was produced by Stirling Surveys Ltd, and detailed, stone-by-stone elevation drawings of the exposed walls within the Tudor keep, which were produced at a scale of 1:20 by The Downland Partnership.

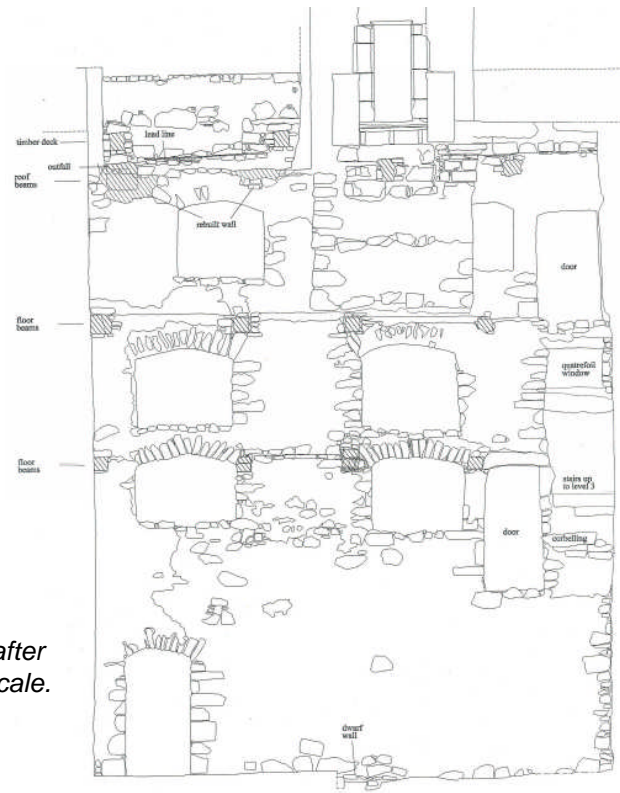


Archaeological record of the east elevation of the Long Passage and Mount Gatehouse (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 20). Not to scale.

Archaeological record of the west elevation of the Tudor great chamber (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 26). Not to scale.



Archaeological record of the east elevation of the Tudor great chamber (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 86). Not to scale.



Archaeological record of the east elevation of the D-shaped space (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 33). Not to scale.

Figure 33
D-SHAPED SPACE
East Elevation: archaeological evidence for floors and roof.
area of refectory or hall
structural feature

Archival Research : 1998-2002

The intention of the study was to identify and present all the unpublished documentation relating to Mont Orgueil held in British mainland archives covering the entire life of the castle from the twelfth to the twentieth century.

The results of the research are contained in three documents, the first published by Heritage Projects, University of Nottingham (*Dixon, Jones & Phillpotts 1998*) and the other two published by the Jersey Heritage Trust (*Rushton 2001* and *Rushton 2002*).

It is now considered that these represent a complete coverage of all known material for the castle from its medieval origins to the present day (*Rushton 2002* : 3-5).

Conservation Plan : 2002

In 1997 the Trust commissioned Dr Philip Dixon to conduct a preliminary examination of the whole castle (*Dixon 1997*), and this was followed by the preparation of a Conservation Plan, which was researched and written by Philip Dixon, of Nottingham University, and Jane Kennedy, of Purcell Miller Tritton (Architects).

The intention was to provide a document which would form the foundation for all subsequent maintenance, repair, and development on the site.

The Conservation Plan, which was produced in four volumes, included a brief history of the site; an account of its overall significance and the significance of parts of it; and policies for retaining and enhancing significance. It also proposed strategies for maintenance, interpretation, repair, alteration, physical access, and services provision (Volume 1 – *Dixon & Kennedy 2002a*). Of particular value was a detailed site gazetteer, which examined each element of the castle (Volume 2 – *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b*); a collection of background reports (Volume 3 – *Dixon & Kennedy 2002c*); and a photographic collection of some 13,000 modern and archive views held on CDs (Volume 4 – *Dixon & Kennedy 2002d*).

Refurbishment and Interpretation

In 2002 the Jersey Heritage Trust prepared a Development Strategy for Mont Orgueil, which was guided by the results of the three studies. The issues and principles involved were reviewed by an expert panel which concluded, in July 2002, that the reinstatement of the general form of the structures contained in the Tudor keep was justified.

A planning application (*Reference P/2003/0251*) was submitted to the States of Jersey in January 2003 for an extensive programme of conservation, restoration, alteration, and improvement work, as set out in the *Mont Orgueil Development Strategy*, and this was approved by the Environment and Public Services Committee.

The results of the investigations and subsequent consultations had provided a sound basis for the reconstruction of the interior of the Tudor keep, and in 2005 work began on the reconstruction of the lost floors and roofs, enabling visitors, for the first time, to comprehend the scale, layout, and function of the complex spaces.

A major programme of refurbishment and interpretation was completed in April 2006 at a cost of £4.45m. This included extensive repairs to the buildings; the provision of floors and roofs in the Tudor keep; extensive landscaping; the mounting of a considerable number of information boards; and the introduction of some thirty pieces of specially-commissioned artwork and sculpture, all inspired by the castle and its history with a central theme of the Medieval World and Jersey's place in it.

A new guide book was published in 2007 (*Ford 2007*).

1.0.8 DESCRIPTION AND GAZETTEER

In this section of the Conservation Plan a description of each of the principal elements of Mont Orgueil is provided in the form of a gazetteer.

The historical background of the castle and its chronological development have already been discussed (Sections 1.0.3 to 1.0.6) and an account of the major phases of previous repair and conservation works undertaken since ownership passed from the Crown has been provided (Section 1.0.7).

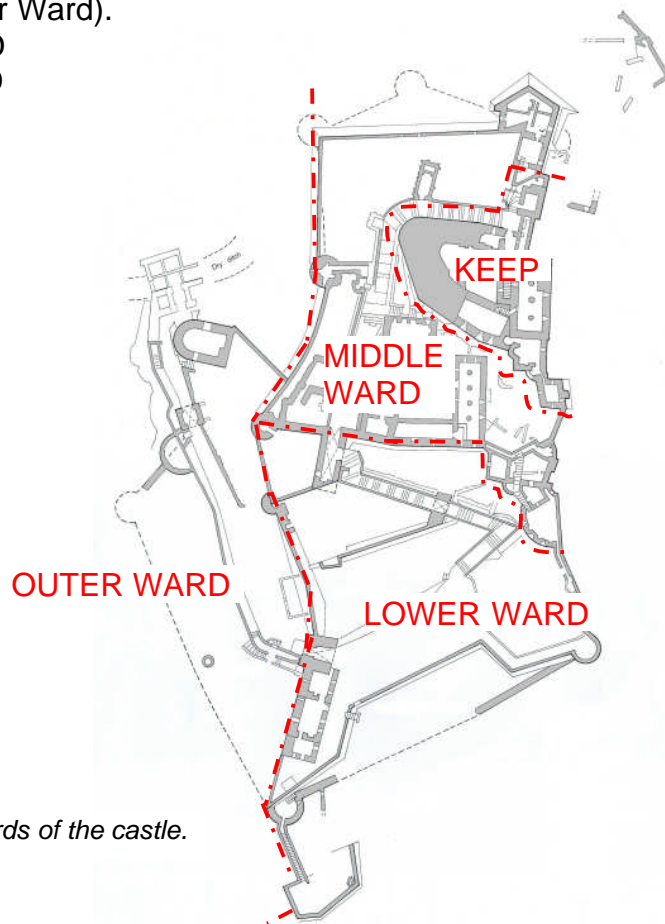
The existing plan of the castle has evolved over the past eight centuries, to meet the needs of the communities that it has served, and it now comprises not only a mixture of visible elements representative of all stages in its development, but also a number of features buried beneath the present ground level, both within and beyond the existing walls, which date both to earlier periods of activity on the rocky outcrop and from the period of occupation of the castle.

Simplified plan, showing the principal standing elements of the castle and their periods of construction.



In this section the elements are grouped and numbered within the principal areas of the castle, ie the four Wards, and the areas immediately adjoining them.

1. KEEP (or Upper Ward).
2. MIDDLE WARD
3. LOWER WARD
4. OUTER WARD



The four Wards of the castle.

Where appropriate cross references are made to the Condition Audit prepared by The Conservation Practice in 1996 ¹ (*Condition Audit 1996*) and the very detailed and informative gazetteer provided with the previous Conservation Plan (*Dixon and Kennedy 2002b*).

¹ Four volumes were prepared in all – *Volume 1* being an introduction and overview, with comments on the history and archaeology; *Volume 2* deals with Lower Ward, Outer Ward and the Outworks; *Volume 3* deals with Middle Ward; and *Volume 4* deals with the Keep.

It is usual in a Conservation Plan to include not only an *Assessment of Significance* for the whole property, as included here (Section 1.2), but also an assessment of individual elements. In order to avoid duplication and reduce volume, this section of the report includes such a summary assessment for each element under the headings :

- the history of the element;
- an assessment of fabric;
- its significance;
- its status²; and
- management issues deriving from uses and condition

(for a discussion of these see Section 1.2.2).

² The castle was formally designated by the States of Jersey as a Site of Special Interest (SSI) in July 2004.

1. KEEP or Upper Ward

This was the most strongly defended part of the castle occupying the highest ground, and employing the natural steep rocky slopes on its east side as a natural defence.

This may originally have been a separately enclosed and defended area, and for the purposes of the Conservation Plan both the original medieval great hall and the sixteenth century Keep, including Somerset Tower, the Tudor great chamber, and the residential apartments, are included within it (for a discussion of its structural development see Sections 1.0.3 & 4 ; *Rodwell 2001a*; *Rodwell 2002a* : 25-91; and *Rodwell 2006a*).

The oldest surviving buildings comprise a series of linked structures, mostly of thirteenth century date, extending in a line along the eastern edge of the highest part of the promontory [102-108].

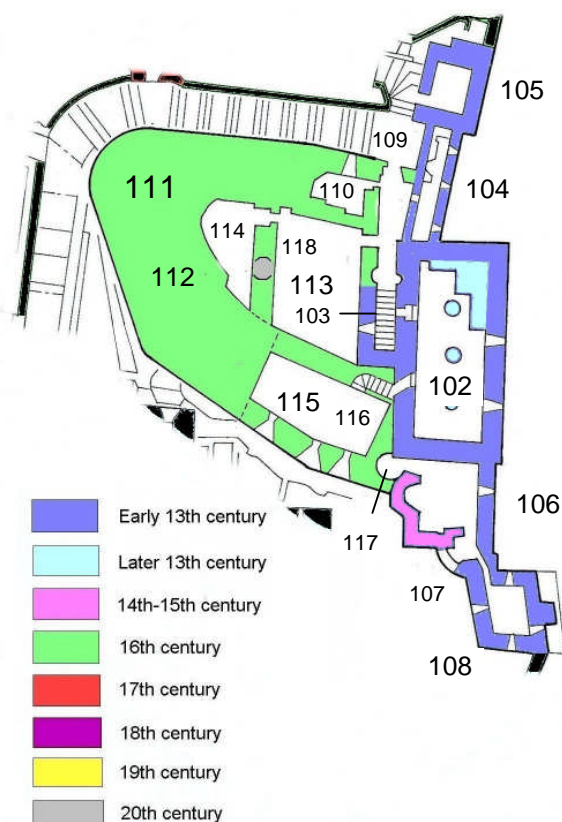
There is a strong possibility there may have originally been a curtain wall enclosing buildings on the site now occupied by the sixteenth century keep [see 101], but whatever existed was replaced in the period *circa* 1485-1551 by the new Tudor keep, all entered on the north side by its own gate and guard chamber [109 & 110], and protected from the west by Somerset Tower [111] and Mount Battery [112], and providing a variety of accommodation as well as an alternative access via an external staircase added in about 1700, but now removed [113-117].

A Tudor fire control tower on the top of the Keep was adapted as a lookout tower post during the German occupation in 1940-1945 [118].

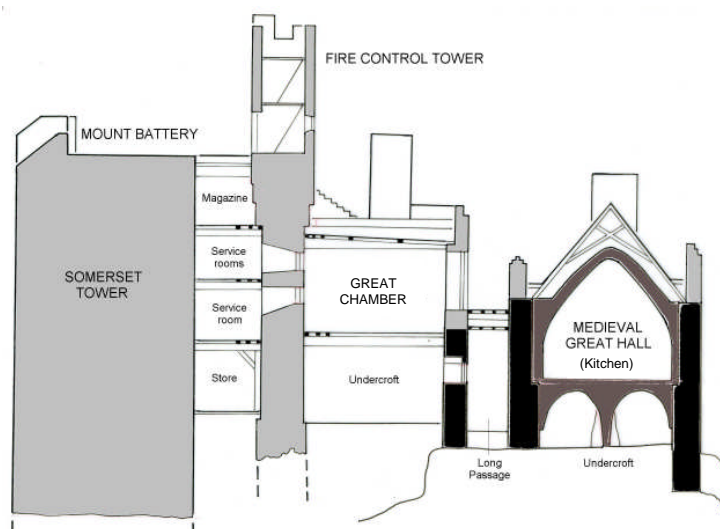


The Keep, from the east, prior to the re-roofing of the Tudor great chamber. Note the repairs in hand at this time on the north-east tower [105].

Simplified plan of the Keep or Upper Ward, showing the approximate dates of construction and the numbering used in the text. Not to scale.

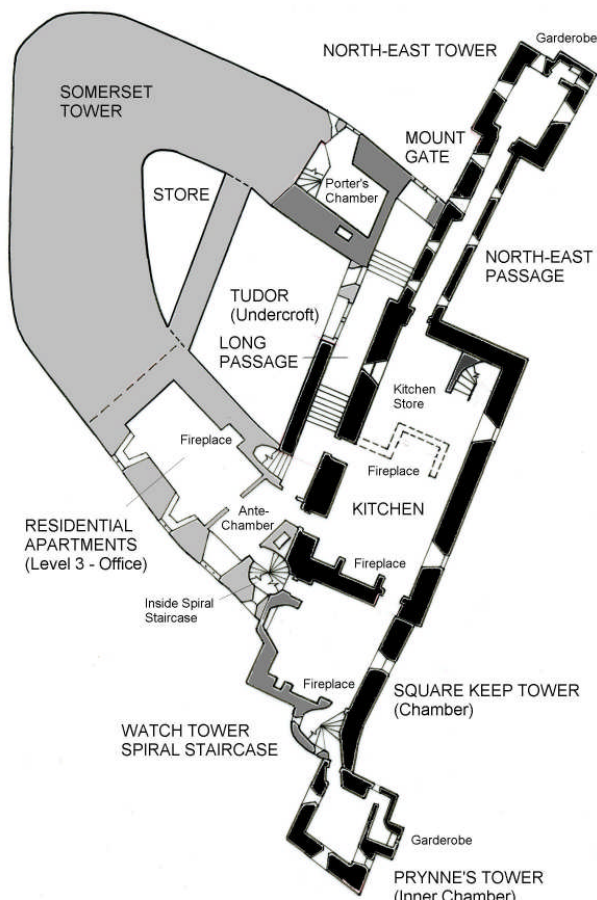
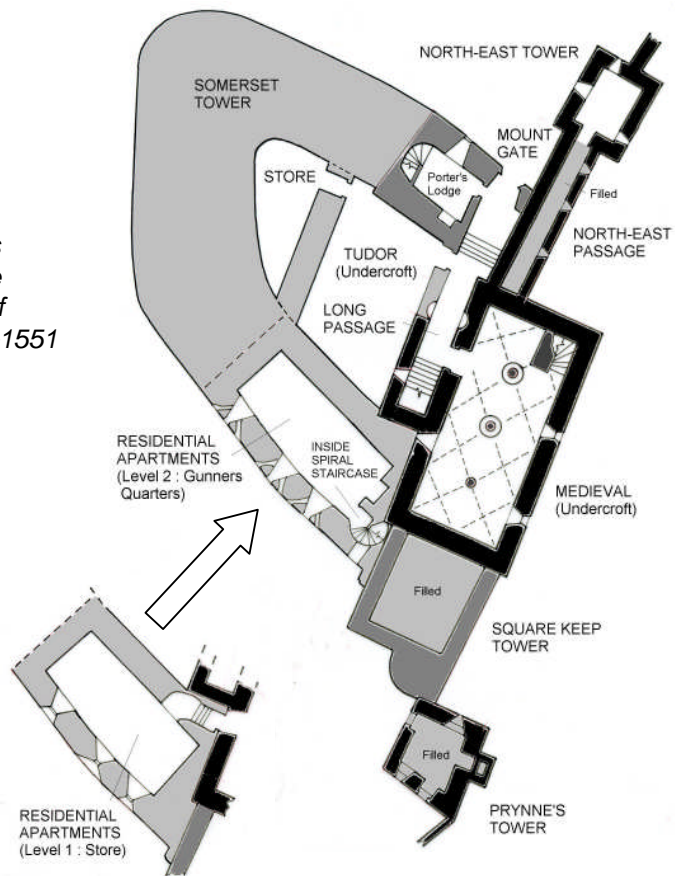


- | | |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 101 KEEP or UPPER WARD DEFENCES | 110 PORTER'S LODGE AND UPPER CHAMBER |
| 102 MEDIEVAL GREAT HALL | 111 SOMERSET TOWER |
| 103 LONG PASSAGE | 112 MOUNT BATTERY |
| 104 NORTH-EAST PASSAGE | 113 TUDOR GREAT CHAMBER |
| 105 NORTH-EAST TOWER | 114 SERVICE ROOMS |
| 106 SQUARE KEEP TOWER | 115 RESIDENTIAL APARTMENTS |
| 107 WATCH TOWER SPIRAL STAIRCASE | 116 SOMERSET SPIRAL STAIRCASE |
| 108 PRYNNE'S TOWER | 117 INSIDE SPIRAL STAIRCASE |
| 109 MOUNT GATE | 118 FIRE CONTROL TOWER |

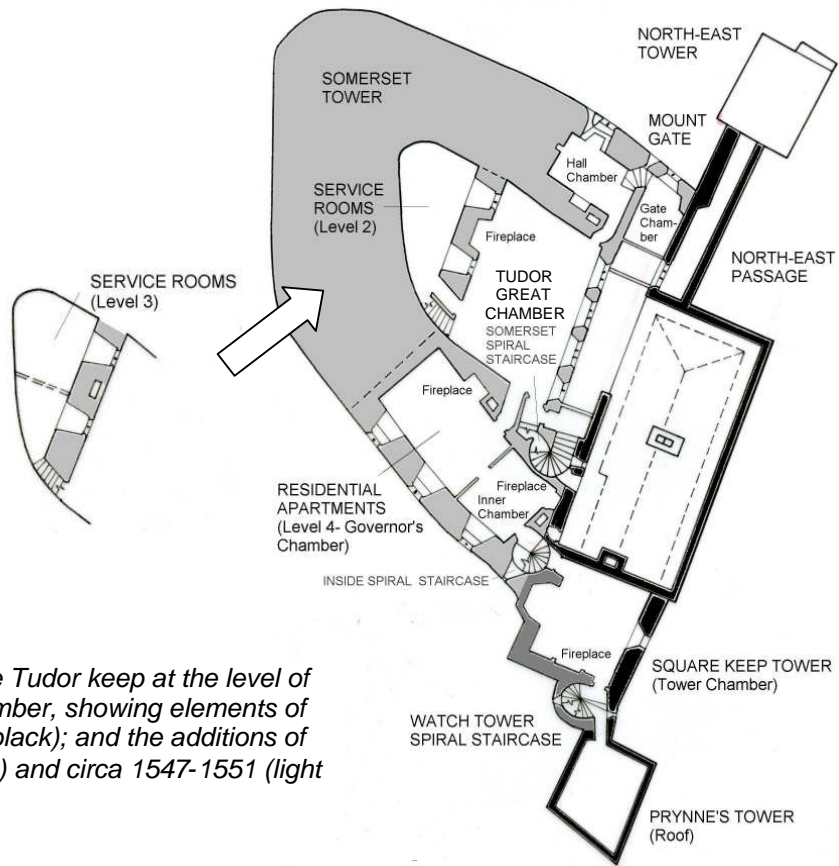


Section through the Keep (after Rodwell 2002a).

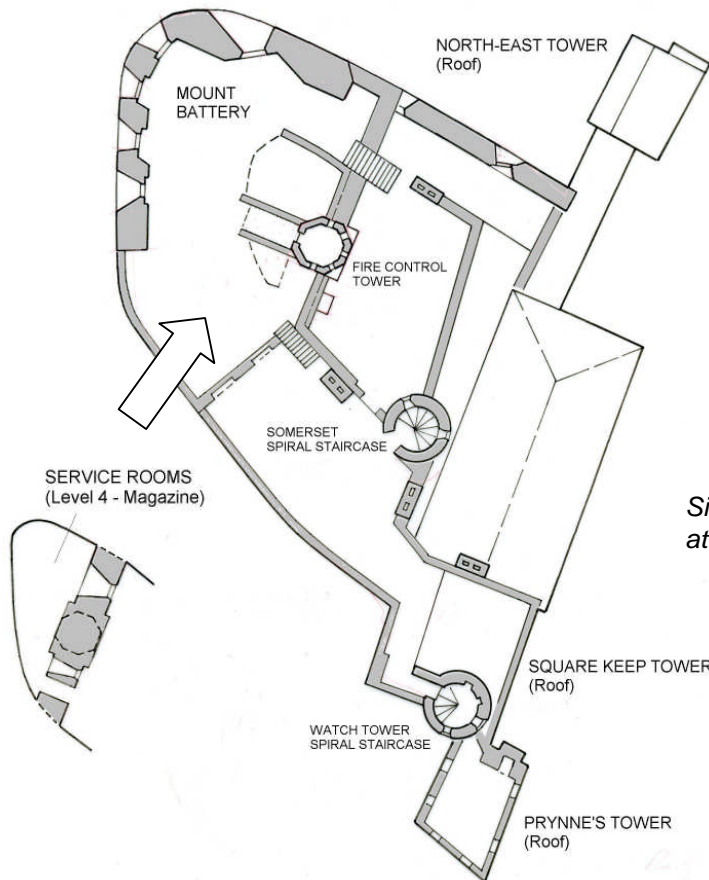
Simplified plan of the Tudor keep at its lowest levels, showing elements of the medieval keep (black); the additions of circa 1500 (mid grey); and circa 1547-1551 (light grey).



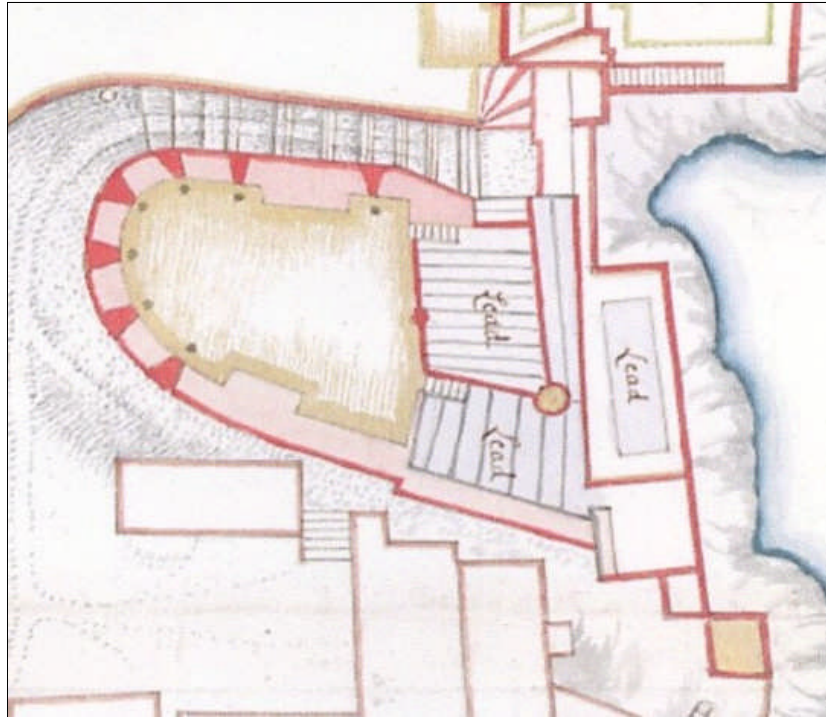
Simplified plan of the Tudor keep at the level of the Medieval great hall, used as a Tudor kitchen, showing elements of the medieval keep (black); the additions of circa 1500 (mid grey); and circa 1547-1551 (light grey).



Simplified plan of the Tudor keep at the level of the Tudor great chamber, showing elements of the medieval keep (black); and the additions of circa 1500 (mid grey) and circa 1547-1551 (light grey).



Simplified plan of the Tudor keep at roof level.



The Keep in 1680, after Thomas Phillips.



*The Keep in 1755. The references for this plan read :
 K – Somerset Tower ruin
 L – St George's Hall ruinous
 M – Vaults out of repair.
 Note the external staircase on the south side of the Tudor keep, which is not shown on Phillips' plan.*

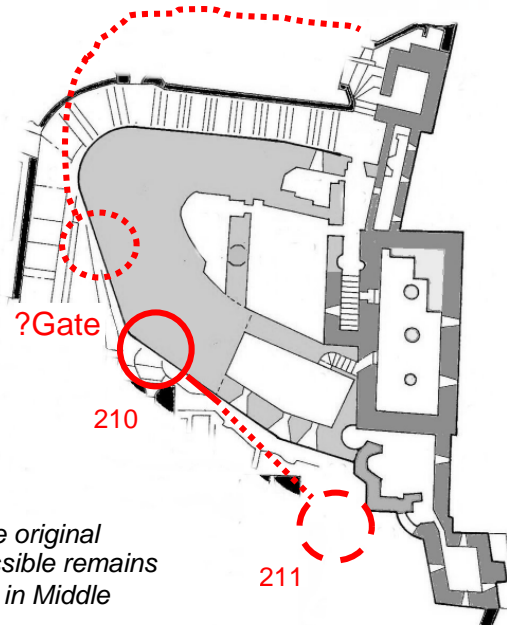


The Keep, from the south (above) and from the north-east (below).



**101 KEEP OR UPPER
WARD
DEFENCES :
13th century**

There is a strong possibility that the castle originally included an enclosed space to the west of the surviving thirteenth century structures [102-108], but this and any structures contained within it are likely to have been mostly removed for the construction of the Tudor keep in the period *circa* 1485-1551 [109-117]. It may have been entered from Middle Ward via a gateway formed of two round towers at its south-west side [see 210], linked to a further round tower at the base of Prynne's Tower [see 211].



Conjectural layout of the original Keep, based on the possible remains of the two round towers in Middle Ward.

Apart from the lowest portions of the gate [109] and the adjoining guard tower [110], which may belong to an early phase of rebuilding of the ancient keep, and a small fragment of curving wall apparently found in 1931 under the floor of the Tudor great chamber, which may belong to the early castle (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 27.0/1 and 28.0/1), no evidence for the former existence of these structures has yet been found. However, it was at one time suggested that the large dividing wall contained within the enclosed space within the Somerset Tower may have belonged to an earlier structure but this suggestion has now been disproved.

Any earlier structures are likely to have been severely truncated or destroyed during the refurbishment of this part of the castle in the sixteenth century.

101 Assessment of Significance :

- possibly of thirteenth century date
- part conjectural layout of original Keep
- potentially an important area of the castle though any remains are likely to be heavily truncated
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for further study and investigation

**102 MEDIEVAL
GREAT HALL :
early 13th cent**

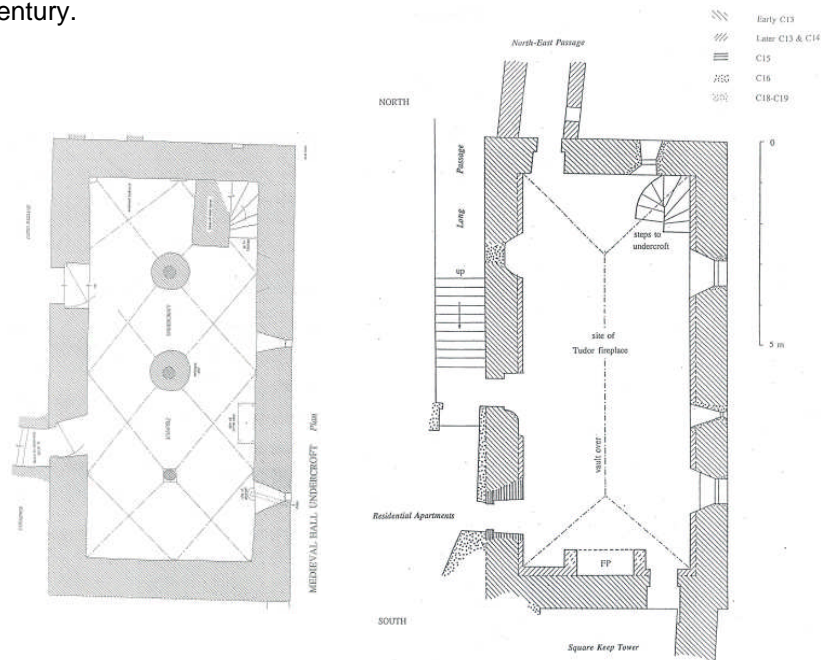
This is a two-storeyed, high-status residential block at the east side of the Keep, probably built between about 1210 and 1230 as a private hall and chamber for the Governor of the castle. It is probably the structure referred to in 1340 as the *Dungeon*.

The undercroft was referred to by Nicolle as St Mary's Chapel and Crypt.

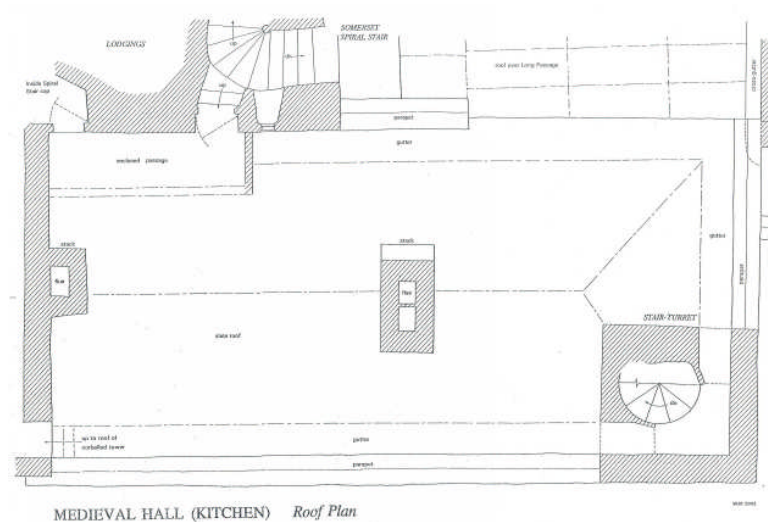
The structure was the subject of detailed study and excavations in the period 1997 to 2002 and it was the subject of detailed discussion by Warwick Rodwell in 2002. It has been concluded that the great hall originally had a timber floor and a steeply-pitched timber roof with hipped ends, covered in tiles or slate.

The surviving stone floor supported on pillars forming a vaulted undercroft was inserted later in the thirteenth century, at which time a stone fireplace was added at the south end and a stone staircase was provided at the north corner to link the hall, the undercroft, and a roof turret.

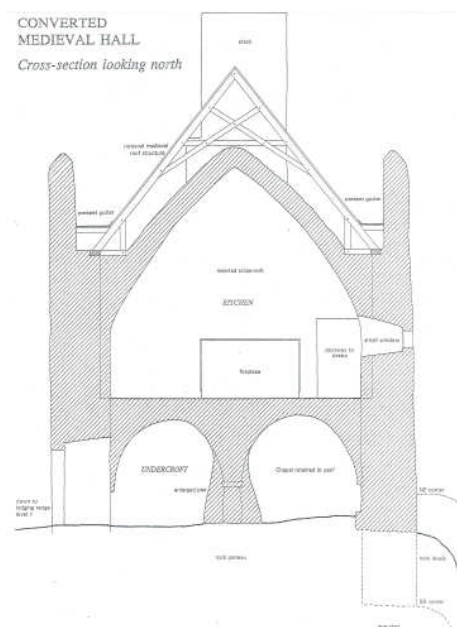
The vaulted roof was probably added in the mid or later fourteenth century.



Interpretative plans of the medieval undercroft (left) and the medieval great hall (right), after the insertion of the vaulted undercroft (after Rodwell 2001a & 2002a).

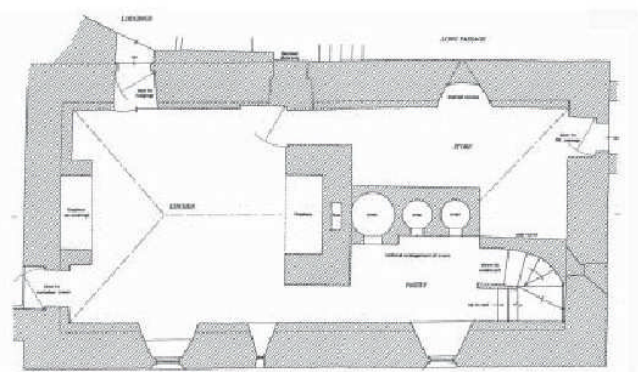


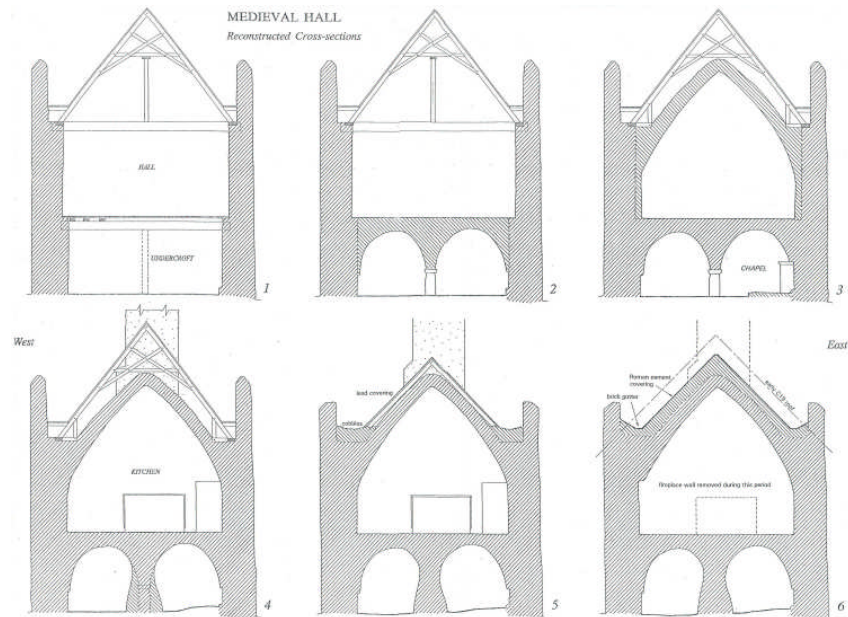
Plan of the roof and the roof turret of the medieval great hall, after the insertion of the vaulted undercroft (after Rodwell 2002a).



Cross section through the medieval great hall, after the insertion of the vaulted undercroft and the vaulted roof (after Rodwell 2002a).

In the mid sixteenth century the great hall was converted to a kitchen to serve the Tudor great chamber and residential accommodation, at which time it was subdivided and a central fireplace and ovens were added. The pillars in the undercroft appear to have been strengthened at this time.





*Reconstructed sections through the medieval great hall and Tudor kitchen, at various stages through its life (after Rodwell 2002a).
Key : 1. circa 1210 2. later thirteenth century 3. fourteenth century
4. sixteenth century 5. seventeenth or eighteenth century 6. recent*

In 1778-79 the great hall was converted into a barrack room for sixty men. These works were accompanied by alterations to the window and door openings.

The original function of the structure has been questioned by John McCormack who suggests, on architectural grounds, that it may more likely have been built as a chapel. Both he and Professor Colin Platt, who has reviewed the documentary evidence, suggest that the pitched roof attributed to the medieval period may have been erected in place of a flat roof between *circa* 1790 and 1803, suggesting that it could have been erected by Philippe d'Auvergne.

However, Warwick Rodwell has previously proposed that the 1755 cross section, which McCormack and Platt quote as evidence for the flat roof, was taken not across the roof but along the northern parapet.

A mutilated and broken statue of the Virgin Mary and child, in two parts, was found in 1837 during works to the keep and has since been displayed in the medieval undercroft, with the head of another figure of similar date, as 'Notre Dame du Chateau'. In 2004 an altar was reinstated in the undercroft to reflect its possible religious use in the past.

The statue of the Virgin Mary, now located in the undercroft.



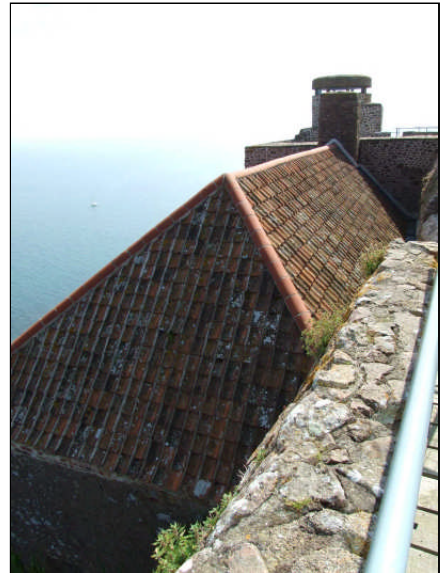
The roof , the great hall, and the undercroft were fully restored in 2004-2006, at which time several small sections of wall painting, dating to about 1500, were uncovered and these have also been restored.



One of the restored wall paintings in the great hall.



The great hall, from the north-east (above) and the restored roof (right).



References :

Nicolle 1921 : 130-133; Rybot 1933 :29-32 Figure 26 'C'; Condition Audit 1996 : Vol 4 Part 9; Dixon 1997; Rodwell 2001a; Rodwell 2002a : 32-43 Figures 5-10; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 30.0/1 & 2; Platt 2003a and 2006a; McCormack 2006; and Ford 2007 : 44-46.



The great hall, looking north (above) and south-west (below). The former position of the sixteenth century fireplace is indicated on the floor.



The great hall was fully restored in the period 1997-2006 and now accommodates an intricate metalwork sculpture by Brian Fell known as the *Tree of Succession*, which reflects the complexities of the medieval monarchy (*right*).



The undercroft, looking south (above) and the staircase at the north-east corner (left).

102 Assessment of Significance :

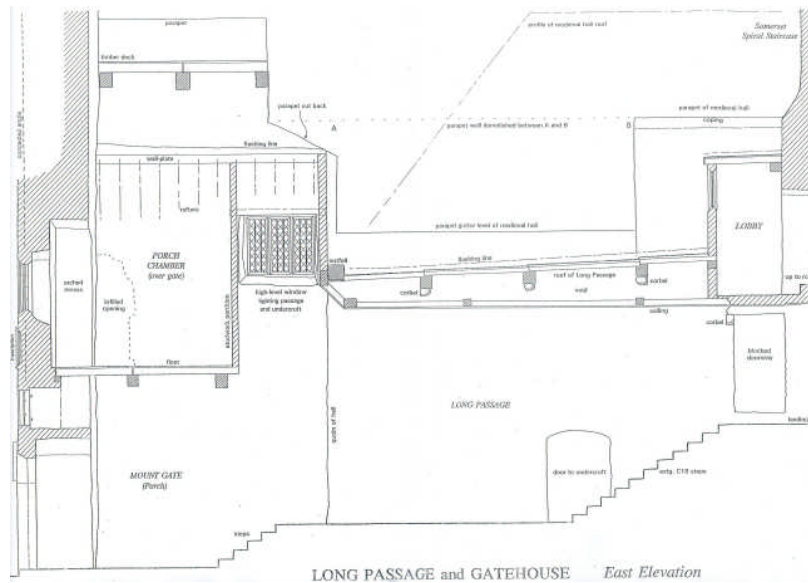
- early thirteenth century medieval great hall, with later alterations, later adapted as a Tudor kitchen and then as a barracks
- restored to its later medieval form in 1997-2006
- most significant part of the complex, in providing an understanding of the functioning of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues noted

This is located immediately adjacent to the medieval great hall on its west side.

It is possibly this structure that was referred to as Long Gallery in 1634. Niches were cut in the walls and they were plastered as part of Philip d-Auvergne's adaptations in 1799-1801. The roof was removed in 1837.

Architectural drawing of the West Elevation of the Long Passage and Gatehouse. The drawing shows a long, narrow passage with a series of steps on the left side. The passage is flanked by walls with various windows and doors. On the right side, there is a gatehouse structure with a porch and a door. The drawing is labeled "LONG PASSAGE and GATEHOUSE" and "West Elevation".

*The west elevation of the long passage (after Rodwell 2002a
Figure 18- for plans see Mount Gate [109])*



*The east elevation of the long passage (after Rodwell 2002a
Figure 19- for plans see Mount Gate [109])*

References

Nicolle 1921 : 128-129; *Rybot 1933* : 29 Figure 26 'G'; *Condition Audit 1996 Vol 4 Part 11*; *Rodwell 2001a* : 11-16; *Rodwell 2002a* : 64-65 Figures 18-20; *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 26.0/1; and *Ford 2007* : 42.

The long passage appears to have been without a roof since 1837. It remained in this form until the restoration of the Keep in the period 1997-2006, at which time a replacement roof was provided.



The long passage, looking south from Mount Gate, in about 1920.



The Long Passage in 2007, looking south (left) and looking north (right).

103 Assessment of Significance :

- early thirteenth forebuilding, extended in the sixteenth century, refurbished in *circa* 1800, and reduced to a roofless ruin in 1837
- restored to its sixteenth century form in 1997-2006
- a significant part of the complex, providing an understanding of the medieval, the Tudor, and the late eighteenth century functioning of the property as a castle and as a high status dwelling
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**104 NORTH-EAST
PASSAGE :
13th cent**

A two-storied flanking gallery, probably of early thirteenth century date, linking the medieval great hall [102] and the north-east tower [105], and forming part of the east defences of the medieval keep.

Nicolle noted early loop-holes in both sides of this structure, which appear to have been adapted to provide musketry cover for approaches from the north-east, perhaps in the seventeenth or eighteenth centuries.

In the late fifteenth or early sixteenth century gun ports were added to control the approaches to Mount Gate [109] and it was presumably at this time that the lower passage was in-filled to support the cannon.

The lower passage was partially excavated in the 1930s and 1940s, but the works were not completed.

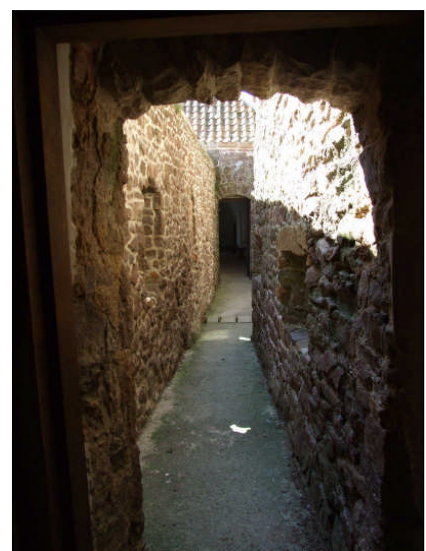
The interior of the passage was recorded by Warwick Rodwell in 1997-1998 and described by him in 2002.

In 2002, the appearance and condition of this structure was described as extremely poor and partially filled with debris. Although the passage is now open-topped, there is evidence to suggest that it has previously had a timber roof.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 131; *Rybot 1933* :29 Figures 22 'B' & 2; *Condition Audit 1996 Vol 4 Part 8*; *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 31.0/1; *Rodwell 2002a* : 31; and *Ford 2007* : 43.

It now provides access at the higher level between the spaces that it was originally designed to serve.



*The north-east passage, looking north to the north-east tower (left)
and looking south to the medieval great hall (right)*

View through one of the inserted gunports, looking down the large staircase leading up to Mount Gate.



104 Assessment of Significance :

- built in the early thirteenth century as part of the curtain wall of the Keep, linking the great hall and one of the lodging towers, but altered on several occasions
- lower level filled but upper level accessible, but without a roof, and serving its original function as a link
- a significant element of the curtain wall of the medieval Keep
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- perhaps potential for re-roofing the upper level and opening up the lower level

**105 NORTH-EAST
TOWER :
13th cent**

A two-storey lodging tower, built in the thirteenth century, forming the north-east corner of the medieval Keep. It may be the structure attributed to John de Roches in the period 1328-30, and sometimes referred to as Rochefort, but this attribution is doubtful [see also 220].



It is now entered from a point close to Mount Gate at the lower level and has direct access into the north-east passage at the upper level. It has its own garderobe and a window for ventilation at the upper level.

It was adapted to take cannon in the late sixteenth or early seventeenth century, when the tower was partially filled with earth to the level of the floor and gunports were pierced through the walls.

The fill was removed in the early eighteenth century, when the tower was adapted as a gunpowder magazine.

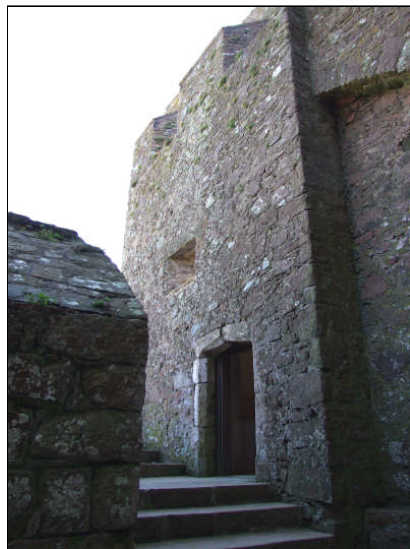
It has a nineteenth century brick addition on the north side. The exterior was repaired in 1928-1929 and again in the 1990s.

The structure was examined by Warwick Rodwell in 1997 and described by him in 2002.

References

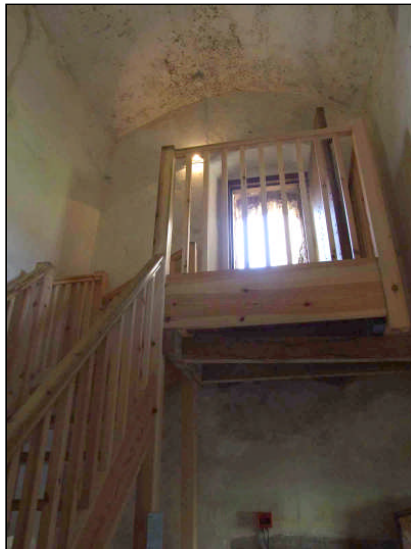
Nicolle 1921 : 127; Rybot 1930 : 292; Rybot 1933 : 29 Figures 26 'A' & 27; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 11 and Vol 4 Part 7; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 24.0/1; Rodwell 2002a : 29-30; and Ford 2007 : 43.

The structure is roofed and accessible at both levels, providing a visitor link from close to Mount Gate, up a wooden staircase, and through to the medieval great hall, via the north-east passage. The brick addition on the north side contains a lavatory.



*The north-east tower, from the south-west (left)
and from the north-west (right).*

The north-east tower, from the north-east (right), and internal views at ground (below left) and first floor levels (below right).



105 Assessment of Significance :

- a two-storey lodging tower built in the thirteenth century and altered on several occasions
- restored to something close to its original form
- an important element of the defences and accommodation of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**106 SQUARE KEEP
TOWER :
13th cent**

This is located immediately adjacent to the south side of the medieval great hall and is near square in plan, of two storeys and with crenellations, alcoves, and oriel windows at both levels.

Nicolle described this as the 'Keep Tower', and noted that it contained two compartments, one above the other, lit by small square windows on the landward side and larger ones on the seaward side. Each room had a fireplace, with a granite corbelled chimney piece. The upper part of the external walls project on corbels and the structure is referred to by Rybot as the 'Corbelled Tower'.



It was added to the medieval great hall to provide additional accommodation, but it has no dateable features apart from fireplaces ascribed by Dixon & Kennedy to the late fourteenth or fifteenth centuries.

Warwick Rodwell has subsequently established that it was probably constructed in the thirteenth century as a square room, with a half-cellar below, which was replaced in the fifteenth century by the present two-storied block.

The floor levels may have been adjusted in the mid sixteenth century when the spiral staircase was added on the west side.

An oriel window was blocked when the residential apartments were built in the sixteenth century, and Doug Ford has noted that the upper chamber was converted into a reception room by Philippe d'Auvergne, probably in 1799-1801, who added a glazed cupola on the roof.

The two rooms were identified by Nicolle as the late eighteenth century garrison hospital, and he also suggested that they may have been used as a kitchen in about 1800.

The tower was gutted in 1924, when the upper floor and roof structures were entirely renewed; the windows were re-formed; the fireplaces were restored; and the internal doorways were altered.

The external faces of the tower were recorded in 1999 by Warwick Rodwell, and in 2002 the upper room was fully investigated and the roof was examined during re-leading.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 127 & 132; Rybot 1930 : 289-291; Rybot 1933 : Figures 26 'D' & 27; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 4 Part 3; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 37.0/1; Rodwell 2006a 7-8; and Ford 2007 : 33).

The restored square keep tower, watch tower spiral staircase [107], and Prynne's Tower [108], from the south-west.



Extensive alterations by Public Works had affected the quality of these spaces, but they were externally and internally restored in 1997-2006. They now accommodate a display of coins at the lower level and an exhibition by Ronnie Heaps at the upper level, representing the story of Sir Walter Raleigh.



The upper floor level of the Square keep tower (above) and the ground floor level (below)



106 Assessment of Significance :

- a two-storey lodging tower built in the fifteenth century to replace an earlier medieval structure
- restored to something close to its fifteenth century form and housing exhibition material
- an important element of the accommodation in the later medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**107 WATCH TOWER
SPIRAL STAIR :
13th cent and later**

Located between the square keep tower [106] and Prynne's Tower [108], this medieval stair tower, described by Rybot as the Watch Tower, provided access between these two adjacent structures and the roof of the Tudor keep.

Nicolle suggested that it was originally higher and accommodated a watchman's shelter at roof level.

Rybot suggested that Prynne's Tower was probably linked to the medieval great hall [102] before the square keep tower and this stair turret were added. However, Dixon & Kennedy have suggested that the square keep tower and this structure may have existed before Prynne's Tower was added to the south of it.



References

Nicolle 1921 : 132; Rybot 1933 : 29-31 Figures 26 'E' & 27); and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 30.0/1.

The spiral stair projects as a round tower above roof level. It was raised in height and capped with concrete as a lookout tower during the German occupation.

The spiral staircase has been restored and now provides access between the two levels of the adjoining structures and to the roof of the Tudor keep and Mount Bastion.



Parts of the watch tower spiral staircase.

*The watch tower spiral staircase
where it gives access to the roof.*



107 Assessment of Significance :

- a medieval spiral staircase and roof-level watch tower, adapted as a lookout tower during the Second World War
- restored to its modified form and in use for access
- an important element of the medieval castle in helping provide an understanding of the use of the spaces
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**108 PRYNNE'S
TOWER :
13th cent**

A small, near square medieval tower of two storeys and a battlement roof, located at the south end of the group of thirteenth century structures forming the remains of the medieval keep.

Traditionally the place where William Prynne, a Puritan writer and politician, was imprisoned in 1637-1640.

It was designed to provide private rooms, the grandest of which was that in the top storey, which contains its own garderobe.



Rybot suggested that this tower may have been built and linked to the medieval great hall prior to the construction of the square keep tower [106] and the spiral staircase [107]. Dixon & Kennedy have suggested that the reverse may have been the case.

In the late fifteenth century the lower chamber appears to have been converted into a small private oratory, with wallpaintings and French stained glass, and the garderobe was converted into a religious niche. An altar was formed in the window reveal in the north wall and the back of the recess has a painted shield of St George. The painting was examined by the late Dr Clive Rouse in 1980 and fragments of painted wallplaster were conserved by Diane Gibbs in 1999. Other traces of wallpainting have also been found.

After the mid sixteenth century the tower was converted to take artillery. The lower chamber was completely filled with clay to provide a solid platform and new gun ports were formed in the walls.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 132; Rybot 1933 : 29 & 32 Figures 26 'F' & 27; Condition Audit 1996 : Vol 4 Part 1; Finlaison 1997 & 2002; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 30.0/1; Rodwell 2002a : 44-45; Rodwell 2006a : 8; and Ford 2007 : 48-49.



Prynne's Tower from the south-west (left) and from the south-east (right).

The first floor chamber has been restored and has access to the adjoining rooms and to the roof via the adjoining spiral staircase [107]. It now contains a representation, by Gordon Young, of a medieval urine wheel which was used by physicians to diagnose ailments.



The first floor chamber in Prynne's Tower, looking south (left) and north-east (right).

Part of the fill in the lower chamber was removed in 1928. It has now been restored and is accessed externally from a small balcony courtyard and a door from the Watch Tower Spiral Staircase [107]. It contains an exhibit comprising twelve replica wooden prayer nuts, by Steve Manthorp, which include scenes to show the importance of the Virgin Mary, the mother of Christ, and Saint George to the history of Mont Orgueil and Jersey.



Interior of the lower chamber.

108 Assessment of Significance :

- a two-storey lodging tower built in the thirteenth century and altered on several occasions
- accessible and restored to close to its original form
- an important element of the defences and accommodation of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- believed to be some potential for further investigation of the lower floor level.

**109 MOUNT GATE :
circa 1480-1551**

Also known as King Edward's Gatehouse, this structure appears to have been added, along with the lowest storey of the adjoining guard house [110], in the early Tudor period as a tower and barbican to the medieval buildings, for which a blocked portcullis slot survives, probably in about 1500.



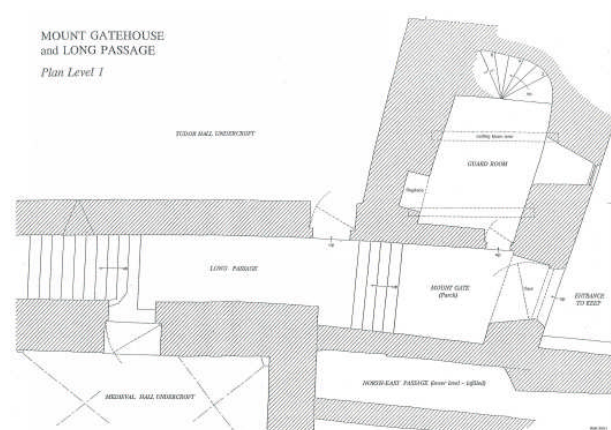
Detailed survey work by Warwick Rodwell in 1995-2001 has showed that it had begun life as an early Tudor structure which, prior to the erection of the later Tudor keep and Somerset Tower, served as a gatehouse proper and gave access into an open court. He suggested that stylistically the elaborate gate arch dates to *circa* 1480-1490.

Adjoining the gatehouse on its west side was a guardroom with a small chamber above it [110].

Both the gatehouse and the guardroom were subsequently incorporated into the Tudor keep. The back (south) wall of the gate was demolished and the long passage was created [103]. A gate chamber was created over the gate, where the portcullis chamber had been, and this was lit from the north side by a two-light window, beneath which is an inscription panel bearing the date 1551. A gun deck was created over the gate, supported on three large beams.

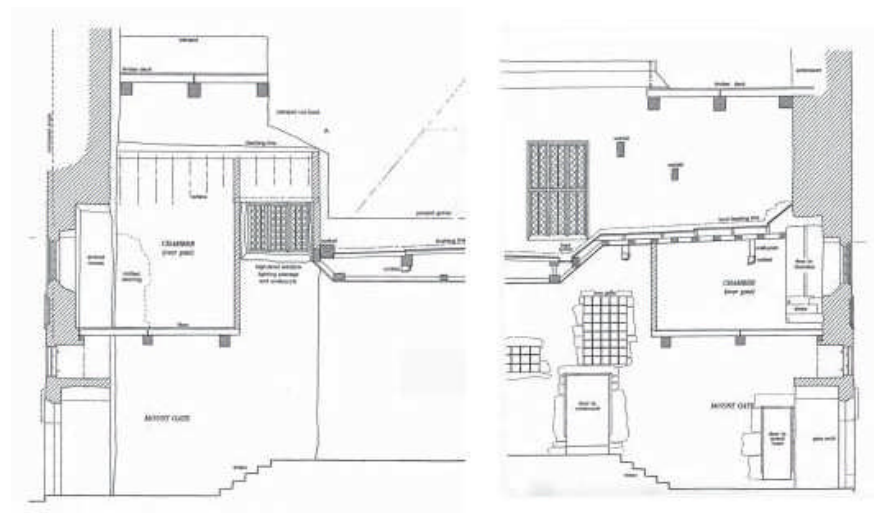
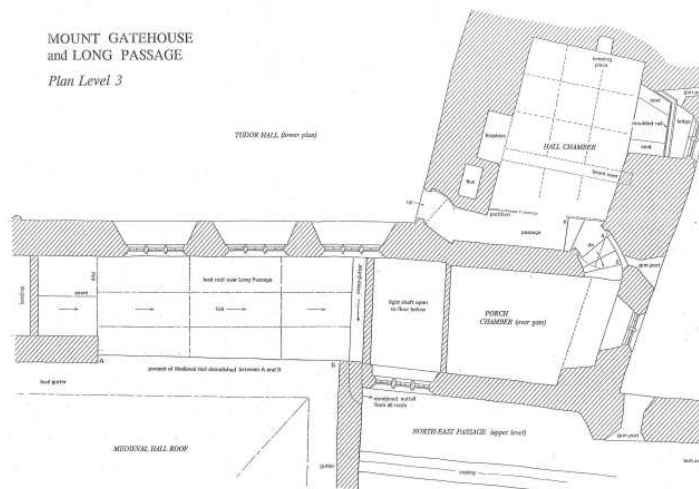
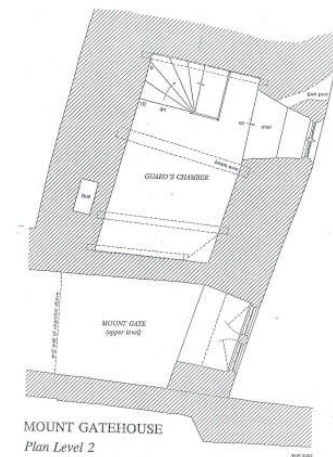
Warwick Rodwell has demonstrated that the upper levels of the gate formed part of a unified design with the Tudor great chamber [113]; the service rooms [114]; the residential apartments [115], and the upper levels of the adjoining guard house, and that they probably all date, along with Somerset Tower [111 & 112] to the period *circa* 1540-1560.

The date stone of 1551 in the upper level of the gate may indicate the end of this building campaign. The inscription, which is in French, has become indecipherable, but certainly includes the year 1551, the 3rd year of the reign of Edward VI in the month of May and the words 'Capitaine, Garde et Gouverneur de ce Château et de l'île de Jersey'.



Ground plan of Mount Gate, the guard chamber, and the long passage (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 12).

Plans of the second level of Mount Gate and the guard chamber (right) and of the upper level of Mount Gate, the guard chamber, and the long passage (below- after Rodwell 2002a).



The east and west elevations of Mount Gate (after Rodwell 2002a).
For other elevations see 103 & 110.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 126-128; Rybot 1933 : 33 Figure 29 'A'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 4 Part 11; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 23.0/1 and 28.0/1, 2 & 3; Rodwell 2001a : 11-16; Rodwell 2002a : 25, 61-65, and 70-71 Figures 12-20; Rodwell 2006a : 27-28; and Ford 2007 : 42.

The space which formerly contained the gate chamber was open to the sky at least from the 1830s until 2005, but the chamber has since been restored to something close to its mid sixteenth century. It now accommodates an exhibit entitled 'Images and Idols', which comprises a small collection of pieces of carved stone and plaster, believed to be from medieval buildings on Jersey, evidently removed from their original locations by Protestant Reformers and later recovered during building works on the castle.



Mount Gate, looking north along the Long Passage, and the site of the gate chamber in 1996.



The exterior elevation of Mount gate (right) and a detail of the plaque (above).



It has been suggested that there may be potential for investigation of the inscription on the sandstone plaque in order to decipher the precise wording.



The door giving access to the gate chamber from the chamber adjoining the Tudor great chamber (left) and the interior of the gate chamber (right).

109 Assessment of Significance :

- a Tudor gate and gate chamber, constructed in two phases in the late fifteenth century and/or sixteenth century
- restored to something close to its original arrangement
- an important element of the defences and arrangement of the Tudor keep
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for detailed study of the sandstone plaque.

**110 PORTER'S LODGE &
UPPER CHAMBER :
circa 1480-1551**

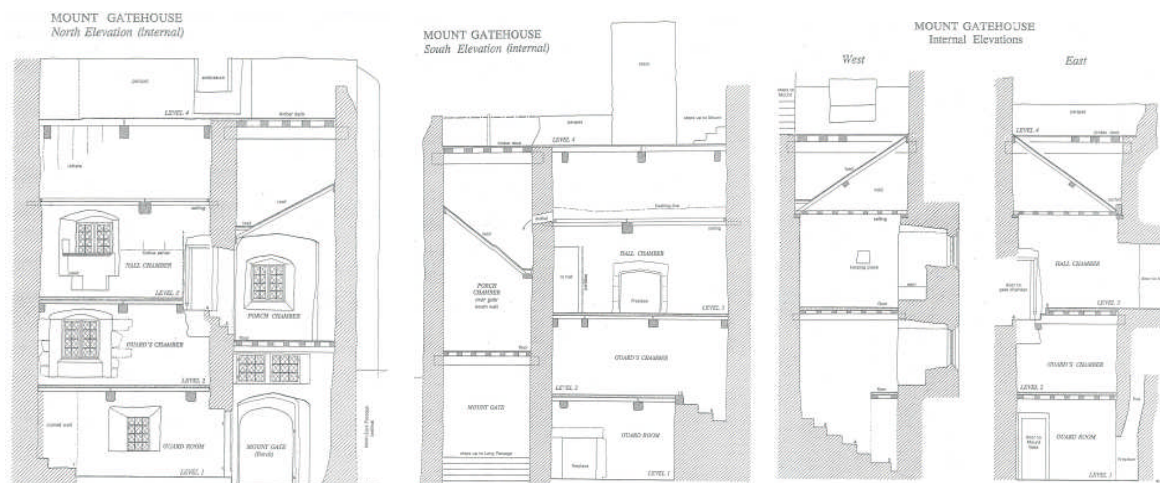
A rectangular tower of three storeys to the north of the Tudor great chamber [113], which originally provided a guard room inside Mount Gate [109] on the lowest storey and a chamber on the first floor.

After the Tudor great chamber had been abandoned it was reconstructed with an internal staircase for use by troops.

Detailed survey work by Warwick Rodwell in 2001 has shown that it had first been erected, in the early Tudor period, as a two-storey structure comprising a guardroom, with a stair in the south-west corner leading up to a porter's chamber. The guardroom has a window in the north wall and a fireplace opposite to it in the south wall. The porter's chamber was unheated, but has a two-light window in the north wall.

The guardroom and porter's chamber were subsequently incorporated into the Tudor keep. A further chamber was added on the top with the only access being from the Tudor great chamber via a short passage. The upper chamber has a fireplace in the south wall, a keeping-place in the west wall, and an elaborate two-light window in the north wall, which included integral seats and a gun-port.

Warwick Rodwell has demonstrated that the upper chamber formed part of a unified design with the Tudor great chamber [113]; the service rooms [114]; the residential apartments [115], and the upper levels of the adjoining guard house, and that they probably all date, along with Somerset Tower [111 & 112] to the period *circa* 1540-1560. The date stone of 1551 in the upper level of the adjoining gate may indicate the end of this building campaign.



*Internal elevations of Mount Gate and Porter's Lodge
(after Rodwell 2002 Figures 15-17 – for plans see 109).*

References

Nicolle 1921 : 128-128; Rybot 1933 : 31 Figure 29 'C'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 4 Part 6; Rodwell 2001a : 11-16; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 27.0/1 and 28.0/1, 2 & 3; Rodwell 2002a 63-64 and 70-71 Figures 12-20; and Ford 2007 : 55.

The guardroom, porter's chamber, and upper chamber have been restored to something close to their original arrangement. The porter's chamber is currently used as a store but the other two rooms are accessible to visitors. The guardroom includes an exhibit entitled 'Gentlemen Porters of the Castle' whilst the hall chamber contains Gordon Young's 'Golden Chair', which is an interpretation of a Tudor morality tale.



The Porter's Lodge (left) and the entrance to it from Mount Gate (right).



The Porter's Chamber (left) and the Upper Chamber (right).

110 Assessment of Significance :

- a Tudor porter's lodge and upper chamber, constructed in two phases in the sixteenth century
- restored to something close to their original arrangement
- important elements of the defences and living accommodation of the Tudor keep
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- perhaps potential for making the porter's chamber accessible to visitors.

**111 SOMERSET
TOWER :
circa 1547-1551**

This forms part of the group of structures added to the west of the medieval great hall in the period *circa* 1540-1560 [109-118], which are referred to by Rybot as the Newer Keep and are now generally referred to as the Tudor keep.

Nicolle referred to this structure as The Mount, and suggested that it was constructed in *circa* 1549 by Henry Cornish under Governor Sir Edward Seymour, afterwards Duke of Somerset and Lord Protector from whom it derives the name – Somerset Tower.



In a report of 1680 it was recommended that 'the Great Plattform to be raised six feet higher than the Parapett is at present and to make the Parapett 12 feet thick, upon which Plattform may be planted 10 whole culverings and 8 demi-culverings', but it appears that these works were not undertaken. Nicolle also noted that 'where the present semaphore tower is constructed there formerly existed the louver or lantern of the Great hall, designed to carry smoke and to promote ventilation. This lantern is figured in an engraving of 1777'.

Warwick Rodwell undertook a detailed examination of the structures comprising the Tudor keep in the period 1996-2001 and was able to demonstrate that Somerset Tower formed part of a unified design with the upper levels of the adjoining gatehouse and porter's lodge [109 & 110]; the Tudor great chamber [113]; the service rooms [114]; and the residential apartments [115], and that they probably all date to the period *circa* 1540-1560. The date stone of 1551 in the upper level of the adjoining gate may indicate the end of this building campaign.

The Somerset Tower is the tall block of solid masonry, U-shaped in ground plan, which forms the west side of this group of buildings, and supports Mount Battery. It provided protection for the hall and domestic apartments on its east side and provided a raised gun platform from which the castle could be protected from the north-west.

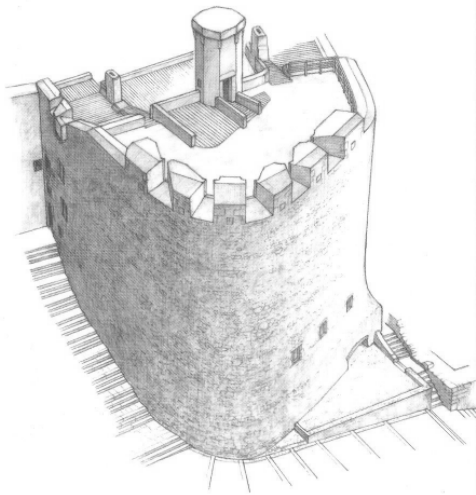
Philip Dixon has noted that the coursing of the masonry is consistent with the tower having been constructed in horizontal lifts over a series of campaigns.

Three empty recesses in the south-west face of the tower are believed to have been intended for the Arms of Edward I; of the Lord Protector Somerset, Governor; and of Henry Cornish, Lieutenant-Governor, but these have either been removed or were never mounted.

It is believed that Sir Hilgrove Turner looked unsuccessfully for a 'secret room' in the tower in the 1830s and that a void adjacent to the third level of the residential apartments was examined by CCTV in 2005.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 135-136; *Rybot 1933* : 33-38 Figures 29 'G' & 32; *Condition Audit 1996* : Vol 3 Part 9 and Vol 4 Part 5; *Rodwell 2001a* : 7-10; *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 28.0/1; *Rodwell 2002a*; and *Rodwell 2006a* : 23-26.



*Drawing of Somerset Tower and Mount Battery (after Rodwell 2006a)
and the tower looking across Grand Battery from the north-west.*



The Tudor keep, from the south, with Somerset Tower on the left.

111 Assessment of Significance :

- a massive U-shaped bastion, of unique form, designed and built in the mid sixteenth century to support gun batteries and protect domestic accommodation to the east
- restored to something close to its original form
- a very important element of the Tudor keep and artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

112 MOUNT BATTERY : This is located on the top of the Tudor keep and comprised three elements – a main semi-circular battery on the west side, with embrasures for five cannon (A); a battery over the Residential Apartments on the south side (B); and a small battery over Mount Gate on the north side (C). Also built at the same time was a fire-control tower [118] adapted during the German occupation,



They all formed part of the final phase of the construction of Somerset Tower and the Tudor keep, completed in *circa* 1551, but have some later modifications.

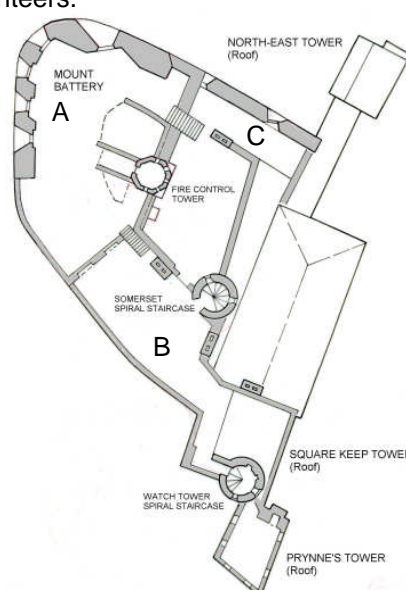
A recommendation made in 1680 that the parapet should be raised and strengthened to carry a greater number of cannon was not adopted. However, the parapet was modified and the sills of the embrasures were lowered in 1804. The pavement, which may conceal tracks for guns, was restored by Public Works in the early twentieth century at a level slightly higher than the original.

There is a compass dial cut in the stone coping and also a signal mast mounting and a stand for a sunshine recorder.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 135-136; *Rybot 1933* : 33-38; *Rodwell 2002a* : 64; *Rodwell 2006a* : 23-26; and *Ford 2007* : 57-58.

Although some limited access had existed to Mount Battery up until 1996, the major programme of restoration of the Tudor keep in the period 1997-2006, including roofing the Tudor great chamber and service rooms which had not been covered since the 1830s, has created full access to Mount Battery via the watch tower spiral staircase [107], the Somerset spiral staircase [116], and several flights of steps. A cannon has been mounted on the west, facing Mont Saint Nicolas which provided a natural vantage point from which to attack the castle, and is a reproduction of an early seventeenth century *saker*, with a barrel on loan from the Royal Armouries on a carriage built by Jersey Heritage Trust volunteers.



The roof plan of the Tudor keep, showing the three elements of Mount Battery – A, B & C.



The gun battery forming the west side of Mount Battery.



The cannon on the west side of Mount Battery, pointing at Mont Saint Nicolas.



The battery over Mount Gate.

112 Assessment of Significance :

- gun batteries mounted in the mid sixteenth century
- restored to something close to their original form
- very important elements of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**113 TUDOR GREAT
CHAMBER :**
circa 1547-1551

This is the near rectangular space on the east side of the newer keep and abutting the west side of the long passage [103].

It was referred to in 1634 as 'The Hall' and in 1755 as St George's Hall. Rybot identified the upper part as a great hall.

The roof, which appears to have been flat, was shown intact on Philips plan of 1680, but a plan and section produced in 1755 indicate that the roof no longer existed at that time.



The space was restored as a kitchen in about 1800, after the medieval hall had been converted to a barrack block in 1778, and subsequently fell into ruin in the mid nineteenth century. The roof appears to have been removed in the 1830s and a proposal to convert the space as soldiers' quarters in 1847 was evidently not implemented. However, a two-storey range was constructed in the southern half of what had been an open court and the last remains of this were removed in 1928.

A trench was excavated through the floor of the undercroft in 1931 at which time a curving wall is said to have been found which may have been part of the medieval castle.

All the rooms were used as living accommodation by the garrison during the German occupation in the Second World War.

Detailed survey work and excavations by Warwick Rodwell in the period 1997–2002 demonstrated that it originally comprised an undercroft and a hall, now referred to by the Jersey Heritage Trust as the great chamber, at first floor level, possibly with dais and screens passage, and that it formed part of a unified design with the upper levels of the gatehouse and porters lodge [109 & 110]; Somerset Tower and Mount Battery [111 & 112]; the service rooms [114]; and the residential apartments [115] all constructed in the period *circa* 1547-1560. The date stone of 1551 in the upper level of the adjoining gate may indicate the end of this building campaign (see Section 1.0.4).

The wall separating the Tudor great chamber from the service rooms [114] includes several carved shields bearing the cross of St George, and this may explain why this structure was referred to as St George's Hall in 1755.

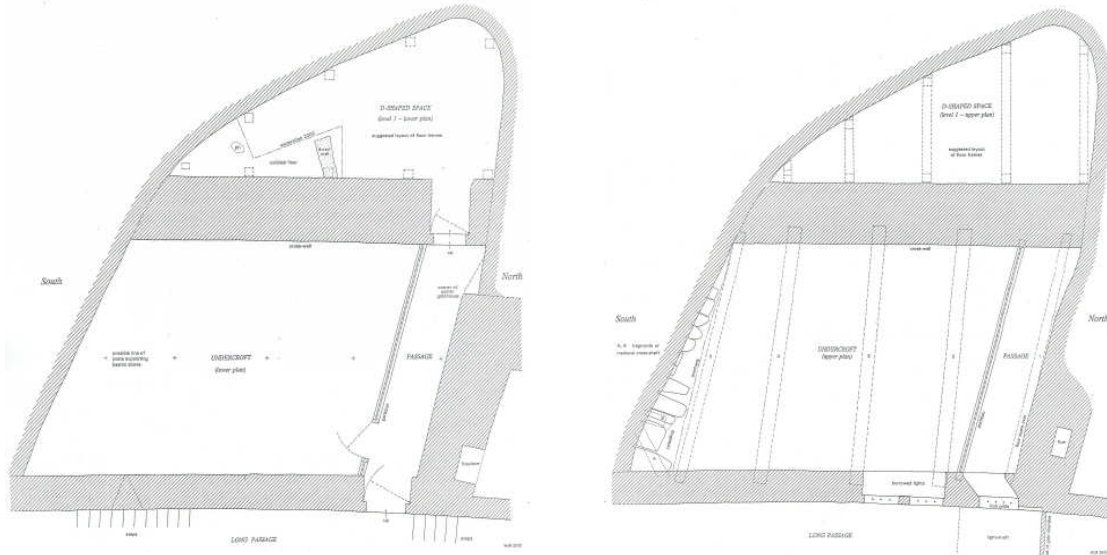
The great chamber gave access at its north end via a short passage to a smaller chamber [110] and to the residential apartments at its south end [115].

References

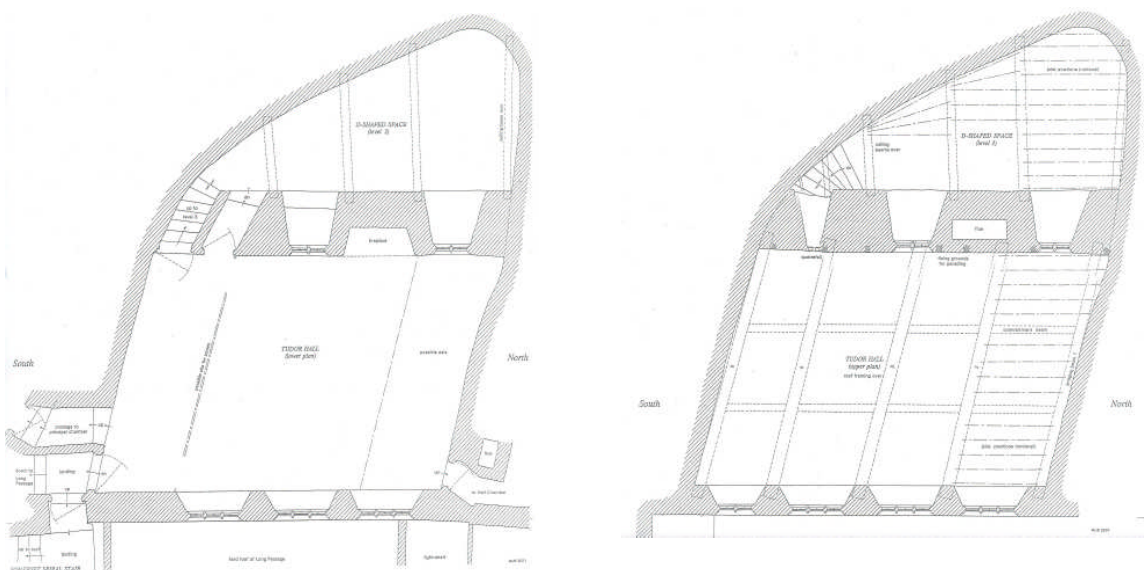
Nicolle 1921 : 133-135; *Rybot 1933* : 34-37 Figures 29 'D' and 32); *Rybot 1933a* : 174-177;; *Condition Audit 1996* Vol 4 Part 12; *Rodwell 2001a* : 17-33; *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* 28.0/1,2 & 3; *Rodwell 2002a* : 66-84 Figures 21-31; *Rodwell 2006a* : 28-29; and *Ford 2007* : 54-55.

The major programme of restoration of the Tudor keep in the period 1997-2006 included the reinstatement, under a flat roof, of the spaces comprising the undercroft and the Tudor great chamber.

Fragments of early wall plaster on the south wall have been conserved.

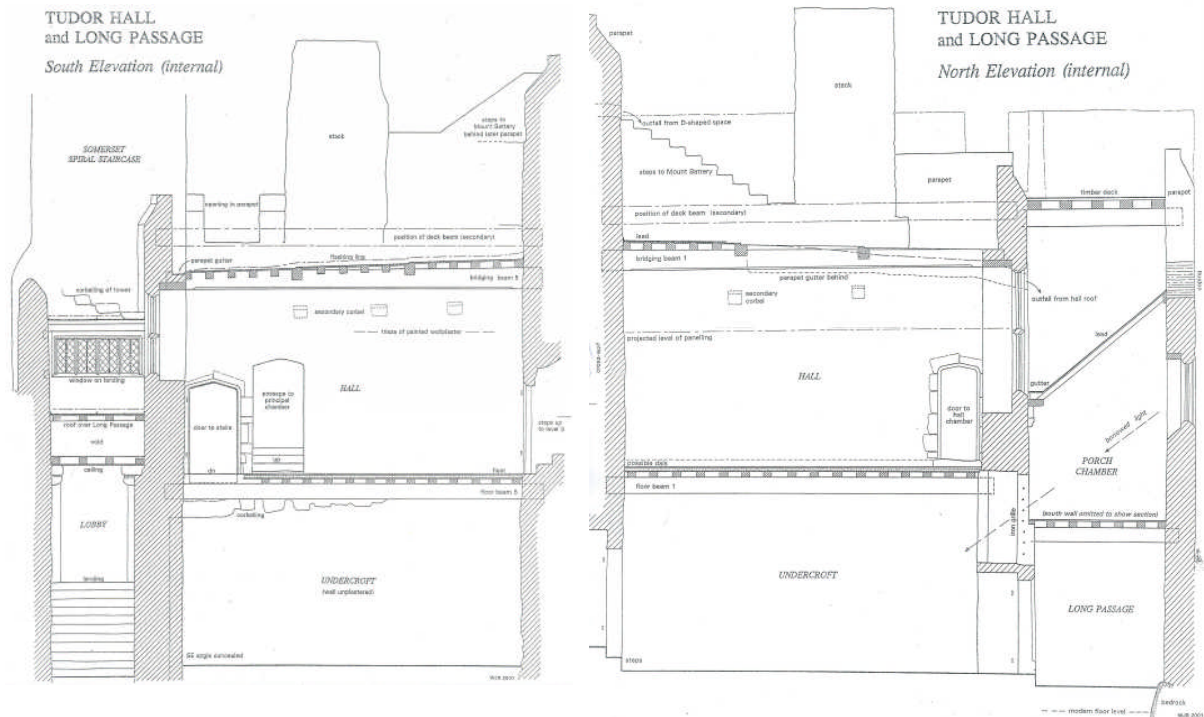


Reconstructed plans of the lower (left) and upper (right) levels of the undercroft (after Rodwell 2002a Figures 21 & 22). Not to scale.



Reconstructed plans of the Tudor great chamber and service rooms at floor level (left) and at a high level (right – after Rodwell 2002a Figures 23 & 24). Not to scale.

[illegible]



Partially reconstructed elevations of the Tudor great chamber and undercroft, showing the south elevation (left) and the north elevation (right – after Rodwell 2002a Figures 29 & 30).



The interior of the Tudor great chamber prior to restoration in 1997-2006.

The great chamber contains an exhibit by Chris Levine entitled 'Equanimity', which is a three-dimensional portrait of Queen Elizabeth II created as a hologram, whilst the restored undercroft now accommodates an audio visual presentation covering the history of the castle.



*The restored Tudor great chamber,
looking north-west (above) and south-
west (right).*





The undercroft of the great chamber, in use as an audio-visual theatre.

113 Assessment of Significance :

- Tudor hall or great chamber and undercroft, first erected in 1547-1551 and adapted on several occasions
- reinstated to something close to their original arrangement
- important elements of the Tudor keep reflecting its residential and ceremonial functions
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

114 SERVICE ROOMS : This is the D-shaped space enclosed by the internal face of the Somerset Tower [111] and the west wall of the Tudor great chamber [113].
circa 1547-1551

It is not ascribed any particular function by Nicolle and Rybot, though it has been referred to in the past as a kitchen.

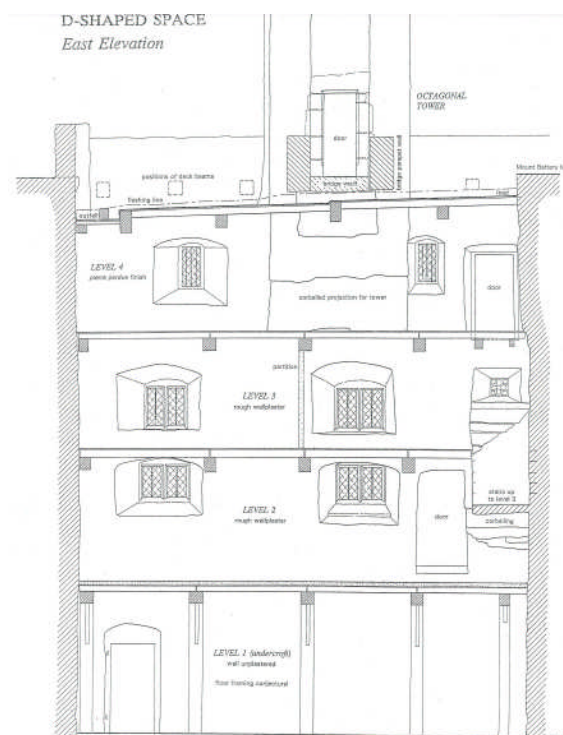
A roof structure was still in place in 1838 and new roof beams were installed in the early twentieth century. It was re-roofed, again, this time with metal sheets, during the German occupation but this was subsequently removed.



Detailed survey work by Warwick Rodwell in the period 1997-2001 demonstrated that the space was created at the same time as the Tudor great chamber in the period *circa* 1547-1551.

It comprised a series of four levels – an unlit undercroft accessed from the undercroft beneath the great chamber; a room with a floor just below that of the great chamber but entered from it via a skewed passage and lit by borrowed light from two windows opening from the great chamber; a room at mid height of the great chamber, divided into two parts by a partition, and entered from it via a door and a flight of stone steps and lit by borrowed light from another two windows opening from the greatchamber; and an upper room, which may have been intended as a magazine, accessed and lit from a door and windows set at roof level above the Tudor great chamber (see Section 1.0.4).

The purposes of these rooms are somewhat obscure, but their form suggests that they can only have been used as service rooms or for storage.



Partial reconstruction of the east elevation of the service rooms (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 32). Not to scale (for plans see 113).

References

Nicolle 1921 : 34-37; Rybot 1933 35 Figure 2 'F'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 4 Part 12; Rodwell 2001 : 34-39; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 28.0/1, 2 & 3); Rodwell 2002a : 86-90 Figures 21-24 and 31-34; Rodwell 2006a : 29-30; and Ford 2007 : 56.

The uppermost level had access onto the roof of the Tudor keep and to Mount Battery. It has been suggested that it may have served as a magazine, but this seems unlikely as it carried the flue from the principal fireplace in the Tudor great chamber, and this would have rendered it unsuitable for this purpose. A gunners' room and shelter seem more likely.

The major programme of restoration of the Tudor keep in the period 1997-2006 has included the reinstatement of the uppermost room in this space. The floors have been omitted remainder of the space which now contains a series of exhibits by David Kemp entitled 'Fabulous Beasts'.



Exhibits in the former service rooms.

The east wall of the service rooms at roof level and the fire control tower.



114 Assessment of Significance :

- service and storage rooms first erected in 1547-1551 alongside the Tudor hall or great chamber
- partially reinstated to the original arrangement
- an element of the Tudor keep servicing the great chamber
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- perhaps potential for re-introducing the floors in order to aid interpretation

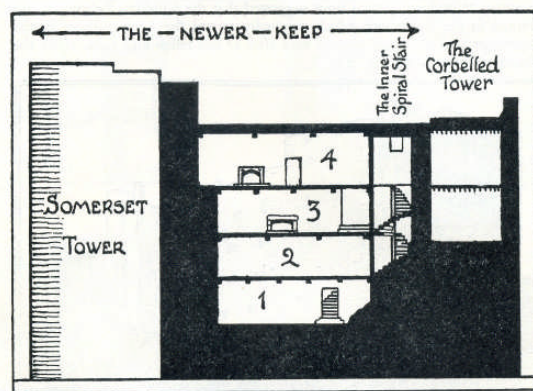
**115 RESIDENTIAL
APARTMENTS :
circa 1547-1551**

A large rectangular structure of four storeys, between the Long Passage [103] and the Somerset Tower [111], evidently erected as part of the major works of building a new Tudor keep in the mid sixteenth century. All four levels are lit by embrasures and/or windows in the south-west wall.

The structure is discussed in some detail by Nicolle, who noted that the lowest storey was entered from the undercroft of the medieval great hall; that the upper storeys were served by inside spiral staircase [117]; and that the uppermost room was probably reserved for the Captain or Governor. The roof was massively reinforced as a gun deck to carry cannon as part of Mount Battery [112].



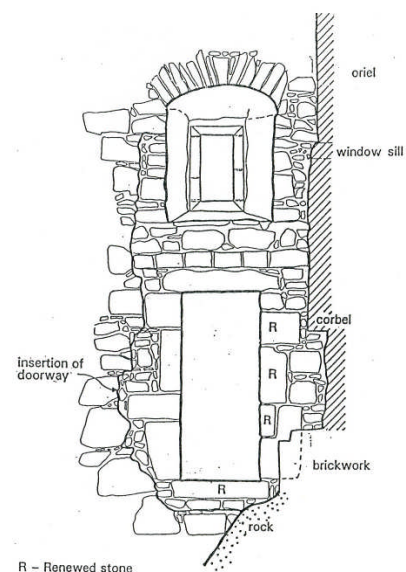
Rybot's section through the residential apartments.



Philip Dixon noted at least two phases of construction, but these are likely to have been close together. The rooms were described in some detail by Warwick Rodwell in 2002.

An external staircase, giving access to an inserted door close to the inside spiral staircase, is attributed to the sixteenth or seventeenth centuries. It incorporated several re-used medieval grave slabs, which might suggest a date in the middle years of the sixteenth century, or later. However, the structure was not mentioned as a point of entry in a document produced between 1562 and the Governorship of Sir John Peyton (1603-1630) and it is not included on Thomas Phillips' plan of 1680.

Record drawing of the inserted door at the head of the external staircase (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 4).



The external staircase was included on the plan with French annotations produced in about 1700 and on the plans produced in 1741 and 1755. It had presumably been constructed between 1680 and 1741, and probably in *circa* 1700, but was removed in 1911.



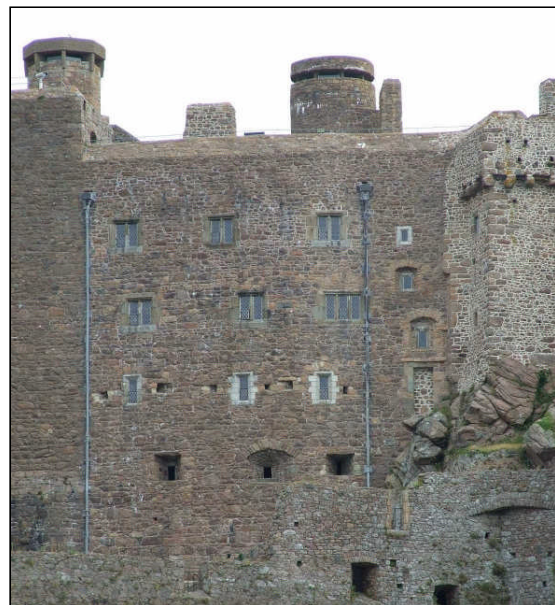
The external staircase, prior to removal in 1911.

The rooms were re-fitted for troops, probably in 1770.

At the beginning of the twentieth century the range was stripped of its nineteenth century accretions. The roof was reconstructed, the floors were all renewed, and Tudor windows were restored in place of their sash replacements.

References

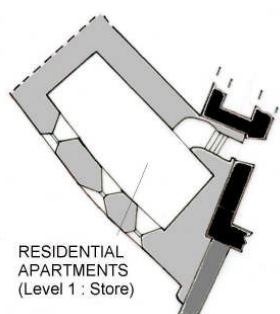
Nicolle 1921 : 133-134; Rybot 1933 : 35-38 Figure 29 'K' & 32; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 4 Part 4; Rodwell 2001a, Dixon & Kennedy 2002b 35.0/1 & 2; Rodwell 2002a : 25-28 and 49-54 Figure 4; Rodwell 2006a 26-27; and Ford 2007 :51-53 & 57.



The exterior of the Residential Apartments.

During the major refurbishment works undertaken in the period 1997-2006, all four levels were restored to something close to their original arrangement.

Level 1



The lowest level (Level 1), which is believed to have been used as a store or casemate, is accessed from the undercroft of the medieval great hall and is lit by three embrasures for cannon. There is graffiti dated '1942' in one of the gun embrasures. The space now contains the 'Witches Screen' - a piece of moving metalwork sculpture by Mike Woods.

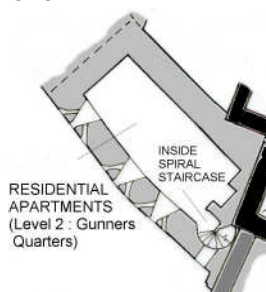
The embrasures in the Level 1 store.



The Witches Screen.

The next three levels are accessed from the inside spiral staircase [117].

Level 2



The second level is lit by three windows with supplementary musket loops. It is believed to have contained gunners' quarters and now contains the castle museum.

The three splayed windows, with musket loops, in the gunners quarters.



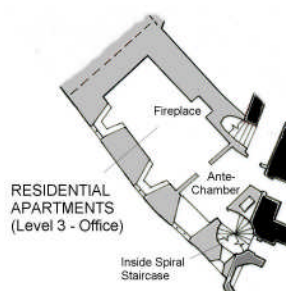


Window and musket loops in the gunners' quarters.



Part of the castle museum, looking towards the inside spiral staircase.

Level 3



The third level is lit by three windows and has a fireplace. A partition separates off a larger space, which is believed to have been an office, from a smaller antechamber.

It now contains an audio visual display on arms and armour by Josh Young, which is presented on a screen mounted in a frame of replica arms and armour by Brian Fell.



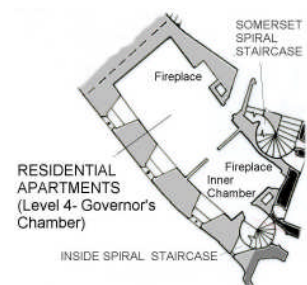
One of the windows and the screen.



Looking towards the antechamber.

Level 4

The fourth level is lit by three windows and has a direct access into the Tudor great chamber. It has two fireplaces and a partition separating off an inner chamber from what is believed to have been the Governor's chamber.



Both fireplaces are of Tudor design. The larger one bears a shield and tapering fern frond and a shield and scroll-encased 'ragged staff'. The smaller one is plain but scratched faintly on it are the words 'Gardez la Foy' and 'R. Warwick', being the motto of the Paulets, who were Governors from 1550 to 1600, and the name of Robert Rich, Earl of Warwick, Governor in 1643 and Lord High Admiral of England under Cromwell.

The larger chamber now accommodates a portrait painting of Sir Anthony Paulet by Marcus Gheeraets in 1597, whilst the inner chamber contains an exhibition of tobacco pipes from Jersey.



The larger chamber (above) and the portrait of Sir Anthony Paulet (right).



The inner chamber.

The timber deck over the roof was reinstated following repair and re-leading and now displays a seaward viewing table by Russell Coleman.



The roof of the residential apartments, looking east.

115 Assessment of Significance :

- principal residential rooms of the Tudor keep, erected in *circa* 1547-1550.
- restored to their original arrangement
- an important element in understanding the use of the castle in the Tudor period
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- perhaps potential for display of more material from the castle collection.

**116 SOMERSET
SPIRAL STAIR :
circa 1547-1551
and later**

A staircase reached by a short flight of steps at the end of the long passage [103], between the great chamber [113] and the residential apartments [115], giving access to the vestibule of the residential apartments, the great chamber, and the roof of the Tudor keep.

It was built in the mid sixteenth century, partly on rough, outsailing corbelling.

During the restoration of the keep in the late eighteenth century, it was modified with niches and it was later restored by Public Works, when a dividing wall at the side of the hall passage was removed.



The tower on the top of the Somerset spiral staircase, giving access to the roof of the residential apartments.



References

Nicolle 1921 : 133; Rybot 1933 : 37; Rodwell 2002a : 85; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 32.0/1.

It projects above roof level as a round tower, which was raised in height, capped with concrete, and used as a lookout tower during the German occupation. It has now been fully restored and serves the purpose for which it was originally designed.

116 Assessment of Significance :

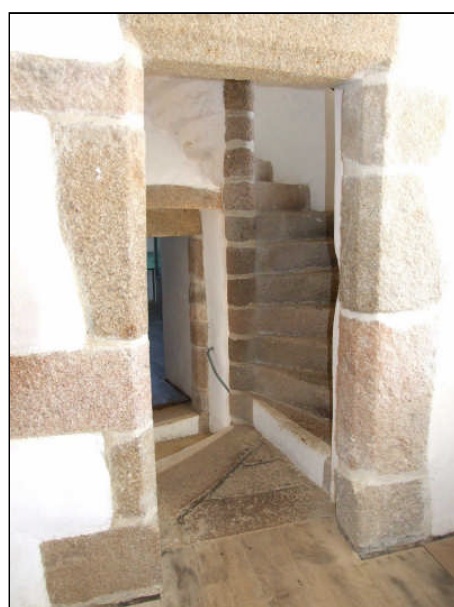
- principal access to the Tudor residential apartments and the gun platform on the roof, adapted as a lookout tower during the Second World War
- restored to its modified arrangement
- important in demonstrating access between various levels of the Tudor keep and serving the same purpose today
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**117 INSIDE SPIRAL
STAIR :**
circa 1547-1551

Constructed in the mid sixteenth century to provide access between the upper three levels of the residential apartments [115] and, through rough forced openings, into the square keep tower [106], where the floors may have been adjusted at that time.

The lowest part of the stair has been renewed in recent times and the walls and the roof of the entrance have been roughly repaired and plastered by Public Works.

An original window has been made into an external door and the stairs must have been reversed to match the door level.



The inside spiral staircase.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 133; Rybot 1933 : 36-37 Figure32; Rodwell 2002a : 49-54; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 36.0/1).

The staircase has been fully restored and serves the purpose for which it was originally designed.

117 Assessment of Significance :

- principal access between the residential apartments
- restored to its original arrangement
- important in demonstrating access between various levels of the Tudor keep and serving the same purpose today
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**118 FIRE CONTROL
TOWER :
circa 1500-1550
and later**

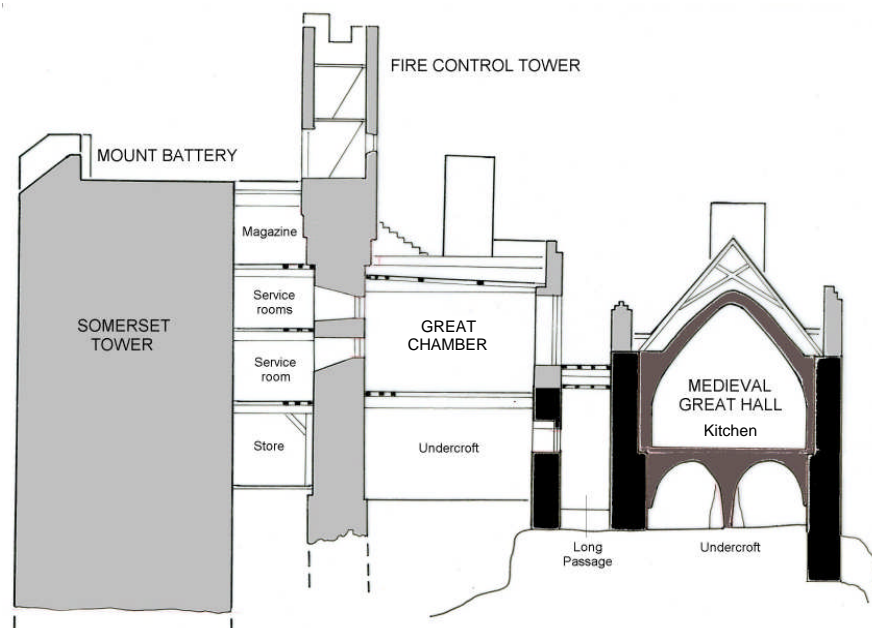
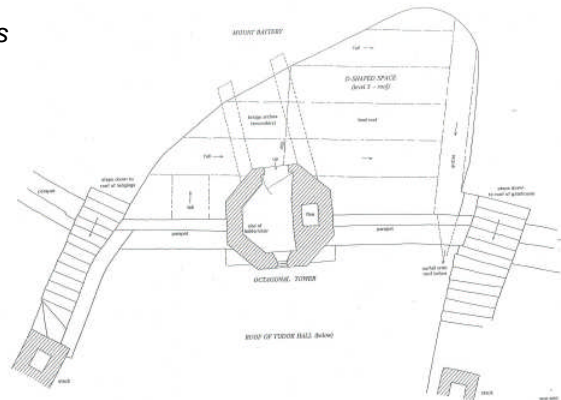
Built in the mid sixteenth century on the thick cross wall between the Tudor great hall [113] and the service rooms [114], and incorporating one of the chimneys of the Tudor great chamber.

Possibly adapted as a cupola and then as a small magazine referred to in 1788 and 1798.

During the German occupation in 1944 the top was removed and it was initially raised in timber, then capped with concrete and adapted to form a coastal artillery observation post.



Plan of the roof of the service rooms and the fire control tower (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 34). Not to scale.



Section through the Tudor keep, showing the location and form of the fire control tower (based on Rodwell 2002a).

References

Nicolle 1921 : 132; Rybot 1933 Figure 34; Rodwell 2002a : 91 Figures 25, 26 and 32-34; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 34.0.



The fire control, in the 1930s (left) and during the early phase of German occupation (right).

The tower has now been restored to its form during the Second World War.



The fire control tower, from the west (left) and from the south-east (right),

118 Assessment of Significance :

- original Tudor viewing tower for artillery, modified during Second World War
- restored to its 1940s arrangement
- an important element of the Tudor keep, reflecting its role as an artillery battery
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

2. MIDDLE WARD

This is that part of the castle occupying much of the higher ground at the northern end of the site, and containing the most strongly-defended part of the castle – the Keep or Upper Ward on its east side (for a discussion of its structural development see Section 1.0.3).

It appears to have been enclosed with defences at an early date, probably at the beginning of the thirteenth century, but although much survives of the original stone gate giving access from the Lower Ward [201], it is not known whether the remainder of the circuit on the north, west, and south sides was a timber palisade or a stone wall.

In the later medieval period the defences on these three sides comprised a series of semi-circular or round towers linked by a curtain wall [202-208], and these works are likely to have been completed by *circa* 1225. Whereas Rybot had suggested that remains of a wall and bastions on the lower slopes on the north side [202 & 203] were the remains of the Middle Ward curtain wall (*Rybot* 1933 : 14 Figure 4), it has more recently been suggested that these may have formed part of an extension of the Outer Ward, and that the original north curtain wall was buried when Grand Battery was built in the sixteenth century.

The defences were augmented at the south-east corner, where they abutted the south side of the Keep or Upper Ward, by a square tower [see 212] and an additional length of curtain wall [209]. Remnants of two possible bastions or round towers [210 & 211] may represent the remains of defences of the Keep or Upper Ward.

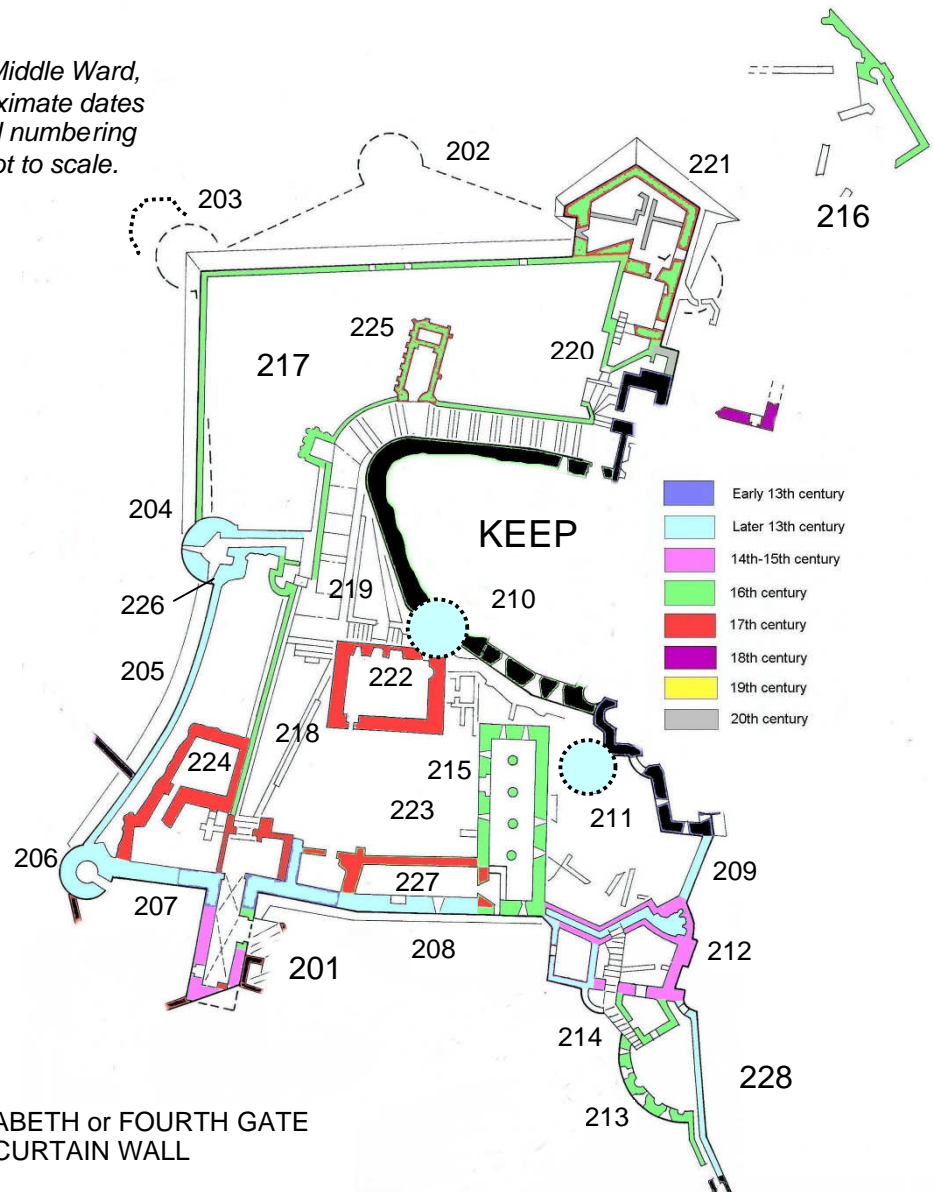
The defences at the south-east corner were later strengthened in the fourteenth or fifteenth centuries by the refurbishment of an existing tower, now known as Busgros Tower [212], and then in the sixteenth century by a large gun battery, now known as Cornish Bastion [213], and a wall walk [214].

The defences on the north side were replaced and strengthened in the sixteenth century by outworks, now known as Caesar's Fort [216], and by Grand Battery [217]. Some internal re-ordering took place to accommodate the new keep in Upper Ward [218 & 219]. The defences at the north-east corner, which included a postern gate employed as a sallyport, were also augmented by an arrowhead-shaped bastion which reached its final form in the seventeenth century [220 & 221]. Structures were built against the south wall of the Ward, which may have been a stable and store [223] and a well on Grand Battery was enclosed in a cover building [225]. A late feature is a belfry [226] built on one of the round towers.

This was the main residential area of the medieval castle and the only sizeable area of level ground above the Lower Ward, though it was probably reduced in size by the construction of Somerset Tower and the new keep and by Grand Battery in the sixteenth century. Contained within the enclosed space were a series of later domestic buildings, of which the lower parts of two substantial structures survive [215 & 222], as well as a gunpowder store [223].

Excavations in the 1970s revealed the remains of an Iron Age rampart on the south side of the Ward [227], whilst an area on the lower slopes outside the curtain wall on its east side may have supported outworks of the castle and has been used for some time as a storage area [228].

Simplified plan of Middle Ward, showing the approximate dates of construction and numbering used in the text. Not to scale.

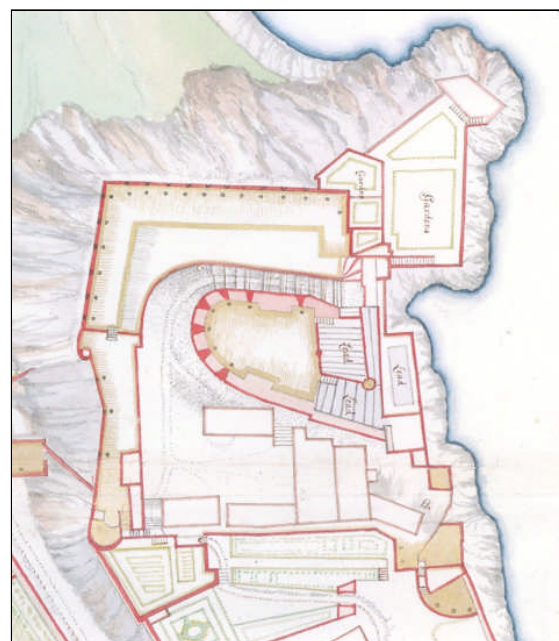
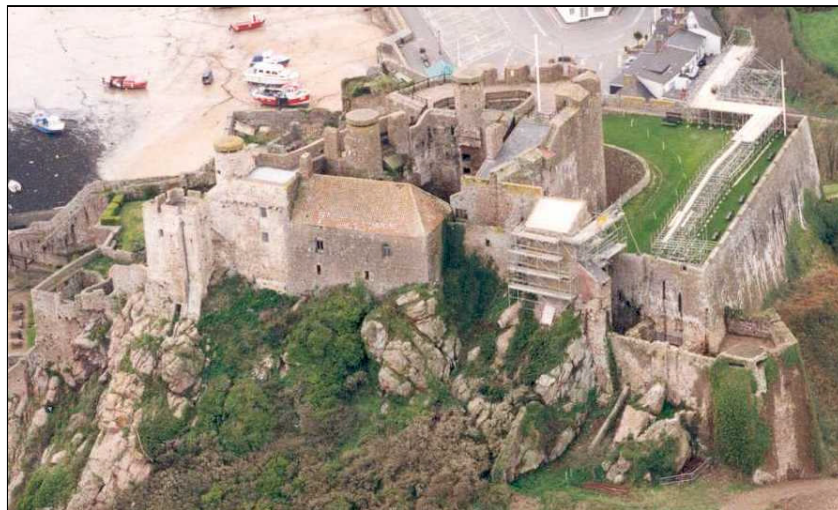


201 QUEEN ELIZABETH or FOURTH GATE
 202 NORTHERN CURTAIN WALL
 203 BASTION
 204 BELL TOWER
 205 WEST WALL
 206 SOUTH-WEST TOWER
 207 SOUTH-WESTERN WALL (West part)
 208 SOUTH-WESTERN WALL (East part)
 209 SOUTH-EASTERN WALL
 210 POSSIBLE ROUND TOWER
 211 POSSIBLE ROUND TOWER
 212 BUSGROS TOWER
 213 CORNISH BASTION
 214 WALL WALK
 215 ST GEORGE'S CHAPEL
 216 CAESAR'S FORT

217 GRAND BATTERY
 218 PUTLOG WALL
 219 LARGE STAIRCASE
 220 ENTRANCE TO NORTH-EAST OUTWORKS
 221 NORTH-EAST OUTWORKS
 222 ST GEORGE'S HALL
 223 STABLE AND STORE
 224 GUNPOWDER STORE
 225 WELL
 226 BELFRY
 227 IRON AGE RAMPART
 228 STORAGE AREA

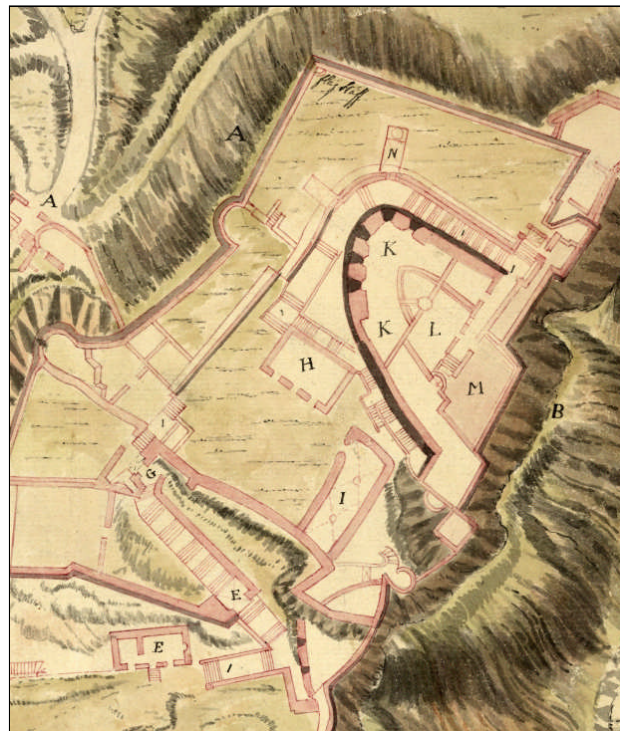


Middle Ward, from the south-east (above) and from the north-east (below), prior to re-roofing the Tudor keep.



Plan of Middle Ward in 1680, after Thomas Phillips.

Plan of Middle Ward in 1741.



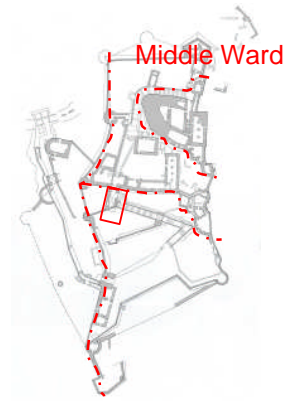
Plan of Middle Ward in 1755.

**201 QUEEN
ELIZABETH'S or
FOURTH GATE :
Medieval & later**

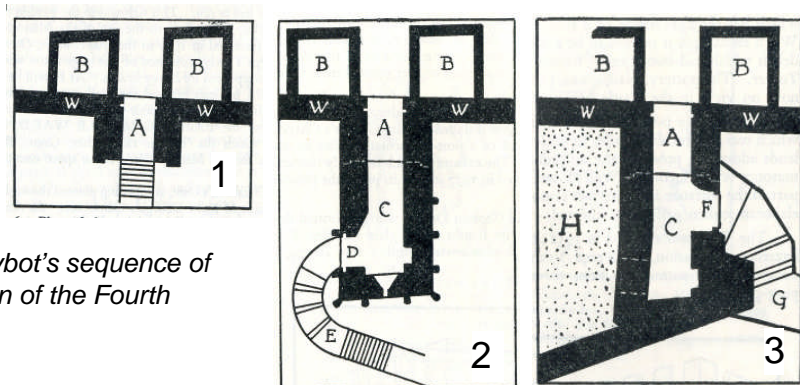
This structure is located towards the west end of the south curtain wall.

It has been modified in form on several occasions and most writers agree that it is essentially of three principal stages, although interpretations differ in detail.

A simple square, two-storeyed gate tower with portcullis, probably similar in scale and design to the Second Gate [301] and dating to the early thirteenth century, has been known as **St George's Tower** and as **Middle Ward Gate** (1).



It was extended southwards by the addition of a long thin barbican, probably in the fourteenth or fifteenth century, and was then known as the **Iron Gate** (2). It was vaulted at a high level and entered at the south end of the west side.



Norman Rybot's sequence of construction of the Fourth Gate.

At the end of the sixteenth century, and probably in *circa* 1593, a new east-facing gate was broken through the east wall of the barbican to allow the approach to be concealed by a projecting buttress. The south end of the former barbican was closed off to create a porter's lodge. This gate was, and to some extent still is, known as **Queen Elizabeth's Gate** (3). Above the arch there are three coats of arms – the Paulet family; Queen Elizabeth; and Sir Anthony Paulet, halved with those of his wife Katherine Norreys.

The west side of the gatehouse was obscured by the construction of Sir John Peyton's Bastion in the early seventeenth century [310].

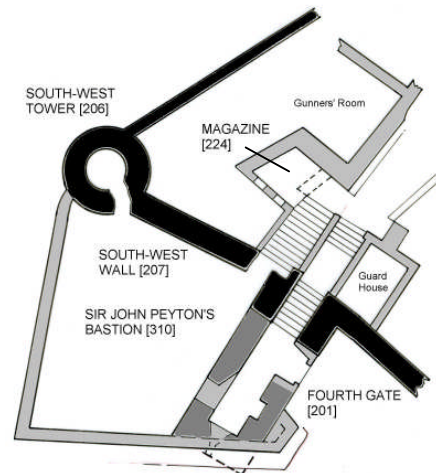
A pair of guard houses were added at the rear, presumably in the late sixteenth or seventeenth century, which were accessed from the floor above the gate. One of these survives relatively intact, but the other has been adapted to take stairs up to Sir John Peyton's Bastion.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 115-118; Rybot 1930 : 279; Rybot 1933 :22-25 Figures 15-19; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 1; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 13.0/1-4); and Ford 2007 : 27-28.

The gate has been restored and provides the access for visitors from Lower Ward to Middle Ward. The inside of the Phase 2 : Iron Gate is visible on the west side of the barbican, and includes a fireplace and flue.

Simplified plan, showing Fourth Gate and other structures in its vicinity. Not to scale.



It contains a wooden sculpture, by Owen Cunningham, called the 'Wound Man', which is a three-dimensional representation of a medieval surgical illustration of the same name, showing the range of wounds commonly resulting from battle.



Queen Elizabeth's or Fourth Gate, from the south-east.



Queen Elizabeth's or Fourth Gate, from the north-east.

A photograph of a stone archway leading to a courtyard. The arch is constructed from large, rough-hewn stones. The courtyard beyond the arch is paved with light-colored stone tiles. The walls of the courtyard are also made of stone, and there are some plants growing along the base of the walls. The lighting is bright, suggesting a sunny day.



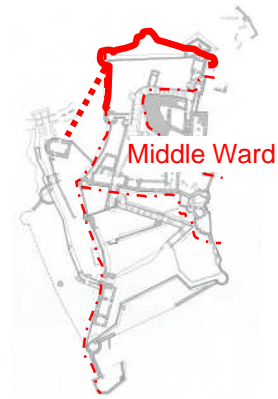
201 Assessment of Significance :

- 172

**202 : NORTHERN
CURTAIN WALL :
Later medieval**

The later medieval defences on the north and north-western sides of Middle Ward were evidently abandoned, partially demolished, and partly encased in new work when the curtain walls of Grand Battery were erected in their place in the sixteenth century [217].

The area beyond the sixteenth century curtain wall was investigated by Rybot in the late 1920s and in 1940, and he identified the former line of a later medieval curtain wall, and at least two semi-circular or round towers, which may have formed an extension to the Outer Ward. He also identified remnants of an elliptical bastion at a lower level at the north-west corner, which may have been medieval in date [203].



During his excavations, Rybot found two stone slabs, both containing inverted keyhole gunports, which suggest that they were probably employed in a curtain wall built between *circa* 1350 and 1450. One of these is on display in the castle museum.

Several alternative arrangements for the northern curtain wall have now been proposed, based on extant and excavated remains.

References

Rybot 1930 ; Rybot 1933 :19-20 Figure 12 J, L, M & S; Rybot 1950; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 48.0/1; and Rodwell 2006a : 9-11.

The area to the north of Middle Ward is covered in thick vegetation and there are no significant remains visible on the surface.

202 Assessment of Significance :

- buried and encased remains of medieval curtain wall and bastions
- not visible on surface, but believed to survive below ground level and behind later masonry
- important to understanding of the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for investigation

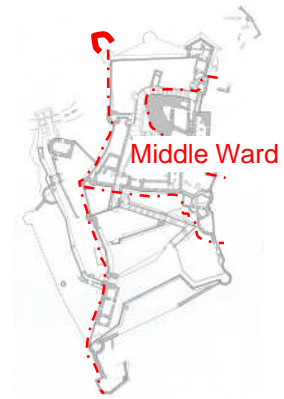
**203 : BASTION :
Later medieval**

Remains of an elliptical bastion found by Norman Rybot during investigations in 1930 associated with the outer ditch [404].

Although thought by Rybot to have been an individual element of the medieval defences, it is now believed that this may have formed part of the defences of Outer Ward, extending beyond the medieval first gate.

Philip Dixon noted possible traces of an earthwork bastion in this vicinity.

The area to the north of Middle Ward is covered in thick vegetation and there are no significant remains visible on the surface.



References

Rybot 1930; Rybot 1933 11 Figures 4 & 12 S; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 1.0/2; and Rodwell 2006a : 12-13.

203 Assessment of Significance :

- buried remains of medieval bastion
- not visible on surface, but believed to survive below ground level
- important to understanding of the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for investigation

**204 BELL TOWER :
Later medieval**

A two-storey, round tower forming part of the later medieval western defences of Middle Ward, the remains of which were partially encased in new stonework when the Grand Battery was built in the late sixteenth century.

This is the only bastion of its type in the castle to have survived in something close to its original form, and it includes arrow-loops at the lower level.

It is surmounted by a belfry added in 1497-1500 [225].

When Grand Battery was built in the sixteenth century the tower was heightened and two gun ports were added. Powder and shot would have been stored in a small magazine built behind it in the thickness of the walls.

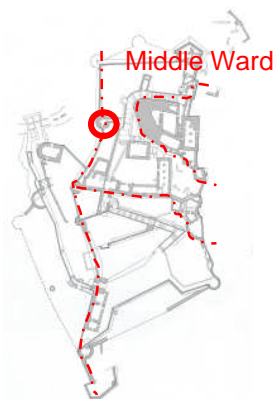
It has been suggested that it may subsequently have been converted into an ice house, possibly by Philippe d'Auvergne in 1799-1801.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 124-126; Rybot 1933 : 21 & 26 Figure 14 '11'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 8; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 25.0/1 & 2; and Ford 2007 : 41.

The tower has been fully restored and now contains a shadow sculpture in steel, wood and fibreglass by Steve Gumbley, Andy Plant, and Bryan Tweddle, with music by David Humpage, which reflects on warnings of death in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries.

The interior of the tower is approached from the east by an underground passage, vaulted in brick, which gives access to a brick vaulted chamber in the tower and at its east end is a spiral staircase. The brickwork of the passage and tower resemble those found in an ice house and appear to relate to the later uses of the castle. They were, perhaps, inserted to support a gun emplacement above them.



*Bell Tower, from the west.
Note the elongated arrow-
loop at a low level.*

There is a doorway into a space concealed by the south section of the Grand Battery, which was blocked in 1977 and is now used for services.



The spiral stairs and passage (above).



The interior of the tower, showing part of the domed roof (above) and the arrow-loops and the shadow sculpture (right).



204 Assessment of Significance :

- a near complete later medieval bastion of *circa* 1225, subsequently heightened and adapted to take artillery
- restored and in good condition
- an important element to understanding the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**205 WEST WALL :
Later medieval and
sixteenth century**

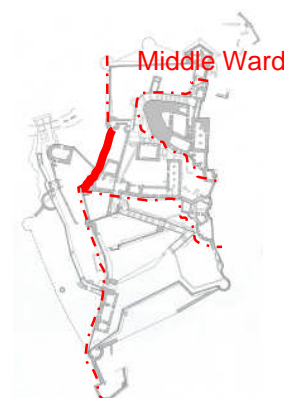
This forms the southern part of the west curtain wall of Middle Ward, between Bell Tower [203] and the south-west tower [206].

It appears to have been mostly rebuilt in the late sixteenth century, when the southern part of Grand Battery was created [217], but that wall may incorporate remains of its predecessor.

References

Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 7; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 25.0/1 & 2.

The wall is fully restored and intact, and is said to have another west curtain wall concealed behind the present one.



The west wall, from the north-west.

205 Assessment of Significance :

- later medieval curtain wall, mostly rebuilt in sixteenth century
- restored and complete
- an important element to understanding the medieval and sixteenth century defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

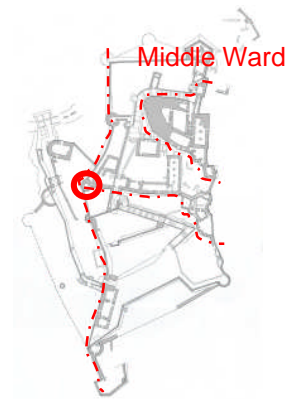
**206 SOUTH-WEST
TOWER :
Later medieval**

A later medieval round tower forming the south-west corner of Middle Ward, which was probably partially filled in the fifteenth or sixteenth century leaving a possible garderobe within it.

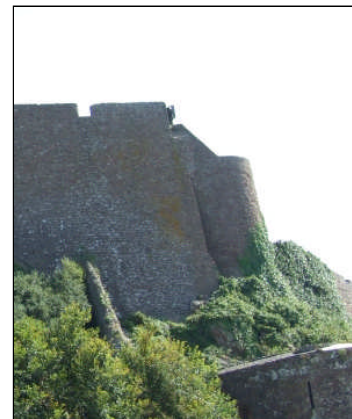
References

Nicolle 1921 : 125; Rybot 1933 : 26 Figure 14 '12'; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 25.0/2.

The tower has been conserved as a ruin, without public access to the interior. It has been entered from Sir John Peyton's Bastion [310] through a splayed opening, presumably inserted when the bastion was added in the late sixteenth or early seventeenth century (see plan on 201). The upper level includes a fireplace and a flue. The staircase down onto the medieval curtain wall [207] has also survived.



The south-west tower, from the north (right) and from the south and south-east (below).



206 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of a later medieval bastion
- restored as a ruin, without access to the interior
- an important element to understanding the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- possibly potential for repair and interpretation

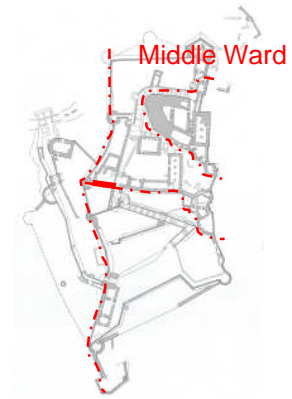
207 SOUTH-WESTERN WALL (west part) : Later medieval

A section of medieval curtain wall between Fourth Gate [201] and the south-west round tower [206], which was partly buried when Peyton's Bastion was created in *circa* 1600 [310].

Reference

Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 15.0/1.

The ruinous top of the wall indicates that it may have been about 1.5 metres wide and Dixon & Kennedy have suggested that it may in part belong to the earliest building of the defences in stone in the 1220s (see plan on 201).



Fourth Gate, from the north-east, showing the south-western wall (arrowed).



207 Assessment of Significance :

- part of the medieval curtain wall
- mostly buried beneath later bastion
- an element to understanding the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**208 SOUTH-WESTERN WALL (east part) :
Later medieval**

A section of the medieval curtain wall between Fourth Gate [201] and Busgros Tower [212], which is probably mostly medieval in date, with some later insertions and restored sections.

Reference

Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 12.0/1.

It is in a restored condition and supports some vegetation growth. Towards its east end the wall incorporates splayed openings associated with the building sometimes referred to as St George's Chapel, built in circa 1600 [215], and a store and stable, built in the seventeenth century [223].



The south-western wall, from the south-west.



Splayed window in St George's Chapel.

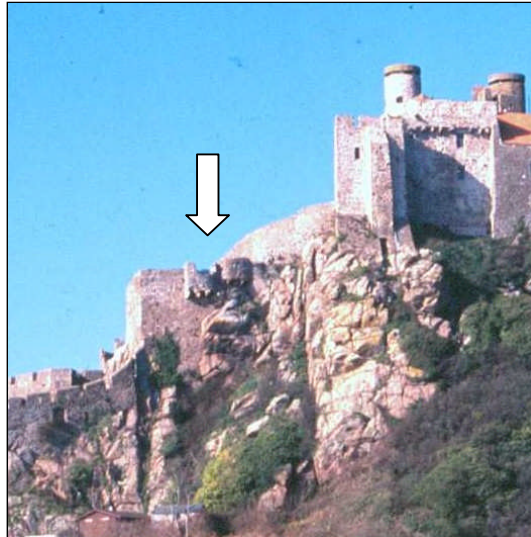
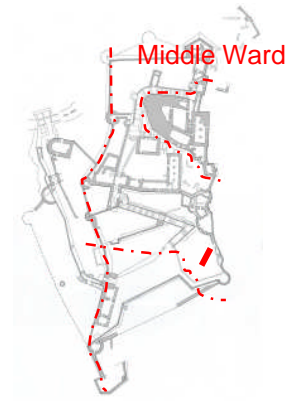
208 Assessment of Significance :

- later medieval curtain wall containing later insertions and restored sections
- relatively complete and in a conserved condition
- an important element to understanding the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

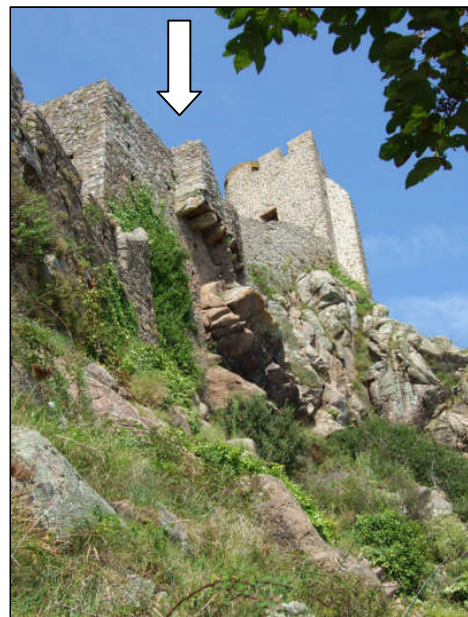
**209 SOUTH-EASTERN
WALL :
Later medieval**

A short section of later medieval curtain wall between Prynne's Tower [108] and Busgros Tower [209].

This appears to be in a conserved condition and incorporates a double latrine on its external face.



South-eastern curtain wall and latrines from the east (arrowed).



South-eastern curtain wall and latrines, from the south-east (arrowed).

209 Assessment of Significance :

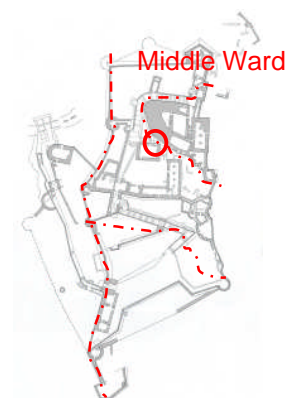
- a short section of later medieval curtain wall and latrines
- relatively complete and in good condition
- an important element to understanding the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**210 ROUND TOWER :
Later medieval**

The possible remains of a later medieval round tower, incorporating a sixteenth century gunport on its north-west side, which was partially encased in the south-west side of Somerset Tower in *circa* 1550.

Thought, perhaps, to be part of one of a pair of gate towers forming a gateway into the Upper Ward, prior to the construction of the Tudor keep.

Warwick Rodwell noted that some early stonework linked to the possible tower may exist at the base of the Somerset Tower.



References

Dixon & Kennedy 2002a : 18-19; *Rodwell 2002a* : 49; and *Rodwell 2006a* : 15.

The remains of what appears to be a round tower and gunport have been conserved as an alcove on the south-west side of Somerset Tower. The alcove now contains a wooden sculpture by Chris Bailey, depicting the visit in 1457 of John Wollehouse and Thomas Haddon, two dyers from Coventry - representatives of the civilian tradesmen present within the castle (see – plan on 215). The early stonework noted by Warwick Rodwell is about three metres high and extends for about five metres to the south-east of the alcove. It may have formed part of a curtain wall predating Somerset Tower and been part of the later medieval circuit of Middle Ward.



The remains of the round tower and former curtain wall, from the north-west (left) and from the south-east (right).

The conserved gun port.



The sculpture within the remains of the round tower.

210 Assessment of Significance :

- possible remains of a medieval round tower, gun port, and curtain wall
- conserved as an alcove
- potentially an important element to understanding the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- perhaps potential for further recording and investigation

**211 ROUND TOWER :
Later medieval**

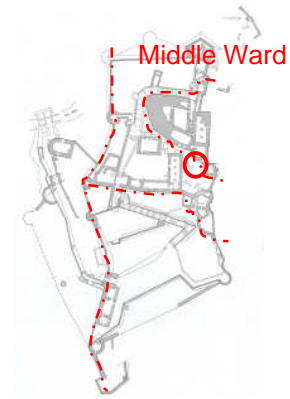
The possible remains of the base of a later medieval round tower, in the form of semi-circular wall which clings to the face of the rock below Prynne's Tower.

When excavated by Rybot, it proved to be a shell of masonry filled with kitchen debris, which had been ejected from the small door at the foot of the tower above it.

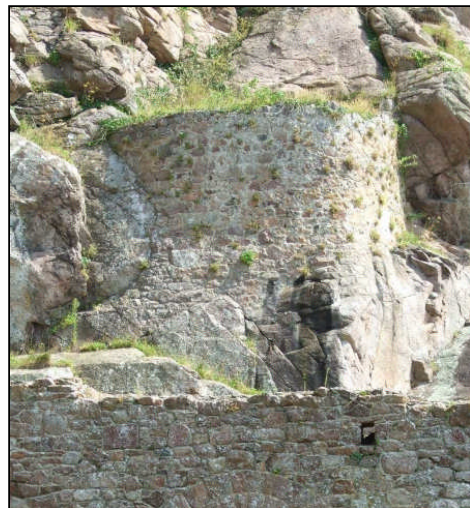
References

Rybot 1933 : 24 Figure 21 '6'; and *Ford 2007* : 34.

The original purpose of the structure is unclear. It is in the form of a semi-circular wall and has the appearance of being the base of a small, ruined tower. If it did form part of a curtain wall around the south side of a medieval keep, it must have been accessed from above because there is no obvious way in at the lower level.



The possible remains of a round tower, from the west.



211 Assessment of Significance :

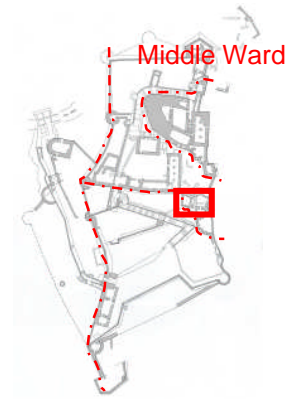
- possible remains of a medieval round tower
- conserved as a ruin
- potentially an important element to understanding the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- perhaps potential for further recording and investigation

212 BUSGROS TOWER :
Later medieval and
circa 1500

A large and, now, roofless rectangular tower, set at the south-east corner of Middle Ward, also referred to by Rybot as the 'Prison Criminall' and now as Prison Tower.

Possibly referred to as a tower called 'Bussegros' in 1513, though this may be a reference to a tower on the outer circuit in 1549 which is now lost.

Professor Colin Platt has suggested that it may have been constructed in two stages – an original later medieval tower to the west which was extended to the east, perhaps by Henry Cornish, in the sixteenth century by the addition of the open 'prison area' and stairs.



The earlier part of the structure may have been a square tower, forming part of the later medieval defences, which was subsequently extended and then broken through to give access to the Machicolated or Cornish Bastion in circa 1547, and so the extension probably dates the fourteenth or fifteenth centuries.

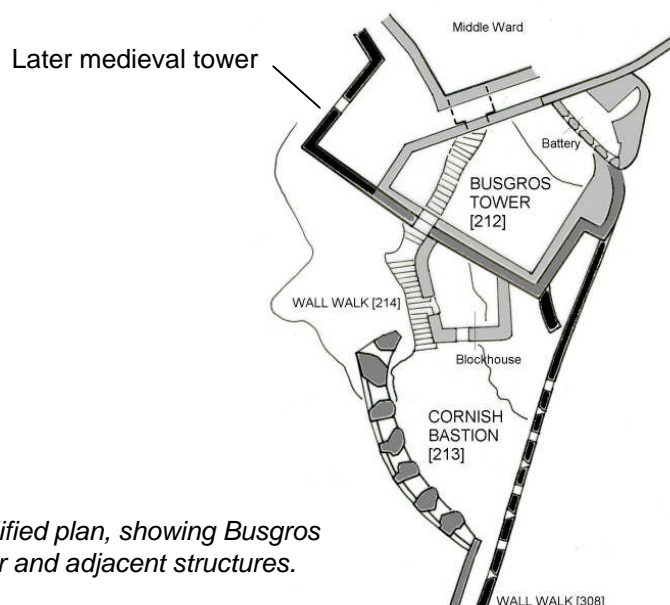
A small gun battery was subsequently added on the north-east side.

The wall walk and stairs from the chambers beside 'St George's Chapel' to Cornish Bastion run through the tower [214].

References

Nicolle 1921 : 122; Rybot 1933 : 20 Figures 12 'D' & 14 '4'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 10; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 20.0/1 & 2; Platt 2003a : 20-21 Figs 1 & 2; and Ford 2007 : 34.

The structure has been conserved and now contains an exhibit comprising three wooden sculptures by Bill Ming and Stan Bullard entitled 'Jersey prisoners', in poses depicting the misery and despair of encarceration.



Simplified plan, showing Busgros Tower and adjacent structures.

*The entrance into Busgros Tower,
from Middle Ward.*



*Busgros Tower,
from above.*

Busgros Tower, from below.



The Jersey prisoners sculptures.



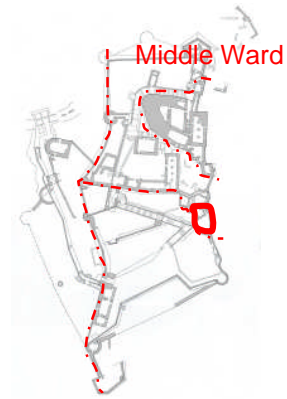
212 Assessment of Significance :

- a later medieval tower, extended in *circa 1500*, and with a later gun battery
- conserved, but without a roof
- an interesting example of a pre-artillery bastion
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**213 CORNISH
BASTION :
1547**

A sixteenth century, 'half-moon' bastion with a series of large projecting machicolations, from which Nicolle gave it one version of its name – Machicolated Bastion.

It appears to have been designed as an early flanker beside the approach to the Fourth Gate, prior to the construction of de Carteret's Ward in the seventeenth century. It bears the arms, of Henry Cornish dated 1547, a godson of Henry VIII and Lieutenant-Governor from 1541 until 1549. It is generally attributed to him during his service as Lieutenant under the Duke of Somerset from 1547 until 1549.



Nicolle noted the presence of cross arrow slits in walls later pierced by wide embrasures for cannon and suggested a fourteenth date, with later alterations in 1547. Referred to by Rybot as a Tudorised medieval fortification on the evidence of an arrow-slit found beneath the present floor level.

The bastion controlled Lower Ward, with a tightly packed array of gun-ports for three different types of weapon. Three small cannon controlled Lower Ward, while three downward-angled gun ports allowed the defenders to clear the base of the bastion of any threat, using swivel-mounted guns. These have crosslets for crossbows associated with them, while the gun embrasures have musket loops on either side of them.

The bastion is entirely built of re-claimed masonry, possibly recovered from the dissolved Priory of St Helier.

A small protective blockhouse was later added to the bastion for shelter and/or ammunition (see plan on 212).

References

Nicolle 1921 113-114; Rybot 1930; Rybot 1933 : 23-24 Figures 12 'E' & 14 '5'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 2 Part 9; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 22.0/1&2; Rodwell 2006a :22-23; and Ford 2007 : 24 & 35.

The bastion has now been conserved and accommodates a replica of a Tudor artillery piece, by Neil Mahrer, Nathan Twomey, and Rylance Ltd., and a wooden sculpture of a Tudor gunner by Chris Bailey.



External and internal views of Cornish Bastion.



The later blockhouse (above left) and the Tudor artilleryman (above right).

213 Assessment of Significance :

- a sixteenth century artillery bastion, built on the remains of a later medieval structure
- restored and accessible to visitors
- a significant element of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

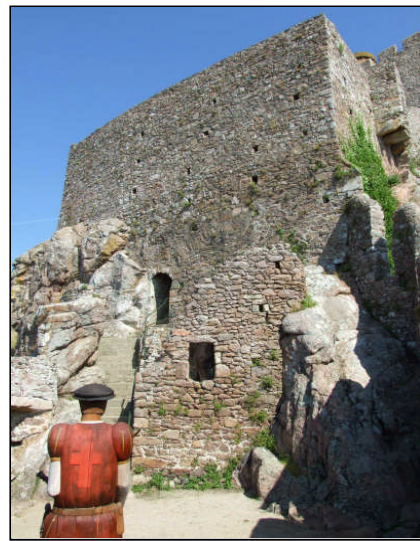
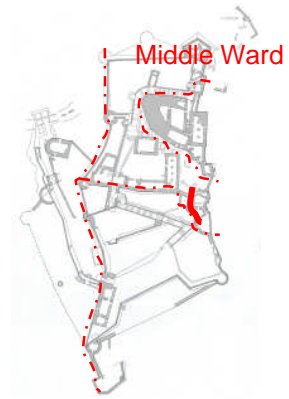
214 WALL WALK

A raised walkway and stone steps providing access from the south-east corner of Middle Ward, through Busgros Tower [212], and into Cornish Tower [213].

Presumed to date from the fourteenth to sixteenth centuries.

This part of the wall walk has been restored and is in use, providing visitor access to these two structures (see plan on 212).

The wall walk continues along the top of the curtain wall of Lower Ward, but is not accessible [see 308].



The stone steps leading down through Busgros Tower to Cornish Bastion.

214 Assessment of Significance :

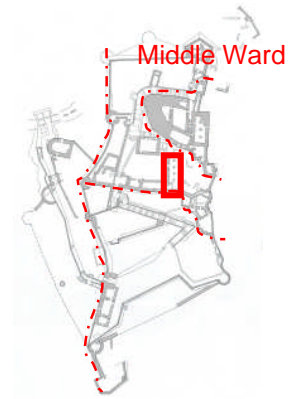
- later medieval and sixteenth century wall walk and steps
- restored and accessible to visitors as far as Cornish Bastion
- a significant element providing the only access along the east curtain wall
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**215 'ST GEORGE'S
CHAPEL' :
circa 1600**

The remains of a large, two-storey rectangular building at the southern end of Middle Ward, identified by Nicolle as the castle chapel and by Rybot as the Chapel of St George, with a crypt and a chapel above it.

Two governors – Thomas Overay (d.1500) and Sir Anthony Ughtred (d.1532), were buried in the north-west angle of the crypt and their coffins were found in 1834.

Shown as 'ruins of vaults' on the plan of 1755.



Because of the resemblance of the vaulting in the lower storey to a crypt, the structure became known as the Crypt of the Chapel of St George in the 1830s, and when it was reconstructed in the early twentieth century it was made to look like a thirteenth century building. In 1834 some of the vaulting collapsed at the east end, and a wall was constructed midway across the crypt by Sir Hilgrove Turner, in order to preserve what remained.

It was restored, again, in 1912-1915 when a medieval altar stone, inscribed with five consecration crosses, was placed in the northern end of the cellar.

Excavations in the 1970s indicated that the building belonged to the late fifteenth or early sixteenth century.

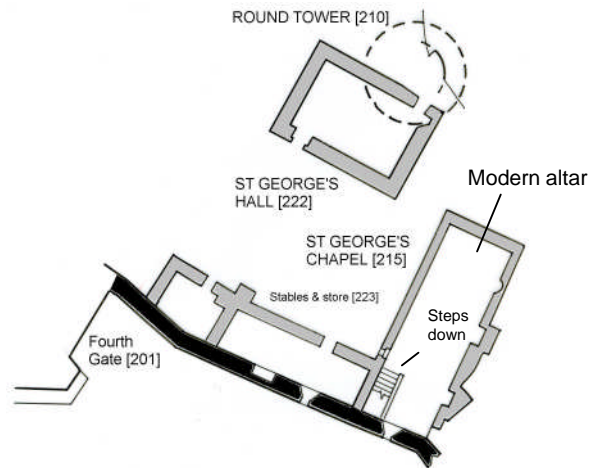
It is now believed that the building originally had a domestic, rather than a religious, function. The blocked windows behind the 'altar' show that it was originally free-standing, while the two larger windows in the south end of the cellar cut through the medieval cross wall and were probably gun positions overlooking Lower Ward. Because of doubts about its original function the structure is now usually referred to as the Long Cellar.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 119-122; Rybot 1933 : 20-21 Figures 12 'C' & 14 '3'; Barton 1984; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 4; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 19.0/1 & 2; and Ford 2007 : 31-32.

The structure is in a conserved condition. It accommodates an altar-like structure at the upper level and a chapel in the crypt, with a sound installation by Gregg Wagstaff.

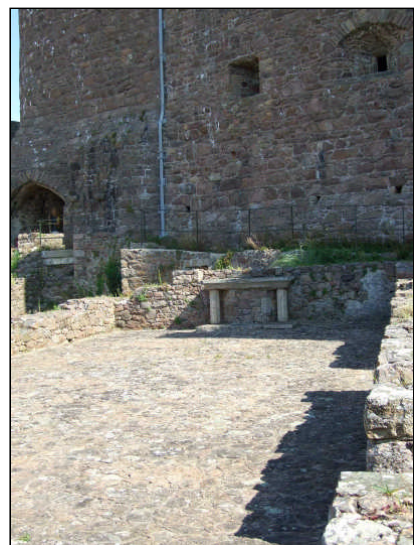
Simplified plan, showing St George's Chapel and adjacent structures.



St George's Chapel, looking east.



St George's Chapel, looking east (above) and north (right).



The crypt of St George's Chapel, looking south.



The crypt of St George's Chapel, looking north.

215 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of a two-storey domestic building of about 1600, with vaulted crypt
- restored and accessible to visitors
- significant as one of the few domestic structures surviving in Middle Ward
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**216 CAESAR'S FORT :
16th cent and later**

A small angled bulwark and other outworks, probably of the sixteenth century, designed to provide some protection for musketeers operating beyond the medieval sallyport [220]. Referred to by Nicolle as the 'New Braye', a term applying to an external fortification, who also noted oblique loop-holes for defence. Referred to in 1562 when two watchmen were to keep guard nightly.

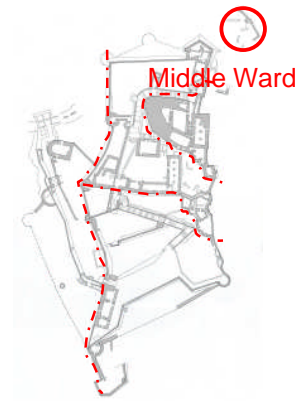
Rybot noted that it was occupied by a battery in the eighteenth century.

Probably belongs to the late sixteenth century, but in its present form it may have been rebuilt in the eighteenth century as a musketry point.

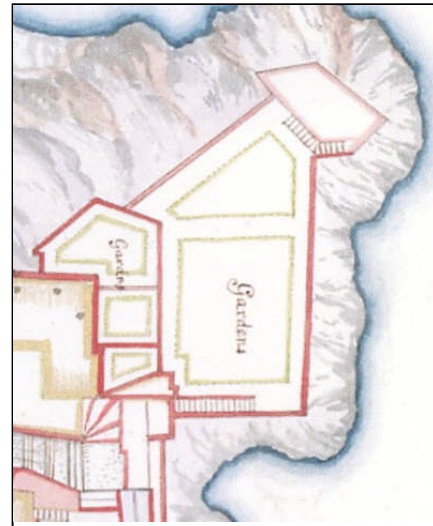
The structures appear on plans produced in 1680, 1741 and 1755, and all show them more complete than they are today. Several early drawings indicate that the outermost structure was in the form of a tower.

References

Nicolle 1921 :127; Rybot 1933 27-29 Figure 24 'G'; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 42.0/1.



*Extracts from plans produced in 1680 (right);
1741 (below); and 1755 (below right).*



Extract of a drawing of circa 1700, showing part of Caesar's Fort in the form of a tower.



The remains are in a ruinous condition and are partially overgrown, though there is a footpath access to them around the foot of the rocky slopes on the north side of the castle.

There appears to be scope for clearance of vegetation, investigation and recording of the structures, repair, and interpretation.

Caesar's Fort, from the west.

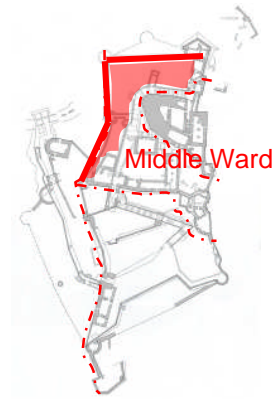


216 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of sixteenth century and later outworks
- in ruinous condition and partly overgrown
- an interesting element of the later castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for repair and interpretation.

217 GRAND BATTERY :
circa 1560-1593

An angular bastion extending along the north and west sides of Middle Ward, also referred to by Rybot as 'The Rampier'. Usually attributed to Sir Hugh, Sir Amias, and Sir Anthony Paulet, all Governors, and the architect Paul Ivy, commencing in about 1560.



It provided cover fire over the bay to the north, as well as the north and west approaches to the castle, but it is believed that it was left incomplete in *circa* 1593 when the decision was made to relocate the focus of defence in Jersey to a new site at St Helier, which became Elizabeth Castle.

The southern part of the west wall appears to be earlier than the remainder of the circuit and may have been commenced in about 1560 following the completion of Somerset Tower and the new Tudor keep. The wall appears to incorporate the later medieval wall and round towers [204-206].

Further north the line of the medieval defences was partially abandoned and the north part of the west wall appears to encase the earlier structure, whilst on the north side a new alignment was adopted.

The ground level behind the curtain walls was raised by the construction of a huge rampart, retained by an internal wall which now forms the side of the large staircase [219] but was never fully completed.

There is also said to be evidence for a cross wall, between the upper and lower parts, and evidence for a barbican has been found at the top of the large staircase.

The upper, western parapet was rebuilt after the 1920s.

Considerable evidence for activity in the 1940s is said to be hidden under the surface of the Grand Battery and nineteen bombs were removed in 1976.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 124-126; *Rybot 1933* : 26 Figure 14 '9' & '10'; *Condition Audit 1996* : Vol 3 Part 7; and *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 25.0/1-3.

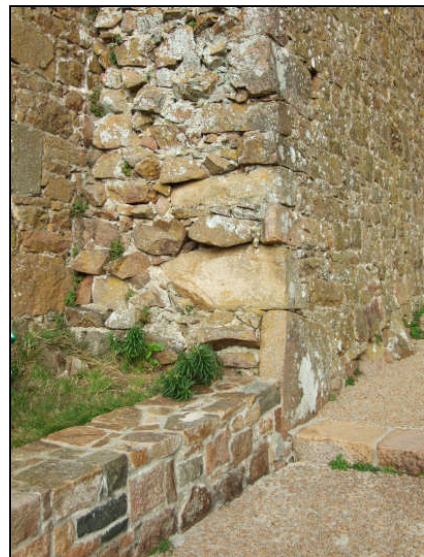
The curtain walls and the retaining walls have been conserved. At the base of the retaining wall at its unfinished, south, end the masonry includes several pieces of re-used stone, possibly from an ecclesiastical building.

The Grand Battery now supports a replica of a medieval catapult, built by Mike Blake and James Main; and wood sculptures of figures by Chris Bailey.

Grand Battery, from the north.



Grand Battery from the north-east.



The unfinished end of the retaining wall (left) and a detail showing re-used masonry (right).



The replica medieval catapult (above left) and the wooden sculptures (above right).

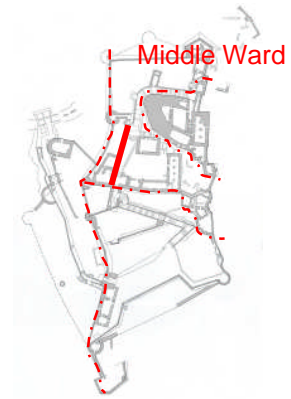
217 Assessment of Significance :

- later sixteenth century curtain walls and gun platform
- complete and fully conserved
- an important element of the later artillery defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**218 PUTLOG WALL :
16th cent**

The eastern retaining wall of the southern part of the Grand Battery [214], which also forms the west side of the lower part of the large staircase [218], made distinctive by the clear lines of scaffolding holes.

It belongs to the first stage of building of Grand Battery and probably dates to the period *circa* 1560 to 1570. At its north end it is overlapped by the retaining wall of the northern section of the Grand Battery, which is unfinished at its southern end.



References

Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 17.0/1 & 2.

The wall is fully conserved and in good condition.



The putlog wall.

218 Assessment of Significance :

- later sixteenth century retaining wall of Grand Battery
- fully restored
- an important element of the artillery fortification
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**219 LARGE
STAIRCASE :
16TH cent**

The wide staircase and walkway that commences inside Fourth Gate [201], passes to the west of 'St George's Hall [221], and extends around the foot of Somerset Tower [111], giving access to the Keep or Upper Ward at Mount Gate [109] and to the Grand Battery [217]. Now known as the Great Stairway.

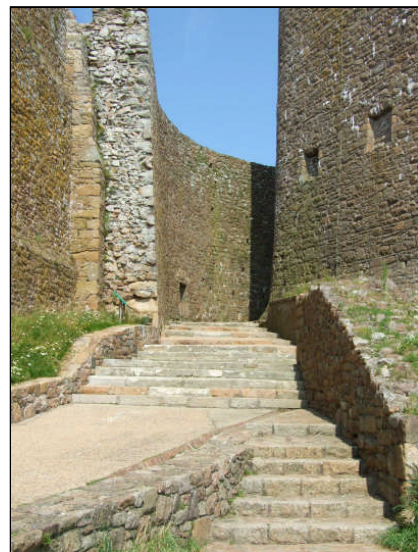
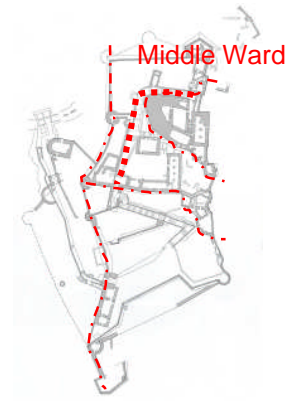
It was created in the sixteenth century as a sunken approach protected on its west and north sides by the Putlog Wall [218] and the retaining wall of Grand Battery [217].

The retaining wall on its west side, which appears to have been left unfinished at its south end in *circa* 1593, incorporates accesses to a small magazine or store and to the covered well [225].

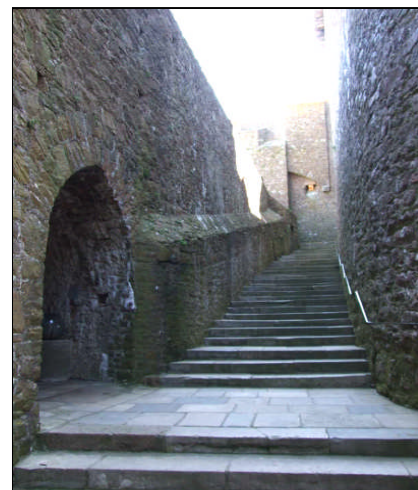
References

Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Parts 6 and 12; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 25.0/1-3.

The structure is fully restored and serves as the only access up to Grand Battery and to Mount Gate.



The large staircase, leading up from Queen Elizabeth Gate to Grand Battery and Mount Gate.



219 Assessment of Significance :

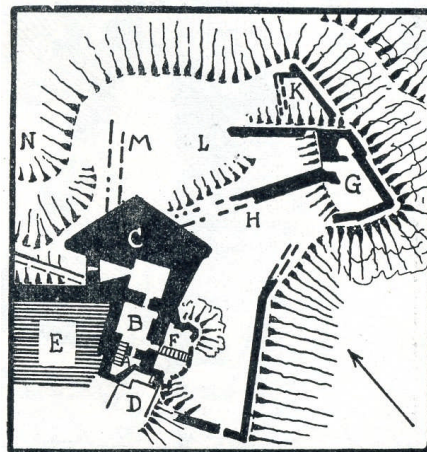
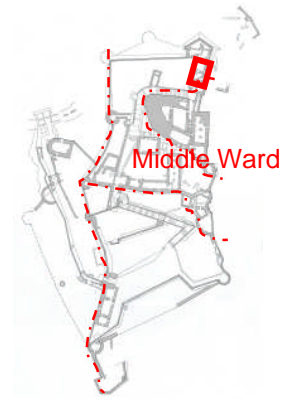
- sixteenth century sunken approach
- fully restored and still in use as visitor access to the Tudor keep and Grand Battery
- of significance as the main access into the innermost part of the Tudor fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**220 ENTRANCE TO
NORTH-EAST
OUTWORKS :
Medieval – 16th
cent & later**

This forms part of a complex of structures of several periods, which in the later medieval period is likely to have included a round tower on the curtain wall, though no remains of this survive.

They appear to incorporate a tower or bulwark added to the defences by John de Roches in the period 1328-1330 and later referred to as Rochefort.

Rybot describes a complex of structures in this vicinity, which for purposes of this inventory are divided into two entries – the entrance [220] and the north-east outworks themselves [221].



Rybot's plan of the north-east outworks and Caesar's Fort.

The earliest surviving feature, forming the entrance to the outworks, is a narrow stone-cut staircase which leads from a point just below Mount Gate [109], northwards down the slope of the rock. At the foot were the remains of a late medieval postern in the form of a two-centred arch ('F' on the plan) serving as a sallyport and external staircase protected by the north-east tower [105]. The sallyport was blocked by the 1830s but cleared out in 1837. The sallyport and outer steps were investigated in 1928, when the seventeenth century steps were found to overlay early fourteenth century work. The sallyport was blocked again during the German occupation in the 1940s, at which time the external staircase was destroyed (see plan on 221).

Associated with this is a two-storey structure which appears to have been designed as quarters for the postern watch or guard ('B' on the plan), and this may be the structure added to the defences by de Roches.

References

Anon 1838; Nicolle 1921 127; Rybot 1933 : 14 & 26-28 Figures 4 '8', 12 'M', 24 'A' – 'F', and 25; Condition Audit 1996 : Vol 2 Part 7; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 24.0/1 and 41.0/1 & 2; and Rodwell 2002a : 23-24.

The structures in this area have not as yet been conserved, though some of the additions made during the German occupation have been removed. The blocked medieval sallyport is visible externally.

There is clearly scope for repair and restoration, which should be accompanied by recording to distinguish phases of construction.



The entrance to the outworks (above left) and the staircase leading into them (above right).



The entrance to the outworks, from the north-east (above left) and the blocked entrance to the sallyport (above right).

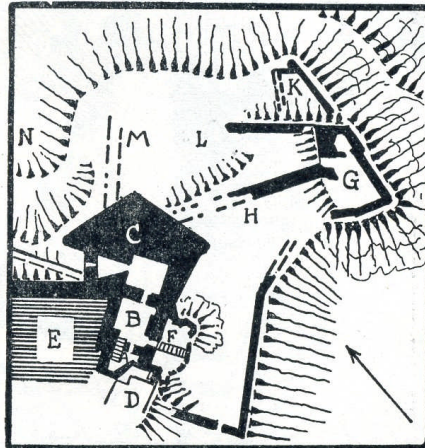
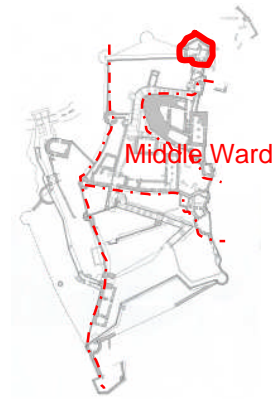
220 Assessment of Significance :

- later medieval tower and sallyport
- in ruinous state with blocked postern
- a significant element of the later medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for investigation, conservation, and repair

**221 NORTH-EAST
OUTWORKS :
16th cent & later**

This forms part of a complex of structures of several phases, which in the later medieval period is likely to have included a round tower on the curtain wall, though no remains of this survive.

Rybot describes a complex of structures in this vicinity, which for purposes of this inventory are divided into two entries – the entrance [220] and the north-east outworks themselves [221].



Rybot's plan of the north-east outworks and Caesar's Fort.

The outworks at this corner of the Middle Ward were augmented by the covered arrow-shaped bastion or angular flanker in the latter part of the sixteenth century, and may include part of the works referred to by the Jersey Chronicler in 1573 in his reference to '„Sir High Paulet .. he did fortify and increase Rochefort ..'. However, according to Rybot, the structures did not reach their present form until the seventeenth century ('C' on his plan).

This addition to the defences covered the north glacis of the Grand Battery [217] and provided a clear field of fire to the north.

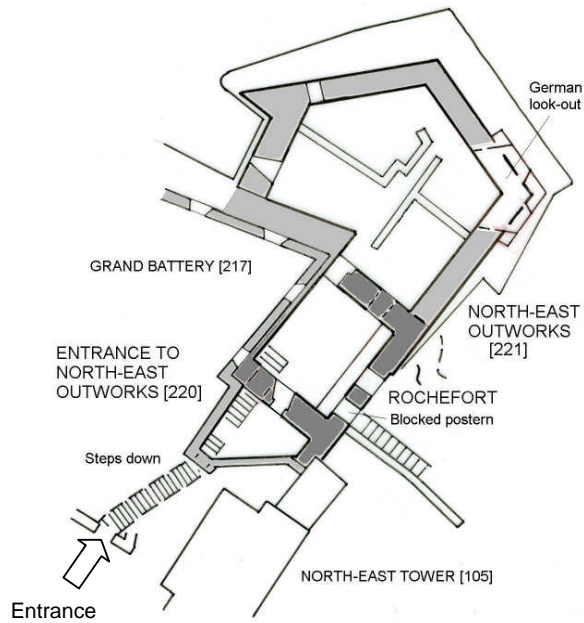
Between 1942 and 1945 the outworks were refurbished by the Germans, using recycled materials, in order to serve as a protected barracks and observation centre. Some roofing was undertaken with steel beams and an earth overburden.

The area was cleared of debris and recorded in 2000.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 127; Rybot 1933 : 14 & 27 Figures 4 '8', 12 'M', & 24 'A' – 'F'; Condition Audit 1996 : Vol 2 Part 7; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 41.0/1 & 2; and Rodwell 2002a : 23-24.

The structures in this area have not as yet been conserved, though some of the additions made during the German occupation have been removed. There is clearly scope for repair and restoration, which should be accompanied by recording to distinguish phases of construction, and include the retention of at least some of the World War Two additions.



*Simplified plan of the north-east outworks and the entrance to them (left)
and the north-east outworks, from the north (right)*



The north-east outworks from the south.

221 Assessment of Significance :

- sixteenth or seventeenth century angular bastion and German bunker
- in ruinous state, but accessible to visitors
- a significant element of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for investigation, conservation, and repair

**222 'ST GEORGE'S
HALL' : later
medieval/17th cent**

The remains of a ruined rectangular building, formerly of two storeys, located on the northern side of the south part of Middle Ward.

It was identified by Nicolle as the St George's Hall recorded in the eighteenth century, but he acknowledges that this may be a reference to another structure. Rybot recognised that the attribution was questionable and identified the structure as part of the accommodation for higher civil officers and probably built in the latter part of the fifteenth century.



It was referred to as the Old Chapel on a plan of 1741 and as the 'Ruins of St George's Chapel' on a plan of 1755, but for most of the twentieth century it was known as St George's Hall.

Excavations in the 1970s led to the suggestion that the structure could be as late as the seventeenth century.

Little now remains of the upper storey. The entrance was on the ground floor in the south-west corner, while on the first floor there is a doorway in the north-east corner. A fireplace at this level suggests a domestic use. A now ruined staircase behind the east wall, which is associated with the Long Cellar [215], led up to the large staircase built against the façade of the residential apartments, which was removed in about 1910 [115].

References

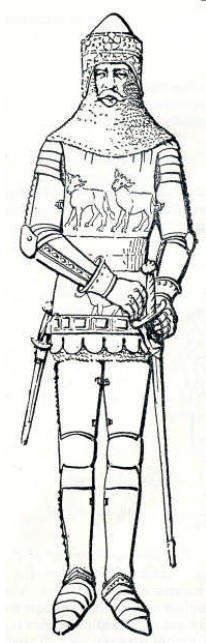
Nicolle 1921 118-119; Rybot 1933: 20 Figures 12 'B' & 14 '2'; Barton 1984 217-218 Figure 1; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 5; Dixon & Kennedy 2002a : 18.0/1 & 2; and Ford 2007 : 30.

The remains are in a conserved condition (see plan on 215)..

In front of the building is a sculpture by Owen Cunningham, depicting Sir Hugh Calveley, appointed Keeper of the Channel Islands in 1376, on his charger.



*St George's Hall, from the
south-west.*



Drawing of Sir High Calveley's tomb (after Rybot 1933 Figure 42) and the sculpture which is based on it.

222 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of a two-storey domestic building, possibly of the seventeenth century
- restored and accessible to visitors
- significant as one of the few domestic structures surviving in Middle Ward
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

223 STABLE & STORE : The remains of a two-storey building of two parts, built against the south curtain wall, which were excavated in the 1970s and dated to the seventeenth century.

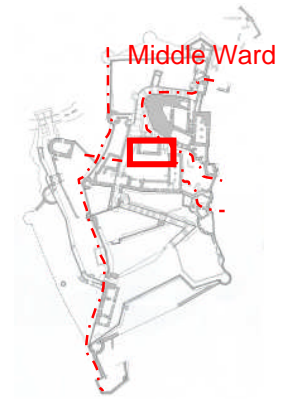
17TH cent

The larger space at the east end was found to contain a freshwater cistern and has been referred to as a well house or store, whilst the smaller one may have been a stable.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 118-122; Rybot 1933 : 21; Barton 1984 : 221-224 Building 4; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 3; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 16.0/1 & 2; and Ford 2007: 16-17.

Only the footings of these structures survive, against the south curtain wall, and these have been conserved (see plan on 215).



The stable and store, from the east.

223 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of seventeenth century stable and store
- conserved and accessible to visitors
- significant as two of the few domestic structures surviving in Middle Ward
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**224 GUNPOWDER
STORE :
early 17th cent**

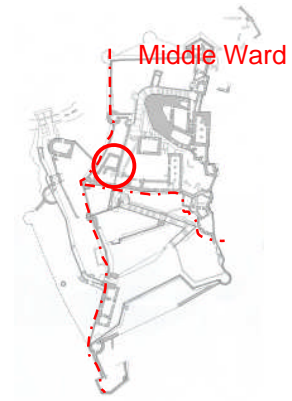
A masonry structure located at the south end of Grand Battery.

The remains of an early seventeenth century gunner's room and magazine, built behind the later medieval bastion [206] and into the southern end of the Grand Battery in order to service the guns on Sir John Peyton's Bastion [310].

References

Nicolle 1921 : 126; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 25.0/2; and Ford 2007 : 41.

The remains are in a ruinous condition, partly overgrown, and not accessible to visitors (see plan on 201). The lower levels accommodate an electricity sub station and a kiosk containing a television relay station.



*Remains of the gunner's room
and magazine, from the south.*



224 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of an early seventeenth century gunner's room and magazine
- ruinous and without visitor access
- an interesting elements of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for investigation and conservation

225 WELL : 16th cent

The well shaft is believed to be cut through 19 metres of solid granite and may originally have been contained within the later medieval Keep or Upper Ward of the castle.

When Grand Battery was built in the sixteenth century the existing vaulted stone roof was constructed to provide access, as otherwise the well would have been buried.

The covered well chamber is entered from the large staircase [219].

The sill stone of the wellhead is a re-used medieval altar stone, which would indicate a post Reformation rebuilding of this structure.

The bucket was raised and lowered by means of a wooden handwheel, which is preserved.

References

Nicolle 1921 :122-123; Rybot 1933 : 24; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 3 Part 6; and Ford 2007 : 38.

Until 1937 the well house was accessed through a doorway set in the stone wall, but this was removed and a wooden grille inserted in its place. This has since been removed and there is now full visitor access to the well house.



The well-house.

225 Assessment of Significance :

- later medieval well and sixteenth century well-house
- conserved and accessible
- an important element of the later medieval castle and artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

226 BELFRY :

A small bell turret and bell, built on the south side of Bell Tower [203] - one of the later medieval interval towers.

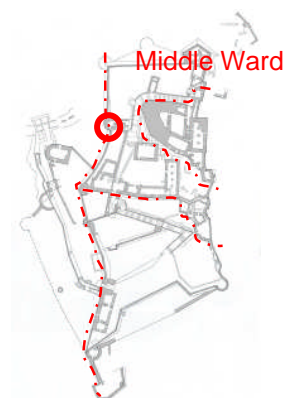
Believed to have been erected by Thomas Overay, Governor from 1497 to 1500, and presumably intended to provide warning of an impending attack on the castle and the village of Gorey.

The existing bell, hung in December 1999, replaces one which was removed in 1834.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 125; and *Rybot 1933* : 26.

The bell turret is in a conserved condition.



The bell turret on Bell Tower.

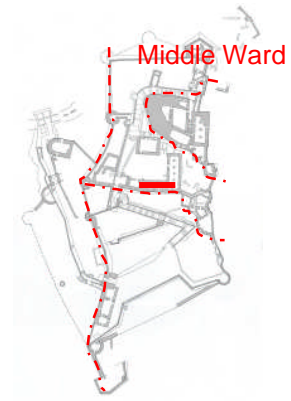
226 Assessment of Significance :

- a fifteenth century bell turret and warning bell
- complete and in good condition
- an interesting element of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified.

227 IRON AGE RAMPART

Remnants of an earth and turf rampart, with a stone-built façade, were found during excavations adjacent to the south curtain wall of Middle Ward in the 1970s. It is believed to represent the remains of a promontory fort constructed in the latter part of the Iron Age.

Associated with this feature were quantities of re-deposited Neolithic pottery and prehistoric flintwork, which included scrapers and arrowheads, and this indicates occupation either on the promontory or in its immediate vicinity in the third and early second millennium BC (for further information see Section 1.0.2).



Reference

Barton 1984 : 230-237.

The alignment of the rampart is indicated on the ground by a row of stones within the store [223]. Other parts of the rampart, and occupation associated with it, may survive elsewhere on the site.



The alignment of the Iron Age rampart.

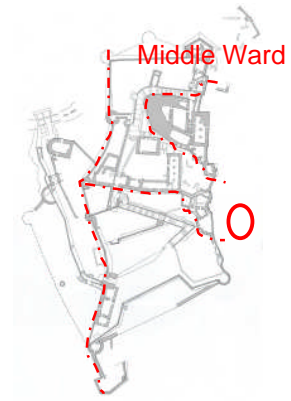
227 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of Iron Age rampart
- surviving as buried feature
- a significant use of the site before the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for further investigation

228 STORAGE AREA

A flat platform of ground on the east side of the promontory, outside the east curtain wall and Cornish Bastion [212].

Although no structures have been observed in this area, which is now used for storage, it was probably revetted on its seaward side and accessed via the postern gate or sallyport from Lower Ward [308]. It is likely that some form of outer defences of the castle may have existed here.



References

Condition Audit 1996 : Vol 2 Part 6; and *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 46.0/1 & 2.

The platform is mostly occupied by modern buildings, but it is accessible to visitors and contains information about the ecological value of the castle. It is believed to be subject to landslip, which is currently controlled by gabions.



The castle from the east, with the storage area (arrowed).

228 Assessment of Significance :

- possible location of outworks
- possible remains as buried features
- potentially of interest as an outworks of the medieval castle and artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for investigation

3. LOWER WARD

This is located on the sloping ground between the medieval Second Gate [301] and Middle Ward Gate, also known as Iron Gate, Elizabeth's Gate, and Fourth Gate [201].

It formed an important element in the layout of the early castle. Its use for storage and local administration may go back to the early thirteenth century and it is known to have contained a large number of houses and public buildings.

The close proximity of the south-west corner to the bay to the south suggests that it may well have provided the access down to Gorey Harbour from an early date.

The original thirteenth century entrance gate survives relatively intact, though with some later alterations and additions [301] and there is a stretch of early curtain wall surviving to the south of it [302]. Elsewhere there are remnants of the later medieval defences in the form of three round towers; stretches of curtain wall; and a sallyport [303-308].

It has recently been suggested that the Lower Ward was subdivided by a cross-wall and gate in *circa* 1536 [309].

A large triangular bastion or bulwark was built in the north-west corner in the early seventeenth century, partially burying sections of curtain wall and the gate into Middle Ward [310].

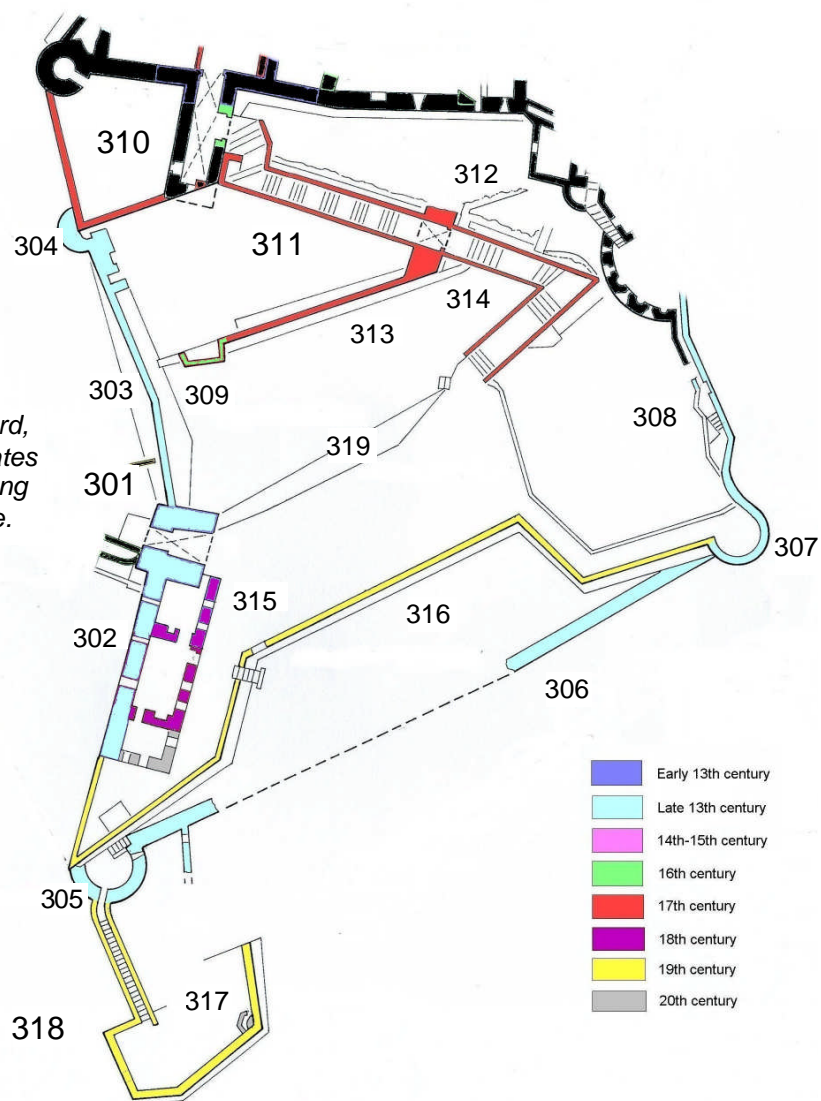
The earlier subdivision was reinforced when a new intermediate gate, rampart, and staircase were added in the mid seventeenth century [311-314].

A lodge was added to the south side of the entrance gate in the eighteenth century [315].

The Ward was reduced in size on its south side when a new battery was built in the early nineteenth century [316], after a section of the curtain wall collapsed into the sea. At about the same time existing fortifications at the south-west corner were rebuilt as a new battery [317], to protect the approach to the castle from the adjacent bay and harbour [318].

The Ward is potentially an important area for the buried remains of houses and public buildings [319], though some of these may have been either truncated or removed by later building operations and landscaping.

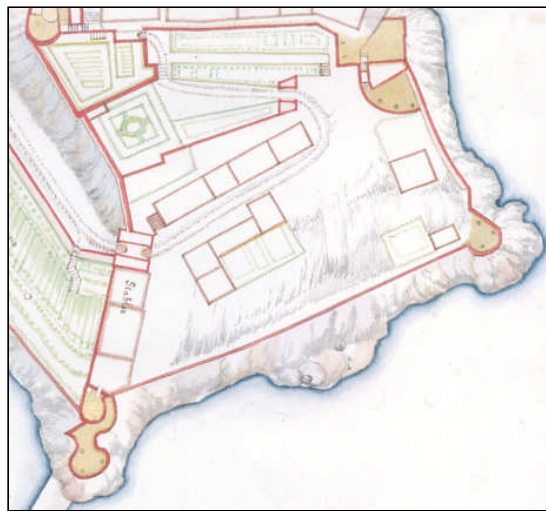
Simplified plan of Lower Ward, showing the approximate dates of construction and numbering used in the text. Not to scale.



301 SECOND GATE
 302 MEDIEVAL CURTAIN WALL
 303 WESTERN WALL
 304 WEST FLANKING TOWER
 305 JOHN HÉLIE'S TOWER & POSTERN
 306 KING CHARLES' BATTERY
 307 SOUTHERN FLANKING TOWER
 308 WALL & SOUTHERN SALLYPORT
 309 TUDOR BATTERY AND GATE
 310 SIR JOHN PEYTON'S BASTION

311 DeCARTERET'S WARD
 312 QUEEN'S or THIRD GATE
 313 DeCARTERET'S RAMPART
 314 STAIRCASE
 315 LODGE
 316 PARADE BATTERY
 317 WATER BATTERY
 318 GOREY PIER APPROACH
 319 SITES OF BUILDINGS

Aerial photograph of Lower Ward, from the south-east.



Plan of Middle Ward in 1680, after Thomas Phillips.



Plans of Lower Ward in 1741 (above left) and in 1755 (above right).

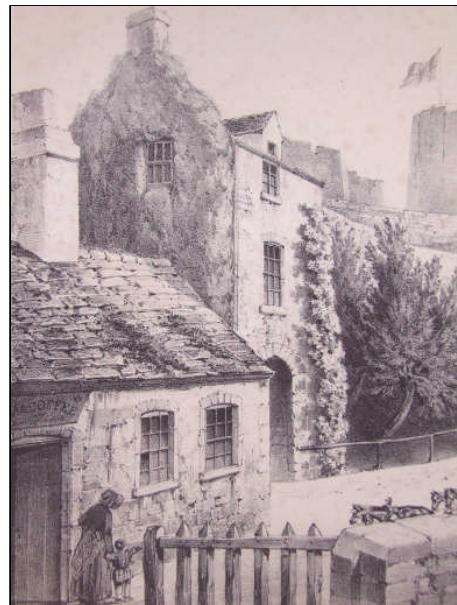
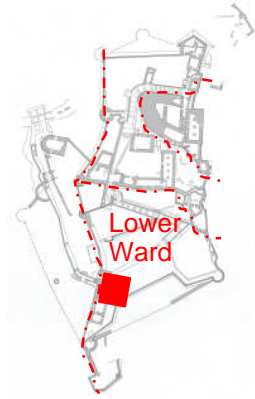
**301 SECOND
GATE : early
13th cent and
later**

Located at the west side of Lower Ward and giving access to it from Outer Ward. It has also been known as Thynne Gate, after Sir John Thynne in 1549.

The two-storey tower gate, which had an approach ramp, portcullis, and counterpoise drawbridge over a dry ditch, probably formed part of the original early thirteenth century defences.

Both Philip Dixon and Warwick Rodwell have suggested that in its original form it was a three-sided tower, which was either open or timbered at the rear, the fourth side and vaulting being inserted in the fourteenth or early fifteenth century. The battlements were altered to accommodate a gunpost, probably in the sixteenth century. Throughout the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries the chamber over the gate was used as a prison.

The upper portion was converted to form an attic storey under a gabled roof, probably in about 1800, and it then became a gunner's quarters. It was depicted in this form in the engraving recording the visit of Queen Victoria in 1846.



Second Gate in 1846.

Excavations in 1913 revealed the ditch, the granite sockets for the axis of the bridge, and the counterscarp on which the bridge rested.

The upper levels of the gate remained in use as a dwelling until it was much altered by Public Works during the early twentieth century restoration. These works involved the removal of the rear stone wall and its replacement in timber, but retained the vaulted ground storey which belonged to the same phase as the inserted wall.

It now has a modern roof and is of considerable importance being the best preserved example of what may be the original form of all the castle gates on this site.

Immediately north of the gate are the remains of the stairs against the curtain wall, though these have been chopped back and plastered in the sixteenth or seventeenth century.

References

Anon 1938: 22-23; *Nicolle 1921*: 111; *Rybot 1933* 15-16 Figure 9 'A'; *Condition Audit 1996 Vol 2 Part 10*; *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b*: 6.0/1-3; *Rodwell 2002a*: 14-15; and *Ford 2007*: 20.

The gate is in a conserved condition, providing the main access into Lower Ward. The upper storey contains a room currently used as a changing room for children wishing to dress up in period costume (see plan on 315). On the roof is a replica of a medieval *springald*, built by Mark Griffin, which was used for firing projectiles.



The front of Second Gate (left) and the vaulted opening (right).



The rear of Second Gate and the cut back stairs on its north side.

The replica springald, on the roof of Second Gate.



301 Assessment of Significance :

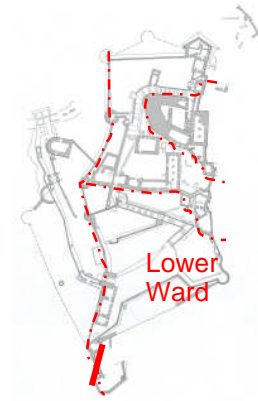
- early thirteenth century gate, altered on several occasions
- in a restored condition and providing the principal entrance into Lower Ward
- of considerable significance being the best preserved example of what may have been the original form of all the gates on this site
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- perhaps potential for installing a working drawbridge

**302 MEDIEVAL
CURTAIN WALL :
Later medieval**

A section of early curtain wall extending south from the Second Gate [301] and incorporated as the west wall of the lodge added in the eighteenth century [315], at which time several window openings were inserted through it.

It has evidently been repaired on a number of occasions and forms the rear wall of the castle café and offices (see plan on 315).

It contains some evidence for crenellations on the internal face.



The medieval curtain wall south of Second Gate, from the south-west.

302 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of later medieval curtain wall, repaired on a number of occasions
- now forming rear wall of the castle café
- a significant element of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**303 WESTERN
WALL :
Later medieval**

A section of later medieval curtain wall between Second Gate [301] and the west flanking tower [304].

It incorporates remnants of an early building, presumably domestic and perhaps fourteenth or fifteenth century in date, which are built against its inner face and abutting the tower. This may be the 'Ward house before the Iron Gate' referred to in 1562. The building was at least two storeys high and was reached at its upper level by a door whose jamb survives on the south.



The door led from the staircase from the Lower Ward, which was incorporated in the curtain wall. A further door or doors presumably led into the building at ground level on its, now missing, east side. The remains comprise two windows with windows seats, looking westwards through the curtain wall. Beside them stands a fragment of a fireplace and a window at a higher level. The wall continues below these features and was partially enveloped in Sir John Peyton's Bastion which was built in the early seventeenth century [310]. It is not at present known whether a lower storey has been buried during the levelling of the area for de Carteret's Ward in 1648-50 [311].

References

Nicolle 1921 : 118; Rybot 1933 : 18; Rybot 1942; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b: 11.0/1.



The outer face of the curtain wall, from the south (left) and the remains of the building constructed against its inner face (right).

303 Assessment of Significance :

- later medieval curtain wall and remains later or post medieval domestic building
- both in conserved condition
- significant elements of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for further investigation of building

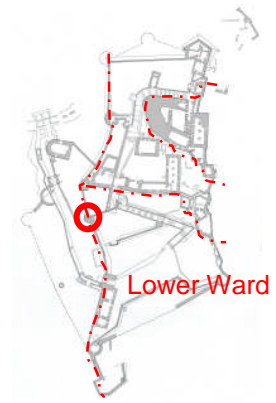
**304 WEST FLANKING
TOWER :
Later medieval**

The truncated base of a later medieval round tower, partially buried under Sir John Peyton's Bulwark in the seventeenth century [310].

Reference

Rybot 1933: 23 Figure 14 '14'.

Now visible only from the exterior face of the curtain wall, but appears to be in a conserved condition.



*The west flanking tower,
from the south.*

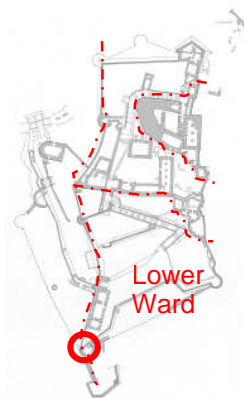
304 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of later medieval round tower
- truncated base visible only on external face of wall
- a significant element of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**305 JOHN
HÉLIE'S TOWER &
POSTERN :
Later medieval &
16th cent**

A round tower at the extreme southern end of Lower Ward and on the shoulder overlooking the bay to the south.

It was originally built as part of the thirteenth century defences, and the first known reference to it was 1340, when it was described as *Turris ultima versus maris* – the last turret before the sea. It was first associated with John Hélié in 1531. A loop-hole in the basement is an original feature. A postern gate was subsequently cut through the curtain wall close to the tower and in 1549 it was referred to as the Postern Tower.



A two-seater Tudor latrine pit, now under the ladies toilets, blocked the postern [see 315].

The tower remained in use until the repairs associated with the construction of Parade Battery in 1801-02, when it was largely demolished. In 1913 it was excavated and the upper parts of it rebuilt for display. The remains of the tower were examined again in 2000, when it was found that it originally enclosed three-quarters of a circle in plan, with an open back. The basement level was pierced by two arrow-loops facing south and east.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 112-113; *Rybot 1933* :16-18 Figures 9 'C' & 11 '3'; *Condition Audit 1996* Vol 2 Part 4; *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* 47.0/1; *Rodwell 2002a* : 16-17; and *Ford 2007* : 23.

The remains of the tower are in a conserved condition, with visitor access from close to the Second Gate. The access to Water Battery [317] has been closed and restored as an arrow loop.

John Hélié's Tower, from the east.



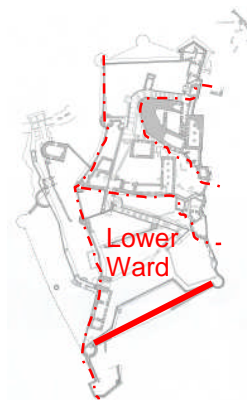
305 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of later medieval round tower
- conserved in a reduced form
- a significant element of the defences of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**306 KING CHARLES' BATTERY :
Later medieval & 17th cent**

Remnants of the curtain wall which formed part of the later medieval defences, extending between John Hélie's Tower [305] and the southern flanking tower [307], and overlooked the bay to the south and Gorey Harbour. It probably supported a battery of Springalds and Ballistae.

Later refurbished as a gun battery for four cannon and named King Charles Battery, at which time the Royal Coat of Arms, sculptured in granite and bearing the date 1663, was inserted.



It is shown complete on the plans of 1741 and 1755, at which times it had emplacements for four cannon.

The central section of the battery collapsed in *circa* 1800 and the whole section between the two towers was replaced in 1801-02 by Parade Battery [315].

References

Nicolle 1921 : 113; *Rybot 1933* : 16-18 Figures 9 & 11; *Condition Audit 1996* Vol 1 Part 5; and *Ford 2007* : 23 & 26.

Only the two end sections now survive, but the Coat of Arms of Charles II, which had been built into Parade Battery in 1801, was removed and built into the curtain wall of De Carteret's Rampart in 1929 [see 312].

A fragment of King Charles' Battery, looking south-west (arrowed), where it abuts the southern flanking tower.



306 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of later medieval curtain wall, refurbished in 1660, but mostly collapsed in *circa* 1800
- two short sections only surviving
- significant elements of the medieval castle and artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**307 SOUTHERN
FLANKING
TOWER :
Later medieval**

This is one of the later medieval round towers, located at the south-east corner of Lower Ward and formerly linked to John Hélié's Tower [305] by King Charles' Battery [306].

It was preserved into the late eighteenth century and appears in several old drawings and paintings.

It was reduced in height in the late eighteenth century to receive a traversing gun and was further cut down when Parade Battery [315] was built to replace King Charles' Battery in 1801-02.



References

Anon 1838: 23-24; *Nicolle 1921* : 112-113; *Rybot 1933*: 33 Figure 11 '5'; and *Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 8.0/1 & 2.

The remains are now in a conserved condition.



The southern flanking tower, from the south (left) and from the north-west (above).

307 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of later medieval round tower
- in conserved condition
- a significant element of the medieval defences
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**308 CURTAIN WALL &
SOUTHERN
SALLYPORT :
Later medieval**

A section of later medieval curtain wall extending from the Cornish Bastion [212] to the southern flanking round tower [307].

Associated with the curtain wall are the remains of a mural gallery or covered wall walk and stairs which were behind the parapet, and extended at least as far as the base of Busgros Tower [213].

The southern sallyport appears to have formed a feature of the later medieval defences and gave access to a level platform outside the main defences [228].



References

Nicolle 1921 :113; Rybot 1933: 16-16 Figures 9 J' & 11 '7'; and Condition Audit 1996 Vol 2 Part 6.

The wall and sallyport are in a conserved condition – the sallyport giving visitor access to the storage area outside the wall. The mural gallery extends a little beyond the sallyport but is no longer covered and is not accessible for visitors.



The outer face of the curtain wall, from the south (above left) and the lower end of the wall walk (above right).



The internal access to the sallyport (above left) and the external opening (above right).

308 Assessment of Significance :

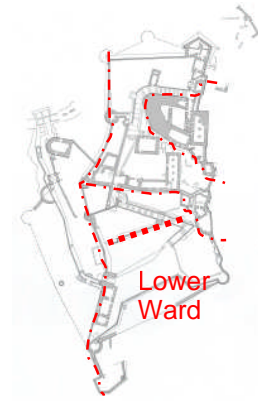
- remains of later medieval curtain wall, mural gallery, and sallyport
- all in conserved condition
- significant elements of the defences of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**309 GUN BATTERY
& GATE :
circa 1537**

A new Tudor battery, built by Henry Cornish in *circa* 1536, in the form of a cross-wall to support long-range guns which could be pointed across Grouville Bay to the south.

Probably on the same alignment as the high wall which cuts off the northern side of the Lower Ward and later rebuilt or incorporated into de Carteret's Rampart [313].

The wall is now pierced towards the east end by Third Gate [312], but originally access was at the west end where there are remains of a tower and blocked gateway.



References

Rodwell 2002a : 19; and *Rodwell 2006a* : 21-22.

The remains of the tower, the blocked gateway, and cross-wall are in a conserved condition. The base of the wall forming de Carteret's Rampart includes some irregular courses of stonework but these appear to have formed part of the later structure [see 313].



The remains of the tower and blocked gateway.

309 Assessment of Significance :

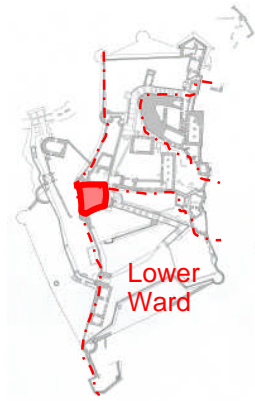
- remains of a sixteenth century gate and cross-wall
- in conserved condition
- a significant element of the defences of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**310 SIR JOHN
PEYTON'S
BASTION :
circa 1592-1630**

An angled, flanking bastion, also known as Paul Ivy's Bulwark, which envelops the gate into Middle Ward [201].

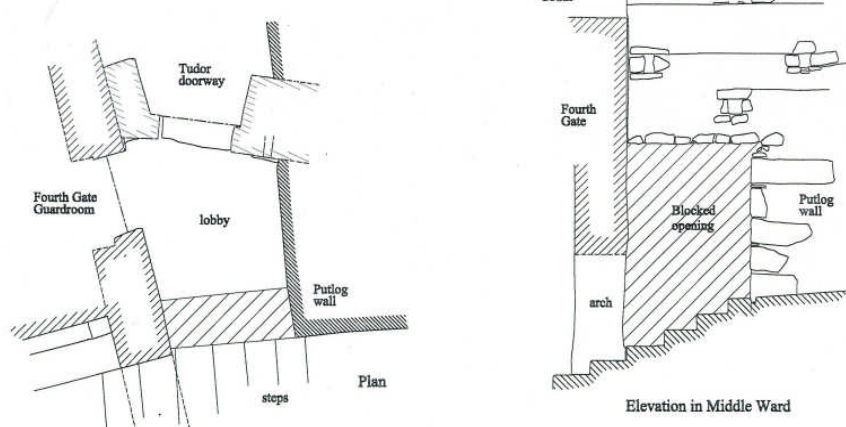
Probably commenced in about 1592, when the gate was being re-modelled by Paul Ivy, but left unfinished by him and completed by Sir John Peyton, Governor, in 1621-1630, who also built the gunpowder store and gunners' room behind it [224]

It comprises a retaining wall on two sides, butting up against the earlier defences, behind which the ground was raised by infilling to the height of the springing of the vault over the adjoining gate. The access to the top is via steps from Middle Ward.



Excavations for services in 1999 revealed the inner faces of the two principal walls forming the salient in the south-west corner of the bulwark, demonstrating that it was originally built as an open structure, later infilled with soil. Observations were also made on structures to the rear.

Figure 3
PEYTON'S BULWARK
Plan and elevation, showing phasing of structures adjoining Fourth Gate.



Record drawing of structures to the north of Sir John Peyton's Bastion (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 3). Not to scale.

References

Rybot 1933 : 23 Figures 14 '13' & 18 '4'; Rybot 1942 : 119; Condition Audit 1996 : Vol 3 Part 2; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 14.0/1; Rodwell 2002a : 20-22 Figure 3; and Ford 2007 : 29.

The bastion is in a restored condition (see plan on 201). It supports a children's play area comprising wooden sculptures, by Andy Frost, which depict a variety of medieval building techniques and names some of the craftsmen who worked at the castle.



Sir John Peyton's Bastion, from the south-east.



Sir John Peyton's Bastion, from the north-east.



The children's play area and some of the sculptures within the bastion.

310 Assessment of Significance :

- late sixteenth/early seventeenth century angled bastion
- restored and accessible to visitors
- a significant element of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**311 DeCARTERET'S
WARD :
mid 17th cent**

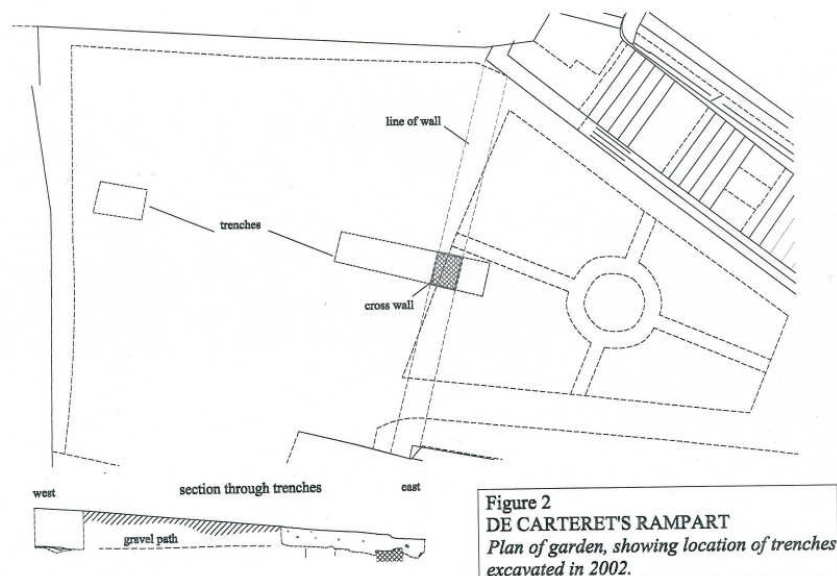
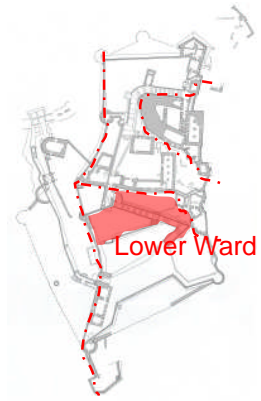
This was created in the northern part of Lower Ward by the Governor, Sir Philip de Carteret, in 1648-50, and comprises Queen's or Third Gate [312]; DeCarteret's Rampart [313]; a wide staircase [314]; and two grassed areas, north and south of the staircase.

Excavations in 1930 revealed the remains of masonry structures south of the gate into Middle Ward, and these included what appears to have been a stone-lined causeway leading up to the gate.

Part of the southerly of the two grassed areas is shown as a formal garden on Thomas Phillips' plan of 1680. Two trial trenches excavated in 2002 indicated that essential elements of the seventeenth century garden are preserved beneath the modern landscaping.

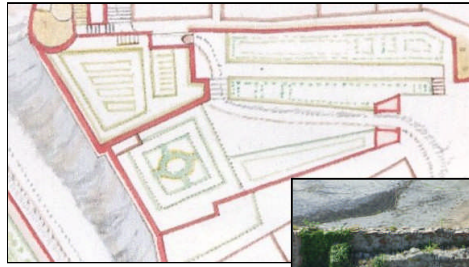
References

Nicolle 1921 : 114; Rybot 1933 : 18 Figure 11 '11'; Rybot 1942 : 115-120; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 10.0/1 & 2; Rodwell 2002a : 19 Figure 2; and Ford 2007 : 27.



Record drawing showing location of trenches excavated in 2002 (after Rodwell 2002a Figure 2). Not to scale.

The formal garden, now known as the De Carteret Garden, has been recreated.



Extract from Thomas Phillips' plan of 1680, showing De Carteret's Ward (above) and the restored formal garden, from the east (right).



311 Assessment of Significance :

- mid seventeenth century ward and formal garden
- in a restored condition and accessible to visitors
- a significant addition to the later artillery fortress and a formal garden reflecting the more peaceful aspects of its function as residence
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**312 QUEEN'S or
THIRD GATE :
1648**

This is located at the east end of DeCarteret's Rampart [313] and was built in 1648 by the Governor, Sir George Carteret.

Along with the adjoining rampart, the gate created or reinforced a small ward or barbican [311], which provided added protection for the approach to the gate into Middle Ward [201].

It was originally of two storeys, and approached by the wide flight of steps [313], but was reduced in height in the late eighteenth or early nineteenth centuries.

The two shoulder stones, partly hidden behind buttresses, may have been re-used from an earlier gate, perhaps that which had existed to the south-west [309].

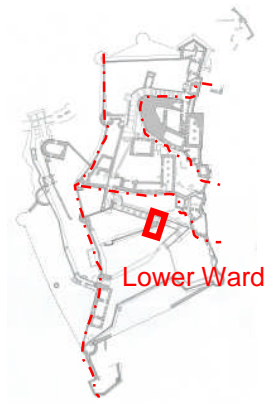
A plain block of granite over the archway records the visit in 1846 of Queen Victoria, whose name the gate now bears.

It is depicted with a replica portcullis and part wooden/part iron gates on several late nineteenth or early twentieth century photographs.

References

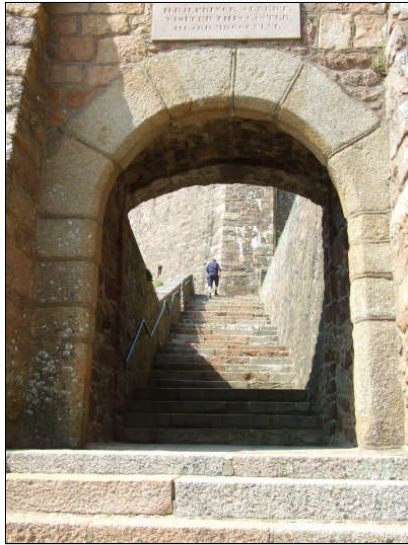
Nicolle 1921 : 114; Rybot 1933 : 18 Figure 11 '9'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 2 Part 1; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 9.0/1; and Ford 2007 : 26.

The gate is in a restored condition and provides the only access into De Carteret's Ward and, hence, the gate into Middle Ward [201].



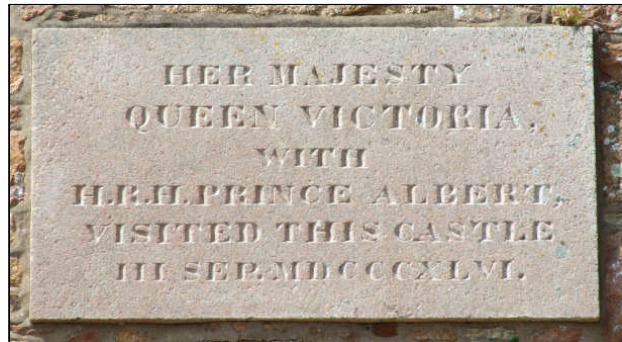
*Queen's or Third Gate, from the south (above)
and from the south-east (right).*





Queen's or Third Gate, from the south-east (left) and from the north-west (right).

The commemorative inscription over the gate.



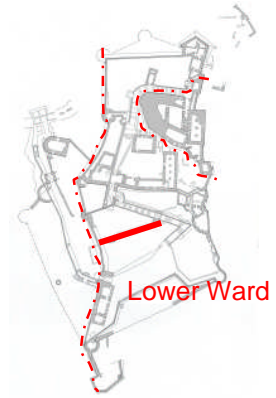
312 Assessment of Significance :

- mid seventeenth century gate
- reduced in height but otherwise complete and in good condition
- a significant element of the later artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for reinstating gates

**313 DeCARTERET'S
RAMPART :
1650**

A length of curtain wall abutting Queen's Gate [312], erected by the Governor, Sir Philip Carteret in 1650 to provide a supporting tier of gun positions to those on Charles' Battery [306].

Warwick Rodwell has recently suggested that this wall had previously existed [see 309] and that it was reinforced at this time and a new gate built at its east end [312]. A trial trench dug in 1999 against the south face of the wall in the doglegged angle, showed that the rough, irregular masonry is part of the foundation of DeCarteret's work and not part of an earlier structure.



References

Nicolle 1921 : 114; Rybot 1933 : 18 Figure 11 '10'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 2 Part 12; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 9.0/1; Rodwell 2002a : 18; Rodwell 2006a : 21-22 & 46-47; and Ford 2007 : 26-27.

The wall is in a restored condition and carries the Arms of Charles II, dated 1663, carved on a granite block. This had originally been built into King Charles' Battery [306]. It was moved to Parade Battery in 1801-02, and then moved to its present location in 1929.



De Carteret's Rampart, from the south-east (above) and a view along the base of the wall from the west end (right).



The Arms of Charles II.



313 Assessment of Significance :

- mid seventeenth century curtain wall and gun battery
- restored and in good condition
- a significant element of the later artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**314 STAIRCASE :
1648-50**

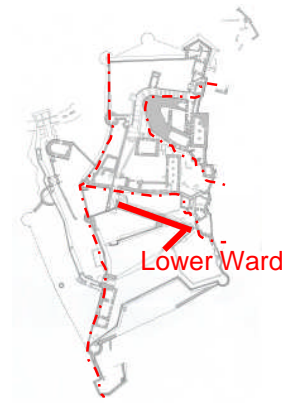
A wide flight of steps leading up to and through Queen's Gate [312] to the gate into Middle Ward [201].

It was built by the Governor, Sir Philip Carteret as part of his additions to the castle in 1648-50 [311].

References

Nicolle 1921 : 114; and *Rybot 1933* : 18 Figure 11 '8'.

The staircase is fully restored and in use, providing the only access up into Middle Ward.



The staircase leading up to and through Queen's Gate to the gate into Middle Ward (above and right).



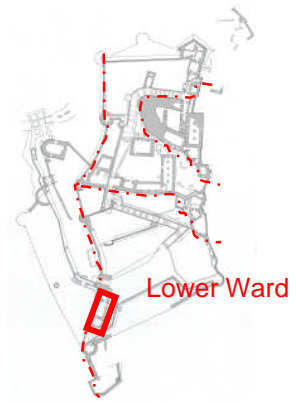
314 Assessment of Significance :

- mid seventeenth century staircase
- restored and in good condition
- a significant element of the later artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

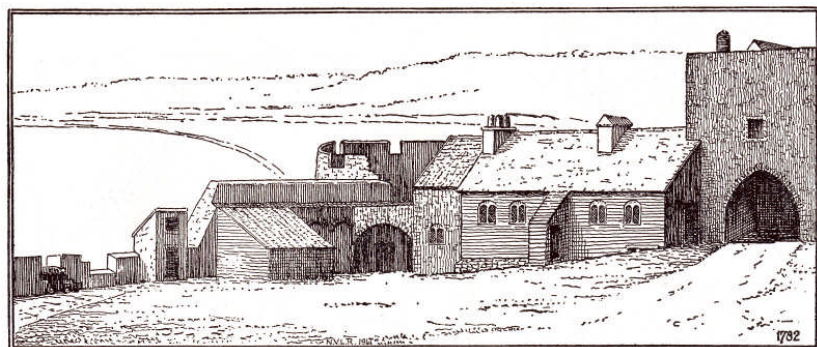
315 LODGE :
18th cent

A Porter's Lodge, constructed against the inside face of the curtain wall immediately south of Second Gate [301] in the eighteenth century and referred to by Rybot as an original guard house.

The old plans of the castle show various structures abutting the south side of the gate at different times. Thomas Phillips depicted a line of stables in 1680, whereas the 1741 plan records only one structure or room, and the 1755 plan records a further two – the earlier one recorded as a 'Guard House' and the other two as 'Gunnery D. & Apartment'.

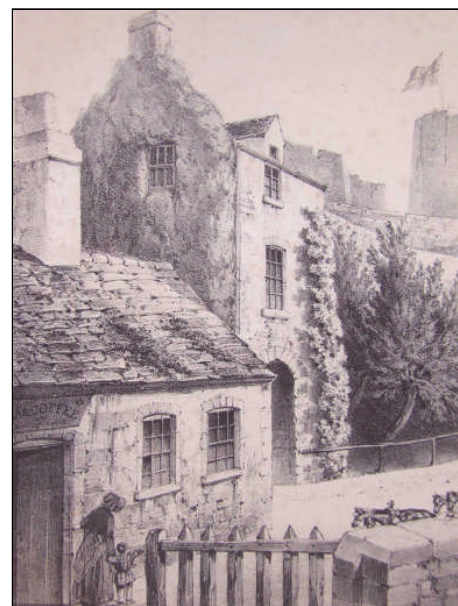


Rybot published his own line drawing of the building based on a watercolour painting of 1782.



Rybot's line drawing of the lodge in 1782.

By the end of the eighteenth century the structure was used as Officers Quarters and in the early nineteenth century it was a store room and in part used as a guard room. In 1830 it was the canteen and is depicted as visitors' tea rooms in 1846.



The Second Gate and Lodge in 1846.

The existing building forms the north part of a range of buildings continuing to the south and is of a single storey, with an attic storey contained in a pantiled roof.

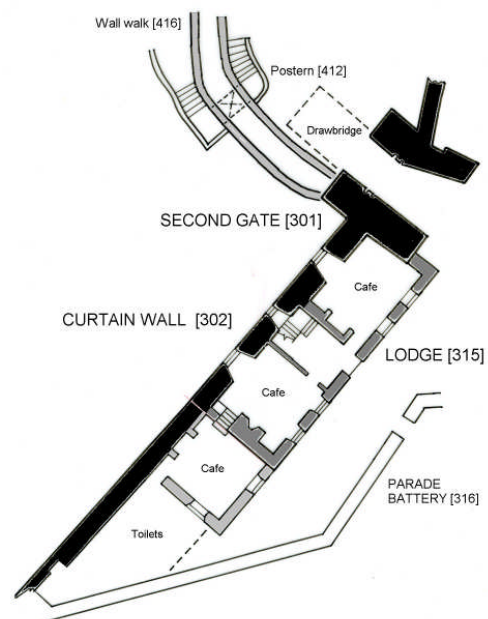
The demolition of existing structures at the south end of the lodge, prior to the construction of new toilets, revealed the remains of a water cistern and a two-seater latrine, possibly of seventeenth century date.

References

Anon 1938 : 23; Rybot 1933 : 16-18 Figures 9 'B' & 11 '2'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 2 Part 3; Dixon & Kennedy 2002 : 7.0/1 & 2; Rodwell 2006b; and Ford 2007 : 20.

The older part of the structure is used as the castle café with an office contained in the roof space. It incorporates a section of the medieval curtain wall of Lower Ward on its west side [302], and the thickness of walls elsewhere suggests that they may incorporate an earlier structure, though the finishes are all now twentieth century. The room adjoining the gate includes a granite fireplace. New toilets have been erected at the south end and the inner face of the curtain wall that is concealed by them has evidence for crenellations, an oven, and flues.

Simplified plan, showing the former lodge and adjacent structures.





The lodge, from the north-east (left) and the fireplace in the room adjoining the gate (right).

315 Assessment of Significance :

- mid eighteenth century lodge and gatehouse
- altered many times and now used as a cafe
- an interesting element of the later use of the site as a military garrison
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**316 PARADE
BATTERY :
early 19th cent**

Built in 1801-02 to replace King Charles' Battery [306] as the southern defence of the castle, when the later medieval curtain wall had mostly collapsed into the sea below it.

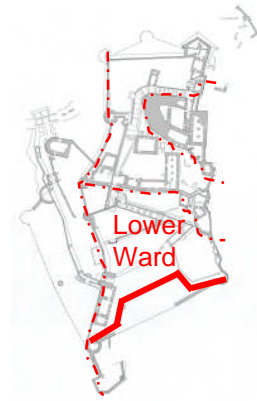
It links the two ends of the former curtain wall, marked by John Hélie's Tower [305] and the southern flanking tower [307], though both of these were either cut down or altered at that time.

The battery was restored by Public Works.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 113; *Rybot 1933* : 18 Figure 11 '5'; and *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 47.0/1 & 2.

The wall, which has a stepped alignment to avoid the steeper slopes below it, is in a conserved condition throughout its length and forms the south curtain wall of Lower Ward.



Parade Battery, from the south (arrowed).

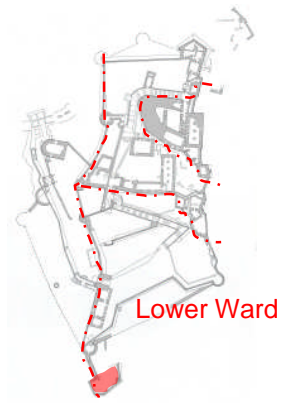
316 Assessment of Significance :

- early nineteenth century curtain wall
- complete and in good condition
- a significant element of the later use of the site as a military garrison
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

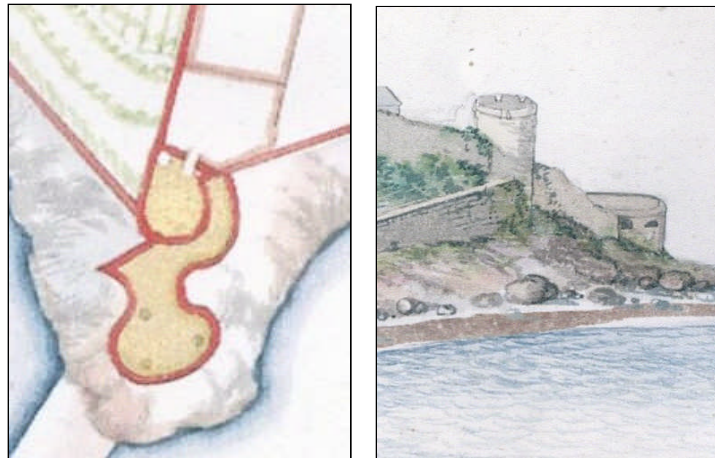
**317 WATER
BATTERY :
early 19th cent**

An angled outwork on the rocks below the castle, reached by flights of steps down from alongside John Hélié's Tower and up from the end of the jetty forming Gorey Harbour, and built in 1802 on the site of earlier outworks.

There is a structure shown here on Phillips' plan of 1680 and on his contemporary drawing it appears to be depicted in the form of a low round tower. It is likely that there was a protected access down to the bay and Gorey Harbour from an early date in the life of the castle, and Phillips shows a pier or jetty adjacent to this corner of the castle.

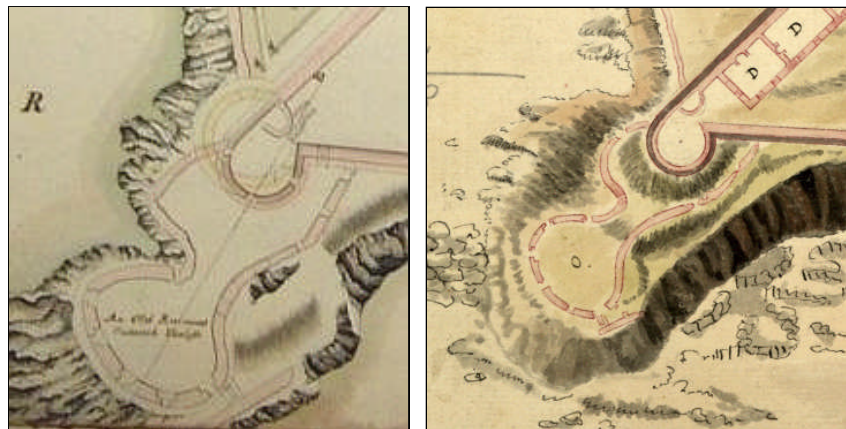


Philip Dixon has suggested that the structure depicted by Phillips may have been a detached low blockhouse of typical Henry VIII-period type, and that it may be the round tower which 'commands the peer and harbour' and was recorded as 'decayed' in 1621.



Extracts from Thomas Phillips' drawings of 1680, showing the plan of the outwork and a view of it from the south-west.

The structure is recorded on the plans produced in 1741 and 1755, and on the latter it is referred to as 'detached works in ruins'. It appears to have comprised a curtain wall, pierced by gun embrasures, enclosing a roughly circular area linked back to the round tower above it.



The outwork as recorded on plans of 1741 (left) and 1755 (right).

Rybot gives the date for the construction of the present structure as 1802, which would make it contemporary with Parade Battery [316], and it has been suggested that older foundations were seen when this structure was built.

There is an emplacement for a small calibre swivel gun, at the eastern side, as well as a ringstand for a Renault tank turret, which both date to the German occupation.

References

Anon 1838 :12; Rybot 1933 : 18 Figure 11 '4'; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 2 Part 4; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 47.0/2.; and Clarke 2005.

The structure is in a restored condition and there are traces of the earlier work on the rocks below it which should, perhaps, be recorded before they are removed by erosion.



Water Battery, from above (left) and from below (right).



The steps leading up from Water Battery.

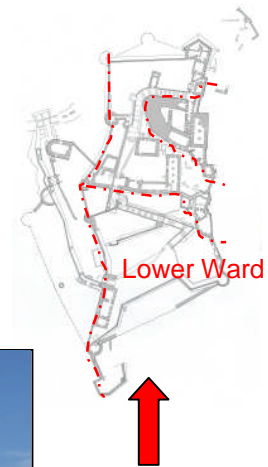
317 Assessment of Significance :

- early nineteenth century outwork on site of earlier structure
- complete and in good condition
- an interesting element of the later military garrison
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- some potential for recording

318 GOREY PIER APPROACH

This is the area to the south-east of the castle from which it can still be approached from the bay and Gorey Harbour.

It offers the most attractive view of the castle, and with the harbour and the village of Gorey in the foreground, it is the one which is most popular in photographs, drawings, and paintings.



Mont Orgueil, from the south-west.



Mont Orgueil, from the south.

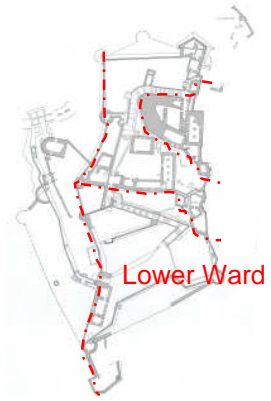
318 Assessment of Significance :

- general view of castle from Gorey Harbour
- uninterrupted, other than by low-rise buildings
- a significant and popular view of the castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- need to preserve and enhance

319 SITES OF BUILDINGS

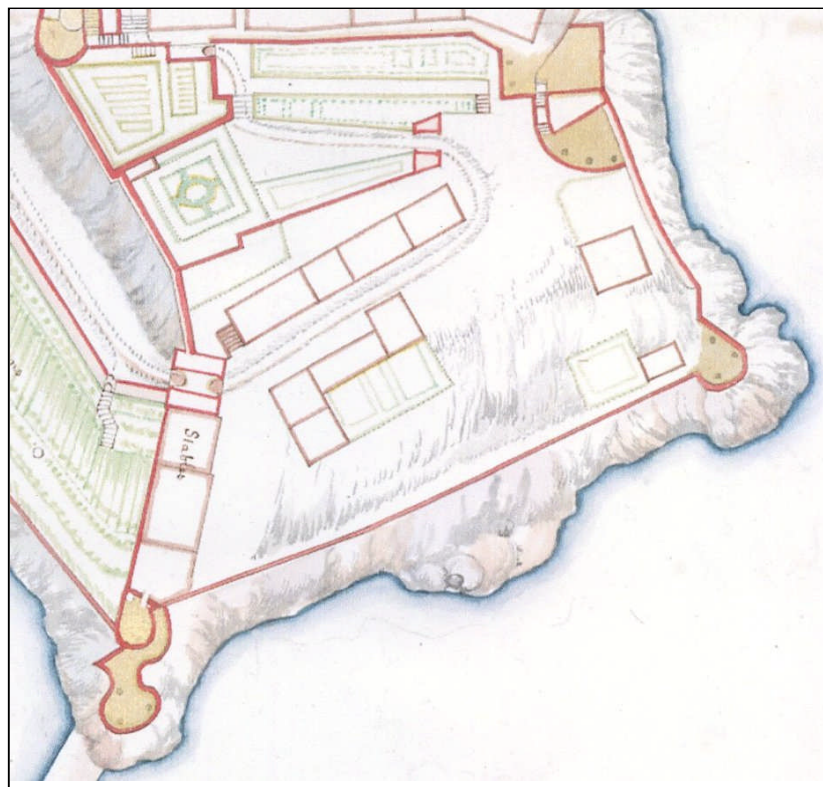
It is known that Lower Ward contained a large number of houses and public buildings serving the population of the castle and of Jersey, where civil officers of the Crown carried out their special duties in the castle up to the end of the eighteenth century.

These are known to have included the *Cohue* or Courthouse, in the north-east corner under the Cornish Bastion [212]; a *Suttling* or Victualling House, between it and the north-east corner of the gatehouse; a Viscount's Office, where the Standard Weights and Measures were kept; and also a granary and 'some old barracks which were demolished in 1834'.



In 1685 Philip Dumaesque said that the buildings were 'much decayed and most of the lodgings ruined'

Phillips' plan of 1680 depicts four buildings in Lower Ward, and these may well include those referred to above. The roofs of two of them appear in Phillips' drawing and some of them appear in eighteenth and nineteenth century drawings and paintings of the castle. The building at the south-east corner is identified as a 'Prison' on a French plan produced in about 1700 (see Section 1.0.6).



Extract from Phillips' plan, showing buildings in Lower Ward in 1680.

Only one of these buildings, identified as the 'E - Sutling House', is recorded on the plans of 1741 and 1755.



Extract from the 1755 plan.

A trench and four trial pits excavated in 1999 revealed traces of former buildings at either end of the garden of Lower Ward.

References

Anon 1838 : 23-24; Nicolle 1921 : 114; Rybot 1933 : 16; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 8.0/1 & 2; and Rodwell 2002 : 18.

The area is now laid mostly to grass and there are no traces of any of these buildings on the surface, though their former positions can be deduced from the old plans.

This would suggest that there is considerable potential for archaeological investigation on this part of the site.

319 Assessment of Significance :

- sites of civil and domestic buildings
- surviving only as buried remains
- of significance for understanding the civil role of the castle during the latter part of its history
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for investigation

4. OUTER WARD

This is that part of the castle occupying the west side of the site, extending along the lower slopes of the rocky outcrop between the first and second gates. It contained a well and the enclosed area may have been used for keeping animals. (For a discussion of its structural development see Section 1.0.4 and for a possible extension of the Outer Ward around the north side of the castle see Middle Ward entries 202 and 203).

It was probably created as an outer ward during the earliest phase of construction of the castle in the early part of the thirteenth century, at which time it was approached from Castle Green [401 & 402], which was crossed by outer defences [403 & 404], and was entered by a stone gate [405] and enclosed by a wooden palisade or a stone wall.

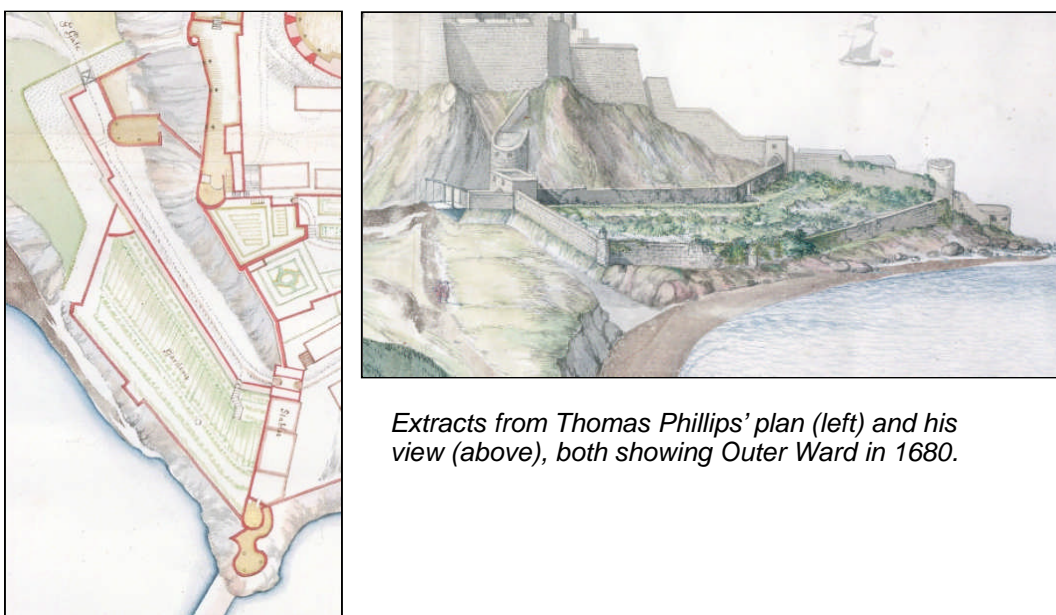
During the later medieval period it was protected by a stone wall and a semi-circular bastion [406], and in about 1470 additional protection was built in the form of a large D-shaped tower [407].

In addition to the surviving well [408], the Outer Ward is known to have contained a number of buildings, including a granary, a forge, and buildings for cattle and for storage (*Nicolle 1921*: 108; *Rybot 1930*: 275; and *Rybot 1933*: 15 Figures 7 & 8).

In the sixteenth century part of the enclosed area may have been abandoned when a new gate was built outside the line of the former defences [409]. This was linked to the gate into the Lower Ward by a walled approach, or chemise [410, 411 & 412], protected by a half-moon battery [413].

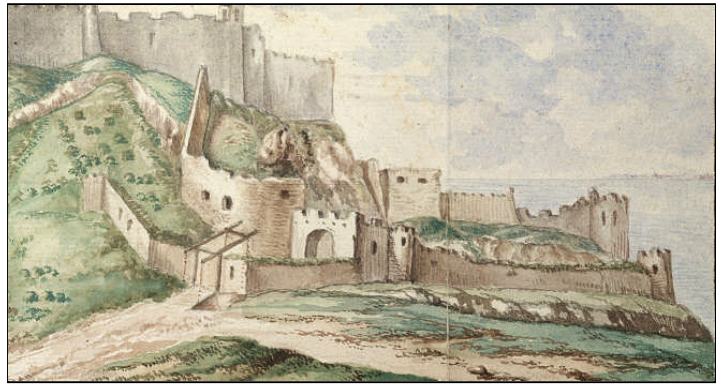
At the beginning of the eighteenth century a new entrance was created alongside the D-shaped tower [414] and in the nineteenth century a stable store was built against the base of the Lower ward wall [415]. At a fairly late, but unknown, date a wall walk was created along the west wall of the chemise [416].

The Outer Ward is depicted on Thomas Phillips' plan and view, both produced in 1680, and on several other early illustrations.

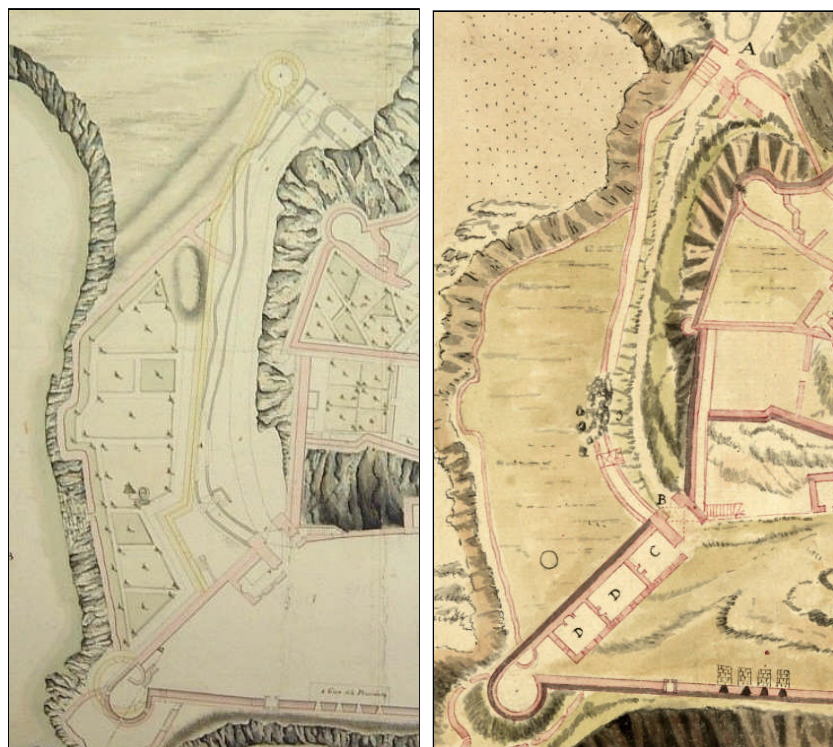


Extracts from Thomas Phillips' plan (left) and his view (above), both showing Outer Ward in 1680.

Extract from an anonymous view of Mont Orgueil, probably produced in about 1700, showing Outer Ward.



The Outer Ward is also depicted on the plan produced in 1741, showing a proposed new curtain wall with round towers at either end which were not built, and on the plan produced in 1755.



Extracts from the 1741 plan (left) and the 1755 plan (right).

The defences on the west side had mostly collapsed down the cliff by the late eighteenth century and land at the foot of the rock was sold for development in 1821.

The Outer Ward was laid out as a private garden's garden, with no public access, for some time. In 2004-2006 it was re-contoured to conceal underpinning work undertaken in 1975 [see 412]. Steps were formed on the ramp down to the garden level and a new route was created for the access from Gorey Pier, through the garden, terminating outside the Second Gate. This secondary access to the castle, which rises up from Water Battery [317], passes around the side of John Hélie's Bastion [305], and then meanders through the garden to the postern [412] through the outer wall of the chemise [410].

The garden contains a series of pieces of sculptured artwork by Gordon Young, in the form of engraved stones bearing the various alternative names given to the property in the past.

The Outer Ward garden, looking south, with one of the engraved stones in the foreground.

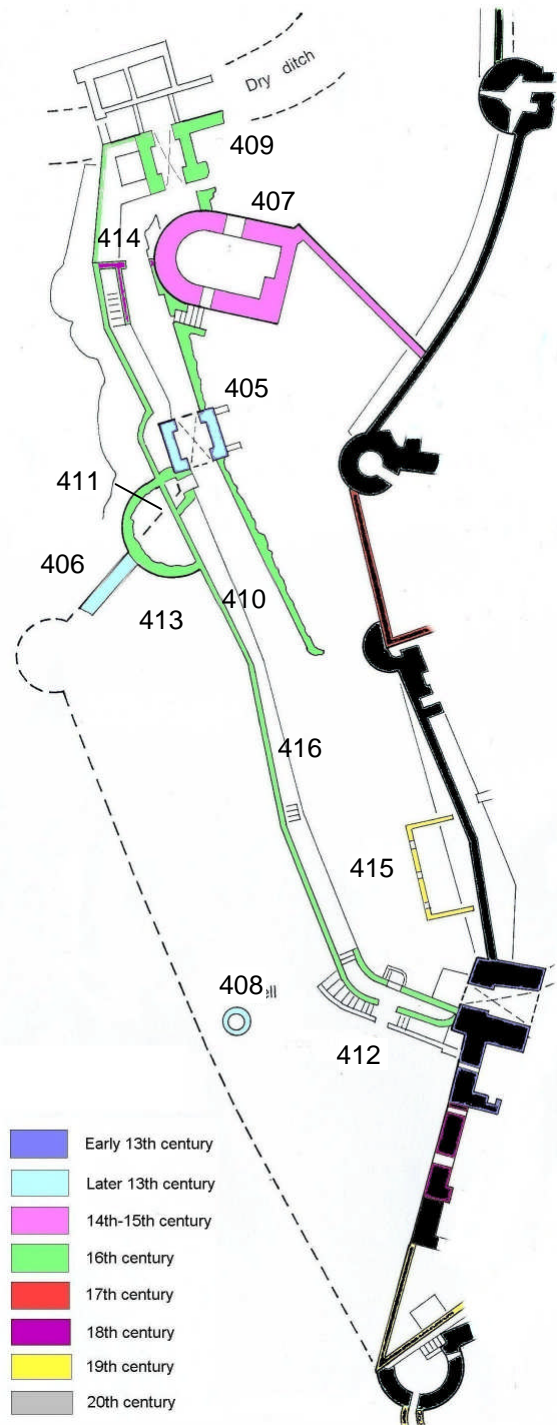


401 & 402

403 & 404

Simplified plan of Outer Ward, showing the approximate dates of construction and numbering used in the text. Not to scale.

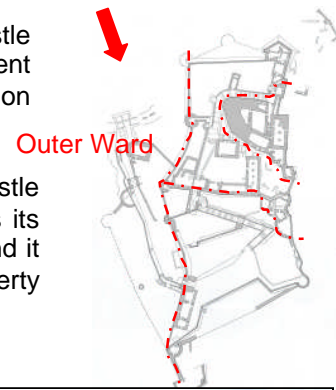
- 401 CASTLE APPROACH
- 402 CASTLE GREEN
- 403 PALISADE
- 404 DEFENSIVE DITCH
- 405 MEDIEVAL FIRST GATE
- 406 LATER MEDIEVAL DEFENCES
- 407 HARLISTON TOWER
- 408 BUILDINGS AND WELL
- 409 16th CENTURY FIRST GATE
- 410 CHEMISE
- 411 GATEWAY
- 412 POSTERN
- 413 HALF-MOON BATTERY
- 414 18th CENTURY FIRST GATE
- 415 STABLE STORE AND KIOSK
- 416 WALL WALK



401 CASTLE APPROACH & VIEW

This is the area to the north of the castle from which the first gate and the present entrance have always been approached, on relatively level or slightly sloping ground.

The relatively uninterrupted view of the castle from this side, which amply demonstrates its original setting, is particularly important and it is frequently used to promote the property and the Island of Jersey as tourist venues.



Views of Mont Orgueil, Gorey village, and Gorey Harbour, from Mont Saint Nicolas (above and below).



401 Assessment of Significance :

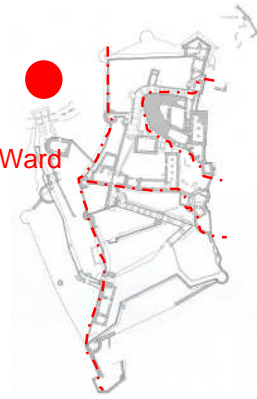
- view from north
- relatively uninterrupted by development or high-rise buildings
- significant in demonstrating the original setting of the castle
- not part of the Site of Special Interest
- need to preserve and enhance, perhaps by designation as a Conservation Area

402 CASTLE GREEN

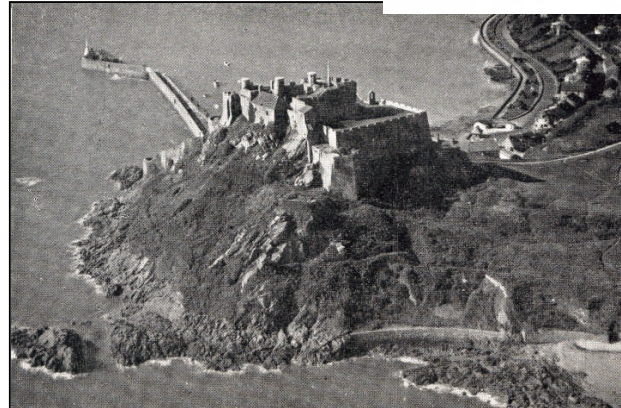
This is the area immediately adjacent to the entrance to the castle where the king maintained a rabbit warren in the 13th and 14th centuries, and which still existed in 1607.

It has been suggested that undulations in the ground indicate that it almost certainly contains a roadway to the castle, possibly flanked by buildings, as well as the remains of the original defensive ditch [404] and possibly some outworks to the defences.

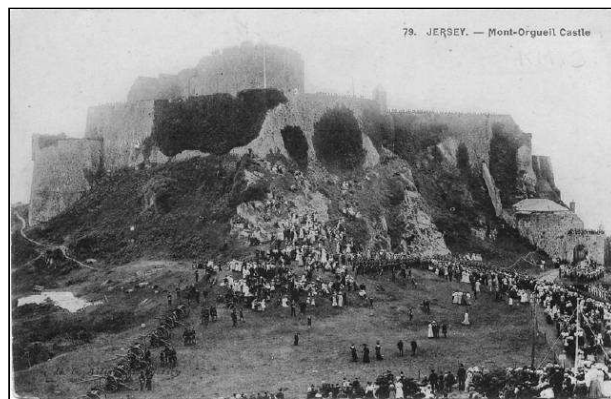
Outer Ward



Aerial photograph of the castle from the north in 1946, showing the Castle Green to the right.



As well as providing the main access to the castle, the area has been used for ceremony and celebration in connection with the property and the Island of Jersey.

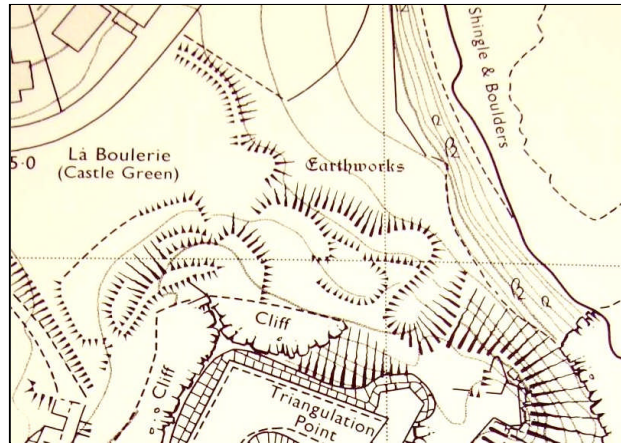


An early postcard recording a ceremony on the Green, possibly the handing over of the keys.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 108; Rybot 1933 :11; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 1.0/1.

The Castle Green is part-managed by the Jersey Heritage Trust and by other parties, and is laid to grass. The caption 'Earthworks' in antiquity type has been applied to a series of banks and hollows extending across Castle Green, but it is not obvious which of these may originate in features associated with the castle.



Earthworks on Castle Green, as seen from above (left) and as depicted on the latest Ordnance Survey plan (above).

Any earthmoving operations on Castle Green are likely to have an adverse effect on buried remains and should be discouraged. However, there is potential here for future investigation and this could, perhaps, be commenced with a programme of non-intrusive, geophysical survey.

402 Assessment of Significance :

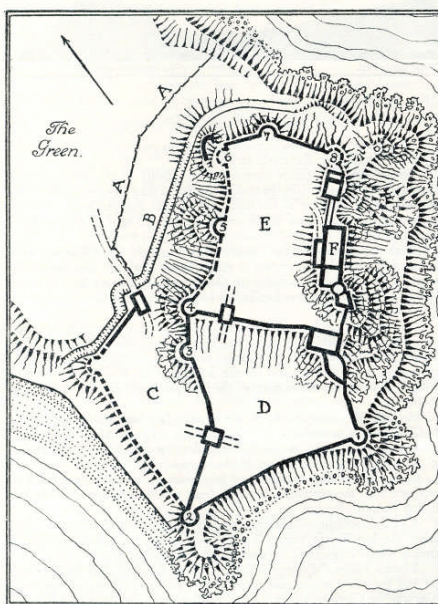
- site of original approach to castle and outworks
- possible remains buried under present grassed surface
- potentially a significant part of the site which may contain remains of outworks or extra mural settlement
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for future investigation

403 PALISADE

This is a palisade referred to by Rybot, which evidently extended for a distance of 330 feet in a north-easterly direction across Castle Green from the medieval First Gate [405] to the cliff edge. It is said to have been 'stoutly built and loopholed for archers', but it is not clear where Rybot obtained his evidence for this.

Along with the ditch [404], this was presumably intended to form an obstacle to delay an enemy and disorder his formations before he could draw near to the perimeter of the permanent defences of the castle.

Outer Ward



Rybot's plan of the castle, showing the principal defences, including the palisade at A-A.

References

Rybot 1933: 11 Figure 4 'A-A'.

The area is partially laid to grass and partly overgrown, and there are no traces of the palisade on the surface.

403 Assessment of Significance :

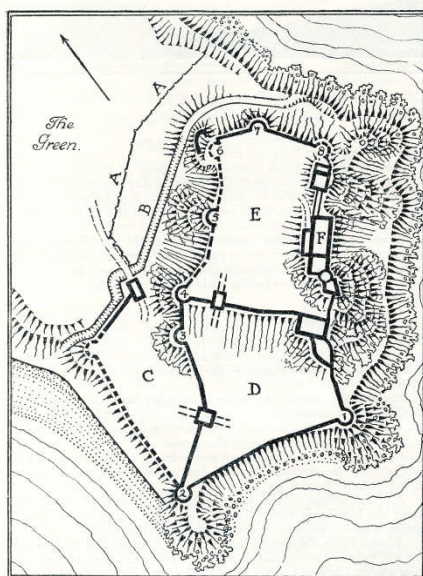
- palisade outwork to medieval castle
- perhaps remains preserved under the surface
- potentially a significant element of the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for future investigation

404 DEFENSIVE DITCH

This was an external dry ditch which extended across the neck of the rocky promontory on which the castle was built, behind the palisade [403] but in front of the medieval First Gate [405] and the northern defences of the Outer Ward [406].

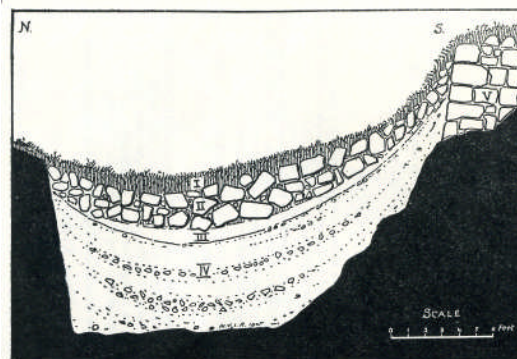
It was in part cut through the rock at the base of the castle walls where at one point it is said to have been ten feet deep.

It must have been re-cut at its west end when the medieval gate was replaced by one further north in the sixteenth century [409] and it is depicted on Thomas Phillips' plan and view of 1680 and on the 1741 plan.



Rybot's plan of the castle, showing the principal defences including the defensive ditch - B.

A section was excavated across the ditch in 1930 and it was found to be twenty feet in width, its outer edge vertical, its inner sloped – an arrangement which is said by Rybot to have been designed to prevent the attackers using it as cover from missiles descending from the walls. Rybot's published drawing refers to the remains of an elliptical bastion found at the south end of the trench [203], and this implies that the excavations were undertaken near the north end of the ditch, beneath his bastion '6' of the Middle Ward 'E'.



Rybot's section through the ditch, as excavated in 1930.

Reference

Rybot 1933: 11 Figures 4 & 5.

The course of the ditch is traceable, at least in part, through long grass and undergrowth and is partly depicted on the Ordnance Survey plan as earthworks [see 402].

Traces of the ditch in long grass.



404 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of external defensive ditch
- survives as earthworks and as buried feature
- of significance as part of the defences of the medieval castle, which may contain dating evidence
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for future investigation

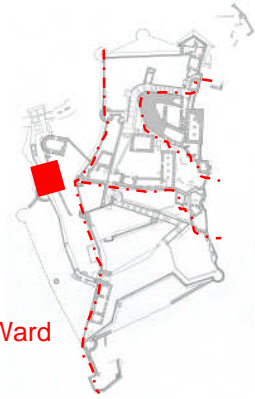
**405 MEDIEVAL
FIRST GATE :
early 13th c**

This appears to have formed part of the outermost line of the original early thirteenth century defences of the castle and may have been associated with either timber palisades or masonry walls encircling the Outer Ward.

The east side of the gate was later linked to Harliston Tower, when it was erected in about 1470 [407], to provide a protected approach to the gate.

The gate was probably abandoned when the new First Gate was erected further north in about 1520-1540 [409].

Outer Ward



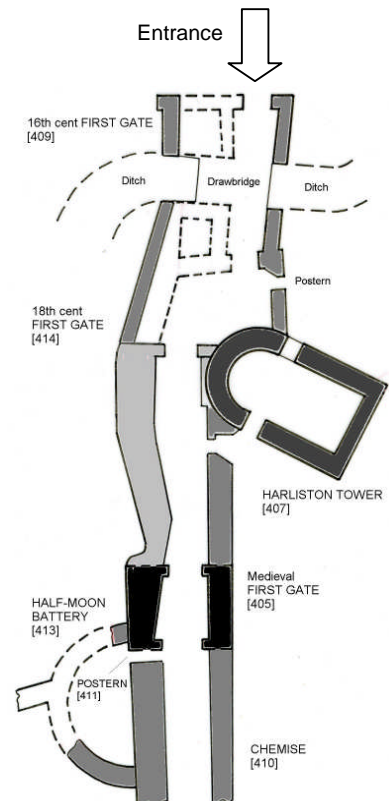
At about the same time the Half-Moon Battery [413] was added to cover the western approach to the Chemise wall [416], when the Outer Ward was either reduced in size or partially abandoned as part of the defences.

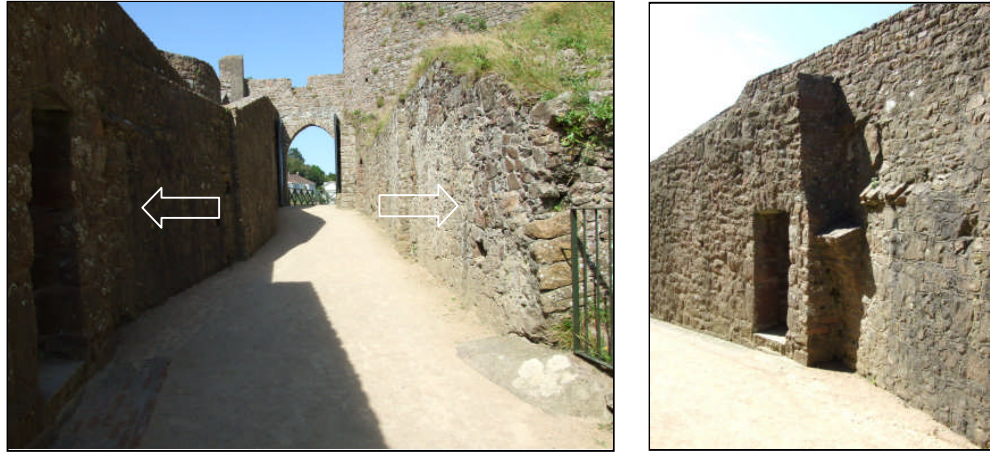
References

Nicolle 1921 :108; Rybot 1933: 15 Figures 7 & 8; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 4.0; and Ford 2007 : 19.

All that survives of the gate, which apparently had an outer ditch [404], a drawbridge, and a portcullis, are the two side walls, incorporated into the walls of the chemise [416]. Remains of the portcullis slots and the springers for the arched roof and for the rear archway can be seen in the side wall.

Simplified plan, showing the remains of the medieval first gate and other structures in the vicinity. Not to scale.





The remains of the medieval first gate (arrowed), looking north (left) and a detail showing the springers for the arched roof and the archway at its south-west corner (right)

405 Assessment of Significance :

- remains of original medieval gate
- incorporated into later structure
- a significant element of the medieval castle, representing the outermost line of defence
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for future investigation and interpretation

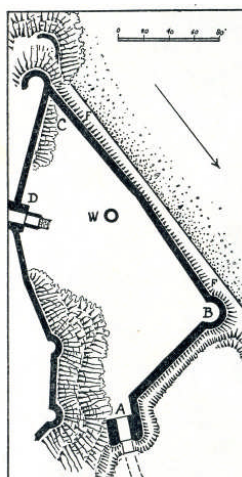
406 LATER MEDIEVAL DEFENCES

This was the outermost ward of the medieval castle, and by the later medieval period it had been enclosed by a wall revetting a clay cliff, with a bastion on the west side.

In 1611 the area was described as 'open and unwall'd'.

Rybot suggested that there had been a semi-circular bastion at the north-west corner.

Outer Ward



*Plan of Outer Ward after Rybot 1933
Figure 7. North is to the bottom of the plan.*

However, Thomas Phillips' plan of 1680 shows the enclosing wall with an angled bastion at the north-west angle and an angular projection part way along the west side (see above). The 1741 plan recorded a proposal for an alternative alignment for the defences on this side of the castle, which was not adopted, whilst the 1755 plan records little trace of those that existed at that time.

The outer walls and bastion are shown in ruins on a watercolour view of the castle by George Heriot in *circa* 1789, but the walls appear to have survived, at least in part, until the late 1830s, when they were described as dilapidated.



George Heriot's painting of the castle, from the north, in about 1789

In 1821 the land on the western perimeter of the Ward was sold by the Government and between then and 1840 houses were built on a strip of land which had been cut back into the former cliff alongside Pier Road, now Gorey Pier, which had been completed in 1826.

References

Anon 1838:20; *Nicolle* 1921: 110; *Rybot* 1930:275; and *Rybot* 1933: 15 Figures 7 'B' & 8.

All that remains of the curtain wall and bastion is a small section of the wall at the north end, which is covered in undergrowth.

The area below the cliff and to the west of what remains of Lower Ward is fully developed. The boundaries of the neighbouring properties in the road known as Gorey Pier are said to be inadequately defined and there is believed to have been some encroachment onto land owned by the States of Jersey.

The developed land west of Outer Ward, looking south.



406 Assessment of Significance :

- remnant of medieval curtain wall
- only a fragment remains
- significant as part of the medieval defences but scarcely visible on the ground
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for future investigation

**407 HARLISTON
TOWER :
circa 1470**

A D-shaped structure of three low storeys built into the side of the cliff to provide additional cover to the medieval first gate. Attributed to Sir Richard Harliston in *circa* 1470 after he had recovered the castle from the French in 1468.

The structure was repaired and subject to some alterations in 1794, 1806, and 1837, and in 1838 it retained the roof rebuilt in slate in 1794. The tower was repaired and altered by Public Works in 1911, at which time the roof was removed .

Outer Ward



It was subject to a detailed study by Dixon & Kennedy, who concluded that the basement vault was inserted to replace a timber floor in a second building phase, and that other alterations had been made by Rybot and by Public Works. It may have been the first part of the castle to be purpose-built to take cannon, although Dixon & Kennedy suggest that some of the gun embrasures may belong to a secondary phase of construction.

The entrance arch abutting the west side was probably built in the eighteenth century [414] to replace the sixteenth century First Gate (see plan on 405).

References

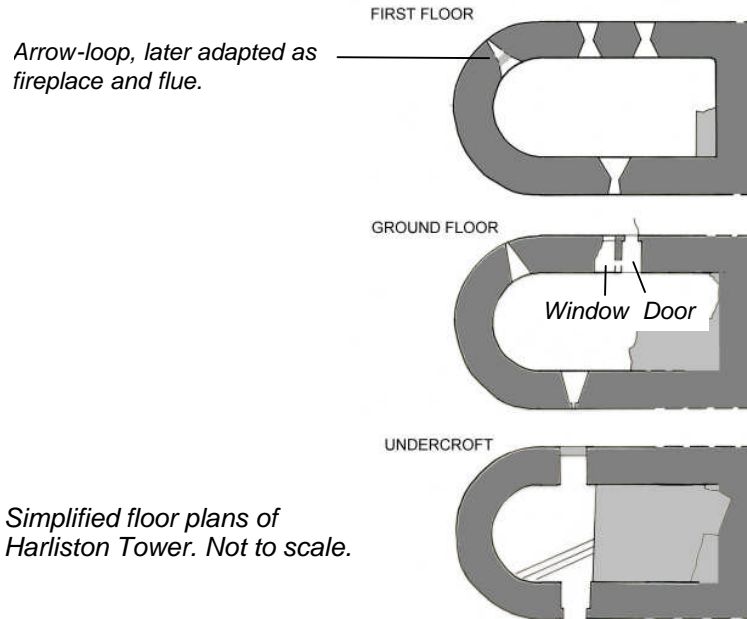
Anon 1838: 12-13; *Nicolle 1921* : 108-109; *Rybot 1933*:15; *Condition Audit 1996* Vol 2 Part 1; *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 3.0/3; and *Ford 2007*: 19.

The tower has been restored as a ruin without a roof or floors. It is accessed via an opening in the wall of the chemise and contains both arrow-loops and gun embrasures (see plan on next page).

The lowest level below the remains of the inserted vaulting for the ground floor, which now has the appearance of being the remains of an **undercroft**, includes a rebuilt doorway on the south side, which now provides the only means of entry, and the remains of another in the north wall, which has been blocked on the external face.

What could, perhaps, be described as the **ground floor** level includes the remains of a door and a window opening in the north wall and two splayed arrow-loops.

The **first floor** level contains a splayed arrow-loop, later adapted as a fireplace and flue, and three gun embrasures.



Harliston Tower, from the north-east (above) and from the north-west (right).



The entrance to Harliston Tower, through the wall of the chemise (left).



The interior of Harliston Tower, looking north-west (left) and north (right).

407 Assessment of Significance :

- fifteenth century artillery tower
- complete but without a roof or floors
- a significant early element of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for future investigation

408 BUILDINGS AND WELL :

The area contained within Outer Ward evidently included a number of buildings, such as a granary, a forge, and buildings for cattle and for storage, in addition to the surviving well.

Outer Ward

Towards the southern end of what remains of Outer Ward, to the west of the chemise, is a well. This was described in the 1830s as then 42 feet deep and as a 'shallow well' by Rybot.



References

Anon 1838: 20; *Nicolle 1921*: 108; *Rybot 1930*: 275; *Rybot 1933*: 15 Figures 7 & 8; and *Condition Audit* Vol 2 Part 8.

The top of the well is built of granite slabs, set in the form of a horseshoe, with a large slab as a capping and an iron grating allowing viewing.



The well, from the east.

The footings of other structures may survive below the present surface of the ground.

408 Assessment of Significance :

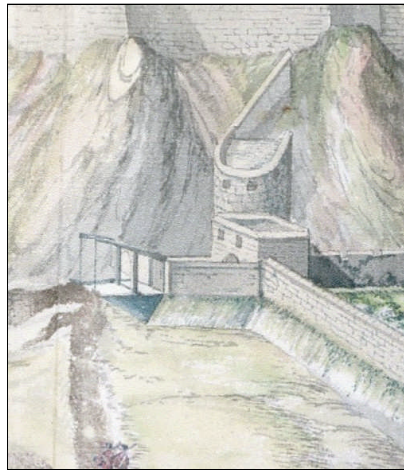
- later medieval well and ancillary buildings
- well intact and possible remains of buildings below ground level
- a significant elements of the domestic and supporting activities within the medieval castle
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- some potential for future investigation

**409 FIRST GATE :
16th cent.**

The gate, possibly erected in about 1520-1540 to replace the original further south, is depicted on the plan and the drawing by Thomas Philips in 1680, at which time it was fronted by a ditch crossed by a counterweighted drawbridge.

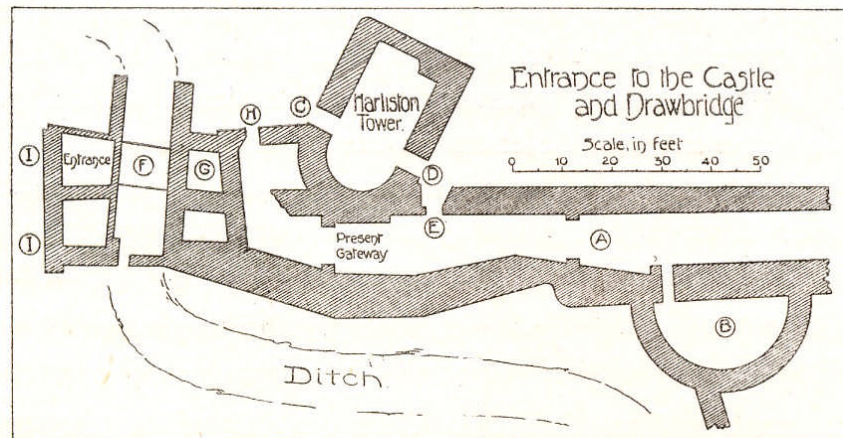
It appears in a similar form in a view of circa 1700, but it appears to have been demolished shortly after this date having been replaced by the entrance arch alongside Harliston Tower in [414]. It is not shown on the plans of 1741 and 1755.

Outer Ward



First Gate in 1680 (left) and in circa 1700 (right).

The remains of the gate and drawbridge were excavated in 1912, and appear to have comprised two 2-cell units, separated by a shallow ditch, which are interpreted as a gatehouse with small towers or guardhouses on the west side. There was also a small opening, or postern, between the gate and Harliston Tower.



The excavated plan of First Gate (after Nicolle 1921).

Excavations of the first gate in 1912.



A new electricity trench was laid into the castle in 2000, close to the line of a watermain inserted in 1993, and a declevity filled with probably eighteenth and nineteenth century broken stone was found on the site of the gate which is believed to have been either a natural hollow or the ditch in front of the gate.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 109-110; Rybot 1933 : 15; Dixon and Kennedy 2002b : 2.0/1, 2 & 3; and Rodwell 2002a : 9.

The remains of the gate are preserved only below ground level, but its site is indicated on the surface by hard landscaping. The site of the drawbridge is indicated by a modern bridge (see plan on 405). The floor of the ditch has been raised to accommodate services and to establish a small car park.



The site of the sixteenth century First Gate (left) and the modern bridge (above).

409 Assessment of Significance :

- erected in the sixteenth century and demolished *circa* 1700
- preserved below ground level
- a significant element in the development of the post medieval fortifications
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for further investigation

**410 CHEMISE :
circa 1570**

This is the long and narrow passageway, flanked by a pair of walls and a rock-cut cliff, extending along the foot of the rock and passing between the First and the Second Gate.

Outer Ward

It appears to have been created in about 1570, and is attributed by the Jersey Chronicler, writing in the early 1580s, to Sir Hugh Paulet [1551-1567].

It is perhaps best seen as a replacement of or an addition to the curtain wall of Outer Ward, at which time a new roadway was formed alongside it by dumping a fairly uniform bed of sand and gravel, possibly over the remains of earlier buildings.

The tall west wall is of several periods of construction and probably reached its present form in the sixteenth century when the new First Gate was erected and the remainder of the original Outer Ward was cut-off to form a garden. The wall on the west side was repaired in 1793 and again between 1797 and 1800, and the wall walk on the top [416] may belong to a more recent restoration.

In 2000 a new electricity cable was laid alongside an earlier pipe trench along the line of the chemise. It revealed a layer of dumped material capped by a modern gravel surface.

References

Nicolle 1921 :108 and 201; *Rybot 1933* : 15 Figure 8; *Condition Audit 1996* Vol 2 Part 2; *Dixon & Kennedy 2002b* : 4.0; and *Rodwell 2002a* : 10.

The walls of the chemise are in a conserved condition and the passageway provides the main access to the castle for visitors as well as a western boundary to the defences, which can be entered from the garden via a secondary entrance to the castle provided by the postern [412] (see plan on 405).



The chemise, looking south from the medieval First Gate (left) and looking north from Second Gate (right).

The suggestion that the gravelled surface of the passageway may conceal the remains of earlier buildings suggests that there is potential for further investigation.



The outer wall of the chemise, looking north from below the postern in the garden.

410 Assessment of Significance :

- sixteenth century curtain wall and passageway approach, sealing remains of earlier buildings
- intact and in use as a visitor access
- a significant addition the artillery fortifications
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for future investigation

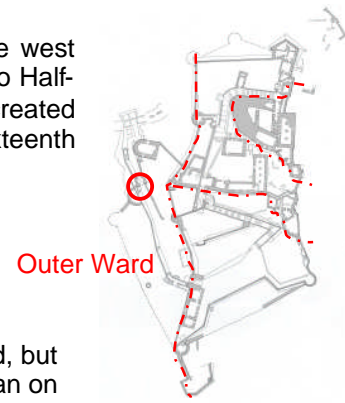
**411 GATEWAY :
circa 1570**

This is a small doorway or postern in the west wall of the chemise [410], giving access to Half-Moon Battery [413], which was probably created when the chemise was built in the sixteenth century.

Reference

Nicolle 1921 : 109.

The doorway or postern has been restored, but is presently sealed by an iron gate (see plan on 405).



Internal and external views of the doorway leading into half-moon bastion.

411 Assessment of Significance :

- sixteenth century doorway or postern
- in a restored condition
- an element of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- potential for future investigation

412 POSTERN :
circa 1570

This is located at the south end of the chemise, immediately outside the Second Gate, and was evidently built as part of the chemise in the sixteenth century to provide access into the western part of the Outer Ward and perhaps also down to the outworks and to the harbour.

It was reduced in width in 1807. In 1928 the steps down to the postern were swung round from south-east to north-west to their present position, in order to accommodate the restored drawbridge at the Second Gate.

Outer Ward



Close examination in 2002 showed that it originally had a low, segmental arch and vault. What exists now is largely a rebuild of the twentieth century, because in 1975 the wall from the rear of the Lodge to beyond the postern was substantially underpinned with a large projecting foot. The projection tapered down to the garden top form a crude ramp.

References

Anon 1838 : 22; Nicolle 1921 : 108; Rybot 1933 : 15; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 4.0/2; Rodwell 2002a : 13; and Ford 2007 : 20.

The paving through the vaulted passage was re-laid in 2006 over a service trench. The passage now gives access from the steps, passing under the outer wall of the chemise [410], and then steps and a ramp leading down into the garden of Outer Ward, and from there via a pathway and a steep flight of steps to Water Battery and the harbour (see plan on 315).



The steps and opening near Second Gate (above) and the opening and steps on the outer side of the wall (right).



412 Assessment of Significance :

- sixteenth century doorway or postern
- in a restored condition and in use
- an element of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**413 Half-Moon
Battery :
circa 1530 or
later**

This has also been known as the semi-circular battery, the semi-circular bulwark, Picardy half moon, and the western barbican.

It is all that remains of a gun battery built against the west side of the original medieval gate in about 1530 or in the late sixteenth century to provide cover on the western approach to the chemise wall [416], when the Outer Ward wall was reduced in size or abandoned as part of the castle defences.

Outer Ward



Access to the Battery was via a postern in the outer curtain wall of the chemise, which still survives [411].

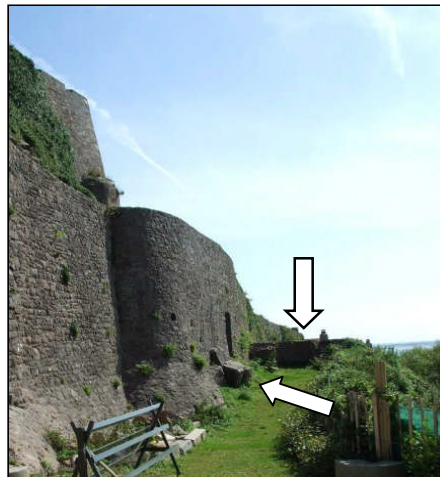
The battery is shown in part on Thomas Phillips' plan of 1680 and in a similar form on the plan produced in 1741, but it is not shown on the 1755 plan.

It remained in ruins until most of it was demolished by Public Works in 1926.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 108; *Rybot 1933* : 15 Figure 8; and *Condition Audit 1996* : Vol 2 Part 2.

All that survives is a short length of the southern end of the battery and the stub of the northern end where it abutted the wall of the chemise (see plan on 405).



The external face of the chemise wall, close to its northern end, with the remains of the half-moon battery against it (arrowed – above left) and the remains of the southern side of the battery from the south (arrowed - above right).

413 Assessment of Significance :

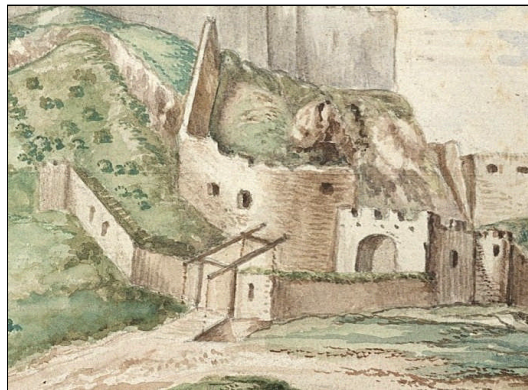
- sixteenth century gun battery
- fragmentary remains only
- an element of the artillery fortress
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- possibly potential for investigation

**414 : FIRST GATE :
circa 1700**

This entrance at the north end of the chemise, and abutting Harliston abutting Harliston Tower on its west side, appears to have been built at the very beginning of the eighteenth century.

Outer Ward

It does not seem to be shown on Thomas Phillips' plan of 1680, but both it and its immediate predecessor, the sixteenth century First Gate [409], are shown on the view produced in about 1700.



Extract from the view produced in about 1700, showing this opening and its immediate predecessor.

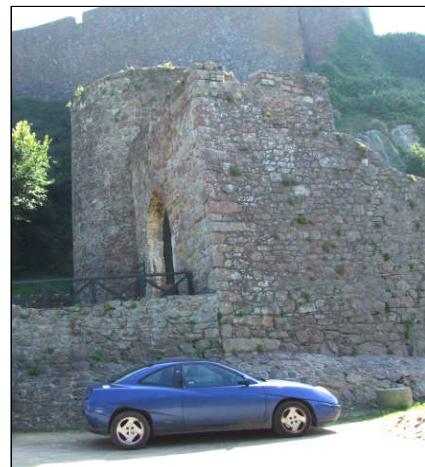
It is shown as the principal entrance into the castle on the plans produced in 1741 and 1755, by which time both the medieval First Gate [405] and its sixteenth century replacement [409] had been demolished. On the 1755 plan it is shown as 'First Castle in ruins'.

It may be the 'brick arch' formed in 1789 referred to by Nichol, but if this is the case then the work must have been a repair or an addition to an existing structure. It was badly cracked and partly rebuilt, again, in 1997, at which time a brick arched walkway inside and over the gateway was removed.

References

Nicolle 1921 : 201; Condition Audit 1996 Vol 2 Part 2; and Dixon & Kennedy 2002b : 3.0/1.

The gateway now serves as the principal entrance into the castle (see plan on 405).



The eighteenth century First Gate, from the north (left) and from the west (right).

414 Assessment of Significance :

- eighteenth century entrance gateway
- in a conserved condition and providing the principal access into the castle
- a significant element of the later military garrison
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

415 STABLE STORE & KIOSK : 1810

Located on the east side of the Outer Ward, against the base of the west wall of the Lower Ward.

It was built as a coal store in 1810 and restored in 1836 to provide a 'stable for the convenience of persons visiting the castle'.

The structure was cleared in 2000. The concrete floor was broken up and the corrugated roof was removed. It was found to have been built of re-used, probably seventeenth century, materials and various used as a coal store and as a stable.

Outer Ward

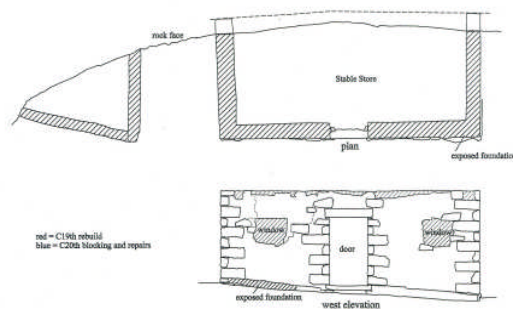


Figure 1
STABLE STORE
Plan and west elevation, showing principal features

Record drawing of the stable and store (after Rodwell 2002 Figure 1).

Described in 2002 as being in poor condition, lacking roof and with the windows blocked.

References

Anon 1838; Dixon & Kennedy 2002b :4.0/1; Rodwell 2002 : 11-12; and Ford 2007 : 19.

It has since been refurbished, extended to the north, and adapted as a new reception and ticket office for the castle. The south wall was pierced for a new door in 2004,

The former stable and store, from the south.



415 Assessment of Significance :

- early nineteenth century coal store and stable
- restored and adapted as a ticket office
- an element of the later military garrison
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

**416 WALL WALK :
circa 1700**

This is located on the top of the west wall of the chemise, which was created in about 1570, and extends throughout its length from the eighteenth century First Gate [414] to Second Gate [301].

Outer Ward

The wall walk is not indicated on Thomas Phillips' plan of 1680 but it does appear to be shown on the plans produced in 1741 and 1755. The most likely explanation is that the wall walk was created when the eighteenth century First Gate was erected in about 1700.



The chemise wall was repaired in 1793, and again between 1797 and 1800.

Reference

Nicolle 1921 : 110.

The wall walk is in good condition but is not accessible to visitors (see plan on 315).

The wall walk, looking north.



416 Assessment of Significance :

- early eighteenth century wall walk
- complete and in good condition, but not accessible for visitors
- a significant element of the later military garrison
- part of the Site of Special Interest
- no management issues identified

1.0.9 ECOLOGY

The principal wildlife habitats associated with Mont Orgueil are exposed rocky surfaces; stone walls; grassy areas; and some patches of scrub.

The habitats themselves are not of high value, in that they are not individually rich or diverse. However, collectively they support a number of species that are rare or uncommon either within Jersey, or in a wider geographical area embracing the British Isles in particular.

A study was prepared in March 2000 in order to provide guidelines on how best to manage the soft landscapes in and around Mont Orgueil, in order to preserve and enhance its role as a wildlife habitat whilst, at the same time, providing a visually pleasing appearance the site (*Penny Anderson Associates 2000*). It considered the site generally as a habitat for plants; wall lizards; invertebrates; bats; birds; and other animals, and then discussed some sixteen specific habitats with proposals for their management.

In March 2006 existing soft landscape plans for several Jersey Heritage Trust-managed properties were reviewed and these included that previously prepared for Mont Orgueil (*Thompson 2006* : 16-21).

PLANTS

The castle is home to more than 130 plant species. These include two species which are included in the British Red Data Book as Nationally Endangered Species, though both are common in Jersey (*Penny Anderson Associates 2000* : 2-5 Fig 2). They are :

Balm-leaved figwort (*Scrophularia scorodonia*) - an erect perennial with a square stem and small reddish/purple flowers, which is found on rocky slopes and in scrub around the castle.



Four-leaved allseed (*Polycarpon tetraphyllum*) - an annual herb growing to about 15 cms in height, commonly found on sandy soils, in coastal areas, and on wasteland. It is native to Europe but rare in Britain, and found in the Channel Islands on rocky walls.



There are four National Scarce Species found amongst the grassy areas of the castle, though they are relatively common in Jersey. They are :

Italian lords-and-ladies	<i>Arum italicum</i>
Musk stork's bill	<i>Erodium moschatum</i>
Bur medick	<i>Medicago minima</i>
Toothed medick	<i>Medicago polymorpha</i>

There are a number of plants to be found at Mont Orgueil which are of particular interest to the island. These include :

Agrimony	<i>Agrimonia eupatoria</i>
Fragrant agrimony	<i>Agrimonia procera</i>
Rigput brome	<i>Anisantha rigida</i>
Prickly sedge	<i>Carex muricata</i>
Wallflower	<i>Erysimum cheiri</i>
Small melilot	<i>Melilotus indicus</i>
Balm	<i>Melissa officinalis</i>
Stern bergia	<i>Sternbergia lutea</i>
Knotted hedge parsley	<i>Torilis nodosa</i>
Milk thistle	<i>Silybum marianum</i>

The castle is also one of the very few sites in Jersey for Pale flax (*Linum bienne*), which grows on a small sloping patch of rough grass opposite the medieval garden, and this was declared a Biodiversity Action Plan species in 2006. Some of the plants growing at Mont Orgueil are believed to have been used by the garrison for medicine, for flavouring, and as dyes.

LICHENS

A survey undertaken in 2001 identified at least fifteen locations within the castle which were particularly important for lower plants. These included exposed rocky surfaces and older stone walls, although it was noted that there had, apparently, been a policy to clean most of the castle structure in the past. Whilst this practice had ceased, it was found that there was a paucity of species on most of the ruins and this supported the view that the flora had suffered over many years from the practice of scrubbing the walls to remove lichens. However, in spite of this, there are areas of the castle which have considerable importance for lichens, and in a few cases bryophytes (Davey 2001).

A large number of species were identified in 2001 and these included a very rare example – *Dirina massiliensis*, which was then known only in two other places in Jersey, but is now believed to have disappeared from Mont Orgueil.¹

Of the remainder, five are UK Nationally Scarce Species :

Roccella phycopsis
Caloplaca maritime
Lecanora andrewii
Lecidea diducens
Parmelia delisei

One is UK Red Data Book Vulnerable : *Acarospora subrufula*

¹ We are grateful to Mike Freeman for this information.

One is a UK Data Deficient Species, which is near extinct :

Pertusaris lactescens

One is rare in Jersey :

Sclerophyton circumscriptum

ANIMALS

Mont Orgueil is the most important location for the only native colonies of wall lizard (*Podarcis muralis*) in the British Isles. They do not occur naturally in Britain, but are a common species on the Continent, and have been isolated in Jersey for centuries.



The large granite blocks provide basking platforms for these small climbing reptiles during the summer and, when temperatures drop during the winter months, the deep crevices become safe, frost-free holes for winter hibernation.

The thriving wall lizard community at Mont Orgueil benefits not only from the shallow crevices in the walls and flowerbeds in which to shelter, but also from deeper crevices for nesting; a population of small invertebrates, such as woodlice, as their food source; and warm soil or crevices in which to lay their eggs between April and July.

The March 2000 study set out the basic requirements for the conservation of wall lizards and their habitats (*Penny Anderson Associates 2000 : 1-2 Fig 1*).

INVERTEBRATES

The varied plant life at Mont Orgueil attracts a number of insects, including the Red Admiral and the Holly Blue butterflies.

Two species found on the site and not found elsewhere in the British Isles are a weevil common in the middle and the south of France – *Sitona discoideus*, and an ant – *Lasius emarginatus*, which is common in Jersey.

Three Red Book Data nationally endangered beetles or ground bugs have also been found on the site – the rove beetle (*Astenus procerus*); the ant-like beetle (*Anthicus tristis*); and the ground beetle (*Peritrechus grocilicornis*), as well as five Nationally Scarce species, which include the cockroach (*Ectobus pollidus*) and the long-winged cone-head (*Canocophalus discolor*).

BATS

No full survey of bat activity has been conducted at Mont Orgueil, though they are protected by Jersey, British, and European Wildlife law.

The castle contains a number of locations suitable for roosting and hibernating, as well as clear flightways for feeding and foraging, although no bats have been seen frequenting the site during casual observation.

A survey of all sites managed by the Jersey Heritage Trust was undertaken in September 2006 and the Jersey Bat Group visited Mont Orgueil in 2007. Bat roosting activity has been confirmed by the presence of bat droppings in the gate chamber of Queen Elizabeth, or Fourth, Gate, and it was noted that other areas looked highly suitable for bat roosts (*Bemment 2006 : 9-11*)².

BIRDS

The castle is an important location for birds migrating between the Continent and England. Some of these species are not seen at any other times in Jersey, and they include warblers, pied flycatchers, goldcrest, firercrest, starlings, and finches. Swifts are known to nest in the roof of the medieval hall and a kestrel pair regularly utilise the high towers and walls (*Penny Anderson Associates 2000 : 8*).

-

SUMMARY

Mont Orgueil thus provides habitat for a range of species of plant, lichen, animals and invertebrates. These include national rarities and species more local in the Jersey context, as well as species for which, in the British Isles, Jersey holds the most important populations.

The Jersey Heritage Trust has prepared and implements a protocol for the conservation of wildlife and ecology when planning or carrying out new works or major repairs, and this allows for an initial desk-based assessment; consultation; and a mitigation strategy (*Thompson 2007*).

² We are grateful to Dr Tim Wright for this information.

1.0.10 USES

In the foregoing sections of the Conservation Plan the natural form of the rocky outcrop has been described (1.0.1) and the development of occupation on it has been traced from the prehistoric period down to the present day (1.0.2 – 1.0.7). These sections have documented the changing roles of the site within the context of early settlement and then, from the early thirteenth century, with the defence of the island of Jersey, particularly against attack from France, and it continued to maintain a military role until 1907.

The existing remains have then been described (1.0.8) and the value of the site as a wildlife habitat has been established (1.0.9).

The purpose of this section of the Plan is to consider the current roles of Mont Orgueil castle as a heritage asset and these have been grouped under the following headings :

- research;
- education and interpretation;
- informal recreation, leisure and tourism;
- inspiration;
- celebration and nostalgia; and
- entertainment and ceremony.

RESEARCH

Although the castle and the previous occupation of the rocky outcrop on which it stands have been the subject of a great deal of study in the past, particularly by Edmund Nicolle (1921), Norman Rybot (1933), Kenneth Barton (1984), Philip Dixon and Jane Kennedy (2002a and 2000b), and Warwick Rodwell (2001a, 2002a, and 2006a), its role as a resource for research is far from exhausted.

The documentary evidence located in the British Isles has mostly been published and made available in an accessible form, principally by Philip Dixon, Michael Jones and Christopher Phillpotts (1998) and Neil Rushton (2001 and 2002).

However, the site itself retains evidence not available in other sources, in the form of buried remains and in the form of standing structures, and these need to be protected from loss or damage without record, until it is appropriate for them to be investigated.

Archaeological investigations in Middle Ward in the 1970s and in the Tudor keep in the 1990s have demonstrated that early levels of occupation of the site occur on these areas, at least, and the topography of the site suggests that they may extend under Grand Battery and onto the land north of the castle, known as Castle Green. These are likely to contain further evidence for Neolithic and Iron Age settlement either on the site or in its immediate vicinity, as well as evidence for the form and early occupation within the medieval castle; evidence for later domestic and public buildings and associated structures in Middle, Outer, and Lower Wards; and evidence for occupation of all periods beyond the existing curtain walls of the castle as a whole.

These deposits need to be protected from damage and regarded as potential for investigation at some future date. Small-scale excavations, such as those initiated by the provision of services, should be avoided whenever possible, as they tend to produce more questions than answers, in favour of larger scale investigations. Non-destructive investigation by means of geophysical survey could be encouraged where appropriate and these might be considered for Castle Green, Grand Battery, and Lower Ward.

Building recording has been conducted extensively within the keep and less extensively elsewhere in the castle. It is an approach to research that can produce significant results and it is certainly important that any proposed repair or conservation works are preceded and accompanied by detailed studies of the fabric, including analysis of the materials.

The results of previous archaeological investigations and building recording have for the most part been published, with the exception of the very early works, and most recently complemented a new overview of the history and architecture of the castle (*Rodwell 2006a*).

Interpretation of the documentary, archaeological, and architectural evidence is ongoing and should be encouraged, along with other research associated with further determining the value of the site as a wildlife habitat.

EDUCATION AND INTERPRETATION

Mont Orgueil provides a resource for the education of people of all ages and abilities, from schoolchildren to adults, on a very wide range of subject material including military history, architecture, art, and ecology.

Whilst some individuals and groups visit the castle to learn about Jersey's past, with an understanding of the events which have taken place on the site and their wider context, others come to study the remains as an architectural monument. Surveys undertaken in the late 1990s indicated the need for improvements to the presentation of the monument and the interpretation of it (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a*: 35).

These aspects of the castle have benefited enormously from the recent refurbishment of the Tudor keep and several other structures, which have been restored to something close to their original arrangement, as these were previously areas which were very difficult to comprehend.

Information is disseminated by means of a range of media which includes an audio-visual presentation; a site museum; information boards; static displays and replicas; guided tours; and a guide book. The Jersey Heritage Trust and the library of the Société Jersiaise also hold copies of more specialist material which can be consulted.

The audio-visual presentation is contained within the undercroft of the Tudor great chamber and presents a history of the castle.

The principal element of the museum is located within the former Gunners' Quarters on the second level of the residential apartments of the Tudor keep and contains a series of showcases containing pottery and other objects found on the site.



The castle museum.

Elsewhere in the castle there are a few other objects on display, and these include the Virgin statue, now in the undercroft of the medieval Great Hall; a display of clay pipes from Jersey; and a collection of coins on the first floor of the Square Keep Tower.



The museum coin collection.

A series of information boards, written in both English and French, are located around the site, and provide up-to-date descriptions either of elements of the castle or of the wildlife associated with it.



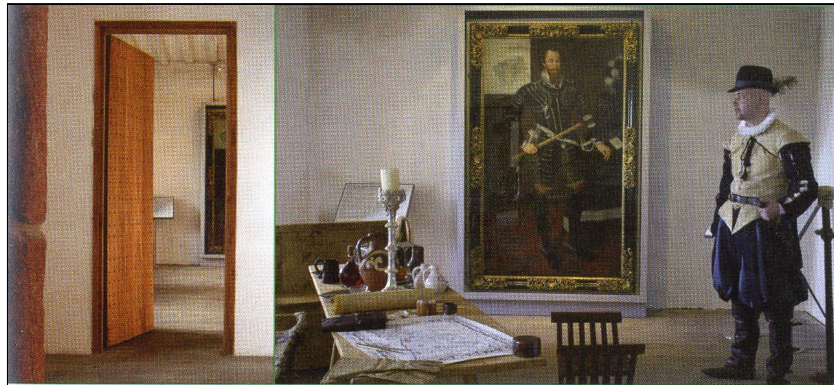
One of the many information boards around the castle.

In addition to the various pieces of artwork that have been inspired by the castle, there are several static displays providing information about its history and occupants. These vary from individual pieces of sculpture in the form of figures, such as a porter in the porter's lodge, through to larger displays pertaining to former governors, such as Sir Walter Raleigh on the second floor of the Square Keep Tower and Sir Anthony Paulet on the fourth floor of the Tudor residential apartments.

The porter in the porter's lodge.



Part of the Sir Walter Raleigh exhibit in the Square Keep Tower.



Part of the Sir Anthony Paulet exhibit in the Tudor apartments.

Replica war machines and cannon also help to bring the castle alive.

A replica of an early type of iron canon, on display in Lower Ward.



Guided tours are conducted by volunteers on behalf of the Jersey Heritage Trust at advertised times and are comprehensive in their nature.

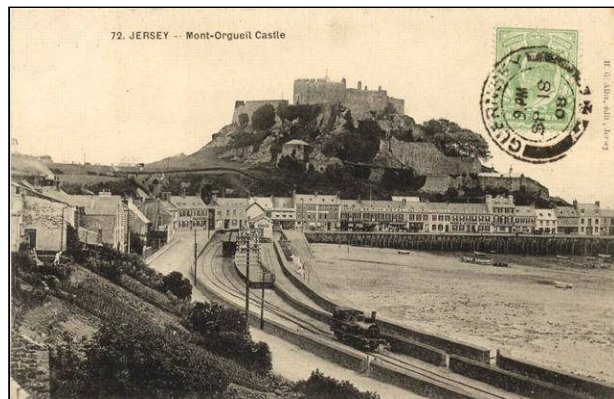
A new souvenir guide book was published by the Trust in 2007, and this includes a history of the castle, a tour of the remains, and a description of the exhibits.

INFORMAL RECREATION, LEISURE, AND TOURISM

In addition to its role in serving the more serious interests in its past, Mont Orgueil is a location which attracts and serves a large number of people who visit the site on a less formal basis. These are people, mostly visitors to the island, who are involved in some form of informal recreation, perhaps walking, cycling, or motoring, or are simply filling time by visiting the castle and the village of Gorey as a leisure activity.

Tourism has long been an important element in the economy of Jersey, which reached its peak in the 1970s. Despite a subsequent decline in visitor numbers, Mont Orgueil is still one of the major tourist destinations on the island and it serves as an icon for tourism in Jersey.

A postcard depicting Mont Orgueil, which is dated 1908.



Tourist visits to the site are served by the interpretation material noted above, along with toilets and a café. The castle also hosts temporary displays relevant to the castle and contemporary times, such as hawking and the use of arms and armour.



A temporary display at the castle.

Tourism is a very important element in the local economy and the castle provides employment and income not only to the site itself but also to the village of Gorey and the island of Jersey as a whole.

INSPIRATION

The ruins of Mont Orgueil castle have been an inspiration to artists for several centuries, initially drawing and painting and then photography.



The castle and harbour, by A. Herbert 1742.



The castle and harbour in the late nineteenth century.

Few visitors to Gorey leave without some form of image of the castle, whether it be their own photograph or an image purchased in one of the local shops. Most favoured of all the views is that from the south, looking across the harbour towards the castle.

Most recently the castle has been the inspiration for a series of exhibits which have been located within the buildings and around the grounds. These have a central theme built around the castle, the medieval world, and Jersey's place in it.

All of the exhibits have been inspired by some aspect of Mont Orgueil, and many portray activities associated with it.

Medieval monarchy – a three-dimensional metalwork sculpture by Brian Fell, now in the medieval great hall, which depicts the complicated family relationship between the kings of France and England in the form of a Tree of Succession.



In addition to exhibits and displays, children are encouraged to re-enact past-times by dressing up in period costume.

CELEBRATION AND NOSTALGIA

Mont Orgueil castle has in the past served as a location for celebration, such as in 1907 when the Governor, acting on behalf of the Sovereign, handed over the keys of the property to the State of Jersey, and more recently in the 1970s when the Siege of Mont Orgueil in 1468 was re-enacted by members of the Sealed Knot.



Handing over the keys in 1907.

This tradition was continued on a large scale, with a re-enactment by the White Company in 1997.

The end of the German occupation of the Channel Islands on the 9th May 1945 is celebrated annually in Jersey as Liberation Day but, whilst the castle was occupied for much of the Second World War by a German garrison, memories appear to be more focussed on other locations on the island.

ENTERTAINMENT AND CEREMONY

Mont Orgueil has on occasions been the location for large scale entertainment, for example in the late 1980s when it hosted Shakespeare productions in association with Jersey Arts Centre, and today it hosts smaller scale entertainment, for example a medieval minstrel and displays of hawking.

During the 2007 season events at the castle included entertainment by Jokers and Jesters; a re-enactment of Soldiers through the Ages; a Secrets and Spies event; and an ancient Laying Down of Arms Ceremony.

Display of hawking in Lower Ward.



The castle has also continued to function as an occasional venue for official events, such as Her Majesty's reception of homage of the Seigneurs in 1987, and for corporate and private functions.

1.1 HISTORICAL OVERVIEW

This section of the Conservation Plan briefly reviews the history of activity and development on the site and highlights the elements of its existing fabric which make it of exceptional interest as a heritage asset.

Until the advent of steam, as opposed to wind or manpower, as the method of propulsion, most maritime travellers stayed close to the coast wherever possible. This made inshore islands, particularly those that are within sight of a mainland such as Jersey, of strategic importance as bridging points for contact, trade, and attack.

The outcrop of rock on which the castle stands is probably the closest and certainly the most prominent part of Jersey visible from mainland France. This is likely to be reflected in the close contacts made with Europe during the Neolithic period, during which contemporaneous occupation occurred in the vicinity of the later castle of Mont Orgueil. Although the earliest evidence for occupation during the Neolithic and Beaker periods may only occur in a re-deposited form on the site, the use of the rocky outcrop as a stone quarry at about the same time suggests that the settlement from which the material derives is likely to have been in the near vicinity.

Even though no actual structures of the Neolithic period may exist on the site later occupied by the castle, the re-deposited material is of considerable significance as it tells us a great deal about some of the earliest settlers on the island and their contacts on the other Channel Islands and on mainland France.

The choice of the site as an Iron Age hillfort is likely to have been based on its strategic location but, unlike the earlier material, at least part of the evidence, the base of the rampart, is *in situ* and evidence suggests that further traces of the earthwork and the occupation associated with it may exist elsewhere on the site, albeit in a truncated form. The form of the structure and the finds associated with it are of considerable importance in understanding the function and date of the site, as well as its significance in relationship to contemporary occupation elsewhere in the Channel Islands; in France; and in southern England.

Apart from the few coins found at or near the castle, no evidence has yet been found for occupation during the Roman period on or near the site, although its strategic location and close proximity to northern France would suggest that it is likely to have been occupied at some stage. This is also true of the earlier medieval periods but, as yet, no documentary or archaeological evidence has been found to indicate occupation of the rocky outcrop immediately prior to the construction of the castle at the beginning of the thirteenth century.

Fortifications have played a leading role in history, from Prehistoric times down to the present day, and surviving examples, whether they are around a settlement or designed to protect a specific route or location, are often the only visual reminder of military activity in the past. Since forms of warfare, hence, methods of attack have changed over a long period of time, the fortifications built to defend against them have also developed in response.

Some fortifications are single-phase structures, built at a specific time against a perceived threat and then abandoned and not used again. Others, such as the string of massive nineteenth century forts around Portsmouth, known as 'Palmerston's follies' were built and never used, their primary objective having been to deter an attack which, as a result, never took place. These now represent 'time capsules' which are of intrinsic interest as indicative of a response to a particular activity or an event.

Fortifications which developed over a long period of time and retain evidence for the changes that were made to them during their active lives, in order to counter improved techniques of warfare and artillery, are of special interest and value because their history can to a greater or a lesser extent be read in their surviving fabric.

The fortifications of the Channel Islands are of special interest because of their strategic location on early trade and invasion routes, and because between them they exhibit, in a relatively small area, a very wide range of structures of differing date and form. The natural occurrence in the area of substantial quantities of good building stone, in the form of granite, has also meant that many of them survive relatively intact.

The two fortifications at Mont Orgueil, on the east coast of Jersey, and Elizabeth Castle, on the south coast, are to some extent complementary in that one succeeded the other as the principal fortification on the island, but the earlier one, Mont Orgueil, continued in use after the other had been built and there was some overlap in their development. The role of both castles in the protection of the island of Jersey was augmented by a number of other fortifications, which include the Jersey Round Towers in 1778-1801; the Martello Towers in 1808-1811; Fort Regent, after it had been completed in 1820; and Victoria Tower, erected in 1837.

The principal period of occupation and defences of Mont Orgueil cover an exceptionally wide date range, from the very beginning of the thirteenth century through to the middle of the seventeenth century. As such, it includes examples of fortifications and associated structures developed over a period of 350 years.

These are complemented by the defences at Elizabeth Castle, commenced at the end of the sixteenth century, which include curtain walls with arrowhead-shaped bastions and steps in alignments, known as redans, and a very wide range of gun emplacements, built down to the German occupation during the Second World War, which accommodated a variety of artillery. Included within the defences are a particularly fine collection of contemporary buildings to accommodate the Governor and garrison, including barracks, magazines, and storehouses.

The choice for the first castle at Mont Orgueil, then intended as the principal defence of the island of Jersey, was an obvious one – a rocky outcrop, enclosed on three sides by sea and steep cliffs, with a natural harbour on the west side, and an uninterrupted view across to mainland France to the east.

It is difficult to be precise about the original form of the castle, built shortly after 1204, due to later rebuilding. However, it is clear that the fortification was designed to make best use of the existing topography and it was not until much later that it became vulnerable to attack from the nearby hilltop of Mont Saint Nicolas following the introduction of artillery to siege warfare.

The early Norman concept of a motte and bailey had mostly been abandoned by the late twelfth century in favour of a free-standing standing stone keep, and the arrangement adopted at Mont Orgueil appears to have been a development of this. It was in the form of a two-storied rectangular great hall or 'donjon' on the summit of the rock, flanked by residential chamber blocks in the form of towers. The form is identified by Philip Dixon as a recognisable group of hall and tower houses (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 17). Its strength lay in its strategic location and it can probably be best seen as a deterrent to potential invaders and as an appropriate symbol for the holder of the dominant authority on the island.

Although there is good evidence for the form of these earliest buildings, little trace has been found of the contemporary structures which would have existed alongside them, perhaps designed to enclose an Upper Ward, as these must have been for the most part removed at a later date. Nevertheless, sufficient survives of the earliest masonry structures, in some cases in a modified form, to indicate the original form of the castle, and they represent an important class of medieval fortification – the hall and tower house.

The next event in the development of the castle was the building in stone of a series of curtain walls, perhaps to replace earlier timber palisades, mostly linking small, square stone gateways and circular or semi-circular towers. These works are likely to have been completed by about 1225, and Philip Dixon has drawn parallels to them in England and Wales (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* :19-20). They appear to have enclosed at least three spaces or *Wards* – *Middle Ward*, *Lower Ward*, and *Outer Ward*, and may also have enclosed an *Upper Ward* or *Keep*, entered by a gateway formed by a pair of round towers.

As with the earlier structures, the remains of this period have subsequently been modified on several occasions, but sufficient survives to indicate their original form. The original First Gate [405] survives only in part. Two of the gates are relatively intact, Second Gate [301] having been restored to something close to its original form, whilst Fourth Gate [201] has been extended and altered several times. The lower sections of four round towers also survive, whilst one other example, Bell Tower [204] survives in something close to its original form. Several sections of original curtain wall also survive, though these will have been refurbished during their operational life.

Several of the structures erected in the thirteenth and fourteenth century contain arrow-loops, reflecting aspects of the form of warfare at that time and prior to the introduction of artillery.

The four Wards of the castle, which appear to have been created at the time of its original construction, continued in use throughout its active life as a military base and survive in a form similar to their original. They appear to preserve aspects of the functional use of different parts of the castle – the Upper Ward or Keep being principally intended as the residence of the Governor and his staff; the Middle Ward being occupied by the garrison; the Lower Ward serving an administrative role, and containing a courthouse and a Viscount's office; and the Outer Ward containing subsidiary buildings for storage and for keeping animals.

The four wards, with their curtain walls, gates, and round towers, are very representative of a pre artillery fortification.

The next series of major alterations to the castle were in response to the introduction of gunpowder and artillery warfare. However, whereas the introduction of muskets and cannon had been introduced in Europe by 1350 and their use was reflected in fortifications built in southern England from about 1380, the first reference to the use of cannon at Mont Orgueil was not until 1462 and the first structure which appears to have been constructed to accommodate cannon appear to have been Harliston Tower, built in about 1470 [407].

Subsequent to this and in response to the threat of possible attack from Mont Saint Nicolas, the castle was refurbished on a number of occasions in the late fifteenth and the sixteenth centuries, with a series of new bastions and batteries all designed to accommodate cannon of a variety of shapes and sizes, at a time when great advances were being made in the technology of artillery warfare. This culminated at Mont Orgueil, in the period 1547-1551, with the construction of the massive Tudor keep and Somerset Tower [111], designed to support Mount Battery [112], which overlooked the nearby hill; the reconstruction of the north-west side of the castle as Grand Battery in the period 1560-1593 [217], and in the period from about 1592-1630 with the construction of Sir John Peyton's Bastion [310].

Many elements of the artillery fortress and its Tudor keep survive and have been restored to something close to their original arrangement. They display a great range of types of gun emplacement and several replica cannon have been mounted on them. Of particular interest amongst these is Cornish bastion, built in 1547-1549 [213], which incorporates arrow slits for long bows from an earlier structure, as well as cross slits for crossbows, musket loops, and several forms of gun port.

The structures associated with the later life of the castle, after the main defences of the island had shifted to Elizabeth Castle, are of some interest, notably the additions made by the De Carteret's in 1648-1650 [311-314].

Mont Orgueil castle thus contains a great range of types of structure specifically designed for defence against attack, principally covering the period from the early thirteenth century through to the mid sixteenth century, during which great advances were made in the technology of warfare, commencing with hand-held weapons and simple projectiles through to muskets and artillery capable of firing over considerable distances. As such, it is a very fine example of its type and an open-air museum for those interested in early fortifications.

In addition it includes some very fine contemporary accommodation, designed for a range of occupants, the higher quality rooms having been reinstated to something close to their original arrangement of spaces.

The history of Mont Orgueil castle is relatively well documented and is, for the most part, well understood. There are, however, a few gaps in knowledge and there are areas where there is still scope for research. These include :

- further understanding of the nature of the Neolithic activities on the site and of the occupation associated with it;
- further understanding the extent of the Iron Age hillfort and the nature of the settlement within it;
- establishing the form of 'lost' elements of the medieval castle, for example under Grand Battery and beyond the northern limits of the existing curtain wall;
- establishing the location, form, and date of structures within Middle Ward, Lower Ward, and Outer Ward; and
- establishing the form, extent, and date of the north-east outworks, Caesar's Fort, and any associated remains on Castle Green.

1.2 ASSESSMENT OF SIGNIFICANCE

Previous sections of the Conservation Plan have identified that Mont Orgueil is of interest for its geology (1.0.1); its archaeology (1.0.2); its medieval and later history and architecture (1.0.3 – 1.0.8); and its ecology (1.0.9), as well as for a range of current uses (1.0.10). This section considers the value of the site as a whole to the community and this is assessed in terms of the cultural, natural, social, and economic contributions that the property makes to the residents of Jersey and visitors to the island.

The **cultural value** of what were already becoming a series of partially abandoned ruins was recognised as early as 1834, when they were first opened to the public and the proceeds were used to tidy up the remains. By 1846 it had become a popular tourist attraction and tea rooms had been created alongside Second Gate.

Visits to the castle benefited from hotel and restaurant development in the village of Gorey from the 1840s; the introduction of the railway from St Helier in 1872; and then the provision of a regular bus service in 1923. However, a military presence still existed for much of this time and it was not until 1907 that the castle was transferred from the Crown to the States of Jersey on condition that it was maintained as a historical monument for public enjoyment and benefit.

The earliest provision for visitors was by means of the introduction of some repairs; some safety measures; and some information, but there were only limited attempts to interpret the remains for visitors. As recently as the 1990s local residents and tourists commented on the need for improvements.

In the *2002 Island Plan* it was one of only four places in Jersey included in a list of sites of special architectural, historic, and landscape value with a potential for designation as a *Conservation Area*.

Mont Orgueil was designated as a *Site of Special Interest* in 2004, by the States of Jersey, and the site has been developed as one of the foremost cultural heritage assets of Jersey and of the Channel Islands.

Its value as a resource for research is far from exhausted and there is considerable potential for further interpretation of the documentary sources and for further investigation on site, both above and below ground level.

The **natural value** of Mont Orgueil lies both in its geology, a locally unique outcrop of dark red granite containing intrusive bands of other igneous rocks, which was quarried in the Neolithic period, and for a series of wildlife habitats that provide for a range of flora and fauna, some of which are of National and/or of local significance.

The geology and ecology of the site attract specialist interests.

The **social value** of the site lies in a range of general interests as well as uses which for the most part have already been described in the Conservation Plan (1.0.10).

The improvements in presentation made by the Jersey Heritage Trust in the past ten years have greatly enhanced the role of Mont Orgueil as a resource for education of people of all ages, ranging from children visiting with local groups and schools or with their parents during holidays, through to adults pursuing specific areas of interest. The subjects covered embrace a very wide range of subject material.

The re-introduction of floor levels in the Tudor keep have greatly improved the interpretation of this part of the castle, in that the uses of the spaces and the circulation between them can now be fully appreciated, whereas previously this was not possible. The use of information boards; the introduction of a new guide book; and the conducting of guided tours all add to the value of the site as a resource for education.

The value of Mont Orgueil as a resource for informal recreation, for leisure, and for tourism is probably its greatest asset, and visits for these purposes generally outnumber those for any other purpose. Visitors with a very general interest in the subject material covered by the castle are catered for in a variety of ways, which include displays and demonstrations.

The visitors to Mont Orgueil who specifically seek inspiration from the site are, perhaps, limited in number, but they include artists and photographers, and have more recently included a range of sculptors. However, many people who visit the castle are inspired by their visit and go on to seek further information on aspects relating to its fabric and history.

The value of Mont Orgueil as a resource for celebration and nostalgia is, perhaps, limited to a small number of specific events, which are re-enacted or remembered.

It also has a value as a venue for entertainment and ceremony, with Lower Ward perhaps providing a space suitable for accommodating a relatively large audience and numerous smaller spaces providing suitable locations for small scale entertaining.

The **economic value** of Mont Orgueil lies both in its direct role in providing employment to local residents and income to the property, which assists with its management and maintenance, and its indirect role in contributing to tourism generally in Jersey.

1.2.1 STATEMENT OF SIGNIFICANCE

The Conservation Plan establishes that Mont Orgueil is of outstanding significance :

- as a fortification which played an important role in the changing political and strategic military history of the island over a period of 700 years;
- as a place designated by the States of Jersey as a Site of Special Interest;
- as an area of special architectural, historic, and landscape value whose appearance is given a high priority in the *2002 Island Plan* by its inclusion in a candidate list of only four places with a potential for designation as a Conservation Area;
- as being built on a locally unique outcrop of dark red granite containing intruded seams of other igneous rocks, which are of geological interest;
- as containing evidence for settlement in the Iron Age and finds which indicate occupation in the vicinity in the Palaeolithic, Neolithic, and Roman periods, providing a resource for archaeological research;
- as providing buried and visible historical evidence of changing circumstances and conditions of the castle, providing a unique resource for archaeological and architectural history research which complements written sources;
- as a wildlife habitat, particularly for the wall lizard and a range of flora and fauna, including several nationally endangered and nationally rare species;
- as a resource for education of people of all ages on a wide range of subjects, but including geology, history, architecture and ecology;
- as a resource for informal recreation and leisure, and an icon for Jersey tourism;
- as a resource for inspiration, particularly painting, drawing, sculpture, and photography;
- as a resource for celebration and nostalgia; and
- as a resource for entertainment and ceremony.

1.2.2 ASSESSMENT OF INDIVIDUAL ELEMENTS

The Conservation Plan has already divided Mont Orgueil into a number of constituent elements, mostly surviving above ground level but including some 'lost' elements of which some remains may survive below ground level. These have already been described (see above 1.0.8) and the descriptions set out for each one an assessment of its significance under the following headings :

- its history;
- an assessment of its fabric;
- its significance;
- its status in statutory terms; and
- management issues deriving from its condition and uses

In view of the very wide nature and date of the remains of Mont Orgueil, it is difficult, if not impossible, to prioritise their individual significance. In historical or architectural terms one might suggest that original or older elements are more significant than later additions and alterations, but this would tend to undervalue the elements which are representative of change through time, and not recognise the range of values to the community.

It is proposed, therefore, to include here some general comments relating to the five headings above and employed in the descriptions as an assessment of significance of individual elements.

HISTORY

One of the special attractions of Mont Orgueil as a heritage asset, in addition to the evidence for Prehistoric occupation, is that it has been extended and altered over a long period of time in order to adjust to the needs of defence against improved techniques of warfare, initially hand-held weapons and simple projectiles through to artillery, and to accommodate the changing needs of the island's Governor and his garrison.

As such, it preserves a great range of defensive elements, commencing with towers, gates, curtain walls, and arrow slits and culminating with gun batteries, bastions, and emplacements and embrasures for cannon. Despite this the overall ground plan of the early castle was not substantially altered after the curtain walls of the Middle Ward, Lower Ward, and Outer Ward were first completed by about 1225.

There are several elements of the early defences that are particularly significant pieces of architecture – notably two of the gates, which survive relatively intact; the base of several round towers and one near complete example; and several sections of curtain wall.

Otherwise it is the great range of improvements made to adapt the castle for artillery warfare that are especially significant, notably the great Tudor tower surmounted by Mount Battery; the various bastions and batteries built to defend the site from attack; and the emplacements and embrasures for cannon either newly built or adapted from earlier structures.

Contained within the curtain walls of the four distinct areas or Wards are a variety of buildings designed to accommodate the Governor, his staff, the garrison, and the supplies and ammunition needed to support them, as well as some locally-important civic buildings.

Whilst several of these are of intrinsic value for their architecture (see below) they represent a very significant group of military buildings. Of particular interest and value are those that carry datestones or coats of arms identifying the person or persons responsible for their construction.

FABRIC

The intention here is to deal not with condition but more with completeness and quality.

Many of the structures at Mont Orgueil were subject to alteration and extension during their working life as part of one of the most important defences of the island, and some demolition took place during the nineteenth century as safety precautions after the site had been opened as a tourist attraction. Most of the structures were the subject to alteration and repair by the Public Works department after responsibility for their maintenance was passed to the States of Jersey in 1907.

Since 1997 the Jersey Heritage Trust has conducted a major programme of restoration and refurbishment, which has included the re-instatement of the forms of the spaces within the Tudor keep, and the majority of structures and buildings on the site are relatively complete and in use, but there are a small number of exceptions. Of these the repair of the north-east outworks is, perhaps, the most pressing need.

SIGNIFICANCE

The comments applied here generally relate to the heritage, educational, and interpretation value of the element in terms of its history and architecture, though it is recognised that significance can relate equally well to other values placed on a component of the castle but the community.

Elements which are particularly indicative of the historical development of the castle can, perhaps, be highlighted as being more significant than those that do not. The simple gateways, round towers, and arrow-loops of the medieval castle contrast with the batteries, bastions, gun emplacements, and gun embrasures of the later artillery fortress.

The castle contains a number of elements, both in the defences and the buildings that they contain, which can be considered to be significant pieces of architecture. These include the medieval great hall and the lodging towers; Second Gate, which has been restored to something close to its original form; Bell Tower which survives in something close to its original form; Fourth Gate which has been altered and refurbished on several occasions; the great Tudor bastion known as Somerset Tower and Mount Battery; and the Tudor great hall or chamber and residential apartments behind it.

The value of restoration and replication – putting back something that has been lost in order to aid interpretation and education, should not be underestimated.

STATUS

The only statutory assignment that has been applied to Mont Orgueil is that it has been designated as a *Site of Special Interest* by the States of Jersey.

The entire castle is included within the Site of Special Interest, along with Castle Green, and the rocky slopes and foreshore down to mean high tide level on the east side. Since SSI status can also be applied to site of ecological and geological significance, designation extends to any wildlife habitats that exist on or within the structures and the rocky outcrops that support them.

MANAGEMENT ISSUES

The individual assessments contained within the descriptions have drawn attention to places where there appears to be scope for further research, investigation, restoration or interpretation.

The Conservation Plan has indicated that the archival sources for the history of Mont Orgueil have already been well researched and the results of that work are for the most part already published and readily available. There is, perhaps, scope for further interpretation of that material.

Work on the Conservation Plan has highlighted the potential for further investigation on the ground, perhaps in a few places by archaeological excavation but mostly by building studies, using the technique now often referred to as fabric analysis or standing buildings archaeology. The preliminary studies undertaken in connection with the preparation of the Conservation Plan have indicated a small number of places where this is generally desirable, for example at the north-east outworks, beneath Grand Battery, within Middle, Lower, and Outer Wards, and on Castle Green.

Work on the Conservation Plan has identified very few places in the castle where further restoration is desirable. The major exception is the north-east outworks where, supported by an analysis of the structures, it should be possible to determine the phasing of the various elements, which include a medieval postern, a tower added in the fourteenth century by John de Roches, an arrow-shaped bastion added in the late sixteenth century, and a 1940s German bunker.

The individual assessments have also indicated areas where there is perhaps scope for additional interpretation, though these are very few in number and, generally speaking, the existing provision is of very high quality.

PART TWO : CONSERVATION POLICY



2.1 INTRODUCTION

The first part of the Conservation Plan provided an understanding of the site (Section 1.0); an historical overview (Section 1.1); and an assessment of significance for the whole castle and elements of it (Section 1.2). Significance was assessed in terms of the cultural, natural, social, and economic values placed on the whole site and on elements of it by the resident community of Jersey and visitors to the island.

This second part of the Conservation Plan is designed to indicate how the various individual values placed on the site are *vulnerable* to loss or damage (Section 2.2) and what *issues* have affected the significance of the site in the past, and what conflicts affect it now, or may affect it in the future (Section 2.3).

The Plan then proposes a series of *Conservation Plan Policies* (Section 2.4) which, when applied to proposals, should resolve those conflicts and ensure that the range of interests in Mont Orgueil are protected and, wherever possible, enhanced for public enjoyment and benefit.

The policies are set down to provide a framework for the Trust's decision-making and the evaluation of proposals affecting the significance of the site. They seek to :

- Preserve and enhance the significance of the historical remains; the wildlife habitats; the geological interests; and the character and setting of the site for future generations, and ensure that they are conserved in strict accordance with international best practice;
- Guide management proposals for the preservation and future development of the site as a heritage and educational asset;
- Provide a benchmark against which to assess the likely impact of proposals which might affect the setting of the castle and its contribution to the local landscape; and
- Ensure that the site can survive as a sustainable heritage asset for the foreseeable future.

The *Conservation Plan Policies* (Section 2.4) recognise that the Jersey Heritage Trust has not only a legal responsibility to comply with all existing legislation, which for the most part is concerned with preservation and conservation, but that the Cession of Usufruct, by which it manages the site on behalf of the States of Jersey, also requires that the site is developed as a long-term sustainable asset for public benefit.

2.2 VULNERABILITY

The **cultural values** of Mont Orgueil lie in its long associations with the history of the States of Jersey and the conflicts between England, France and, latterly, Germany, which are reflected in its fabric, as well as its landscape contribution to Gorey and the east coast of the island, and its role as a resource for research into architectural history, archaeology, geology, and ecology.

The castle was the primary means of defence of the island for a period of close to four hundred years, from *circa* 1205 to 1600, and it preserves the remains of three principal elements in the development of its fortifications – the early thirteenth century hall and tower house; the later medieval curtain walls, gates and round towers of at least three and possibly four Wards; and the bastions, batteries, towers and gun emplacements of the fifteenth and sixteenth century artillery fortress.

However, its interests do not end there, as it continued to operate as a military establishment for a further three hundred years and it was altered and adapted on several occasions during that period. Elements of all periods of its active life as a castle, as an artillery fortress, and as a military garrison are of cultural value as they reflect the attempts made to adapt the property for contemporary armaments, changes in methods of warfare, and the needs of the occupants.

The historic fabric is vulnerable to *neglect*, through lack of maintenance and vegetation growth. Roofs and walls need to be kept in good repair and plants need to be managed so that their roots do not cause damage to the standing fabric.

The *historical integrity* of Mont Orgueil is vulnerable to the use of inappropriate materials or methods of repair and to restoration works or new developments that are not sympathetic to the original fabric, its history, and its setting.

The castle makes a major contribution to the *local landscape* and the 2002 *Island Plan* has recognised this by including Mont Orgueil and Gorey Pier as one of only four areas on Jersey proposed for designation as a Conservation Area. Conversely the *setting* of the castle is important to its integrity and attraction as an historic asset.

There was no development on the land immediately to the west of the castle until Pier Road, now Gorey Pier, was created in 1821 and the properties here, mostly hotels, restaurants, and shops, have been restricted to two or three storeys in height, plus attics. The facades are mostly painted render and provide a quite attractive and acceptable contrast to the towering granite remains of the castle behind them.

However, both the local landscape and the setting of the castle are vulnerable to inappropriate development. It has been noted that individual housing developments have been permitted alongside Castle Green, to the detriment of the setting of the castle from the north-west. Alterations have also been permitted to the buildings along the road known as Gorey Pier, which have included the replacement of traditional windows with modern versions, and these are intrusive in what is probably the best known view of the castle and one of the best-known views on the island.

The remains of the castle are an important resource for *research*. They are all vulnerable to change, particularly those involving structural alterations to the fabric or disturbance to the ground, for example for new development, the installation of services, or the erection of temporary structures. Structural and buried evidence for the history of the castle and for the earlier activities on the site could be lost without record.

The **natural values** of Mont Orgueil lie in the fact that it is built on a locally unique outcrop of red granite, with seams of other igneous rocks, which was quarried for building stone as early as the Neolithic period, and for the range of wildlife habitats that it supports on exposed rocky surfaces; stone walls; grassy areas; and some patches of undergrowth.

The rocky outcrop is suffering some erosion due to wave action and weathering, but it is unlikely to be affected by works associated with the castle, unless they involved large scale excavation, though evidence for past quarrying activities may exist which warrant recording.

The *wildlife habitats* are vulnerable to loss or damage, particularly where changes involve the repair of stone walls or the removal of vegetation.

The **social values** of the site lie in a range of general interests and uses, of which education and tourism are the most dominant and most important.

The value of the site for these purposes is vulnerable to lack of access or facilities; inappropriate or poor presentation; and lack of adequate interpretation.

As a result of the improvements made by the Jersey Heritage Trust since 1997, all these aspects have been addressed. The site is well-presented and there are adequate facilities to service visitors. However, standards need to be maintained; circumstances need to be monitored; and there a few small areas deserving of improvement.

The **economic value** of Mont Orgueil lies in its ability to provide employment for local residents, both directly at the castle and indirectly in the adjacent village of Gorey, and to provide income to both help maintain the property and to support tourism to the island of Jersey.

The value of the site for this purpose is vulnerable to change, particularly reductions in numbers of paying visitors or in other means of financial support for the property.

2.3 ISSUES

This section of the Conservation Plan highlights some of the issues that arise from the application of present values to works undertaken in the past, and conflicts that exist now or may occur in the future.

Many of these issues derive from changing attitudes towards the extent of preservation of historic fabric; changing approaches to repair and restoration; an improved methodology for balancing the needs of wildlife and building conservation; and developing views concerning the need for improved interpretation to aid education, visitor enjoyment and, hence, sustainability.

The biggest issue that has affected the historical integrity of the remains of Mont Orgueil is the extent to which younger fabric has been removed in order to reveal and restore older fabric. As Philip Dixon pointed out, whilst the significance of the castle is in some part due to its striking appearance on the outcrop of rock adjoining Gorey harbour, its importance in detail lies in its display of the frequent changes of design, all directed towards a single end – the defence of Jersey from the beginning of the thirteenth century through to the middle of the twentieth century (*Dixon & Kennedy 2002a* : 64).

It is for this reason that all the alterations made to the castle for armaments and occupation during its period of active use as a fortification, and this includes adaptations made as recently as during the First and the Second World Wars, are of historical interest, despite the fact that each alteration may have destroyed or obscured earlier structures.

For example, the removal of the external staircase to the Tudor apartments in 1911 was made in the belief that it was not of historical significance, though it is now known that it was constructed in about 1700 whilst the castle was still in active use as a fortification.

There has also been a conflict in the past caused by the desire to restore structures back to an earlier or an original form. This was, for example, the case with the Second Gate, leading into Lower Ward, which had a long history of alteration from its first construction in the early thirteenth century down to the nineteenth century. During the early twentieth century 'restoration' most of the earlier additions were removed, including the wall inserted into the former opening at the rear of the three-sided gate tower in the fourteenth or early fifteenth century; the probable sixteenth century gun post on the roof; and the gabled roof and windows added in about 1800 to provide accommodation in the upper levels. All these additions were part of the history of the castle and have been lost, whilst the gateway has been restored to a form in which it never existed because the vaulting, also added in the fourteenth or early fifteenth century, has been retained.

Attitudes have now changed and the approach adopted by most heritage organisations is that all fabric is part of the history of a structure. If later additions are removed it is only after extensive research and consultation, and after the feature has been fully investigated and recorded.

Approaches to conservation of ruined structures are now well-founded and employ like-for-like materials and methods; evidence based on thorough research; and reversibility where modern materials are used as an expedient.

It is also recognised widely that there is a need to balance tourism with conservation, usually restricting access or visitor numbers to sensitive areas and by protecting historic surfaces.

In the case of restoring lost elements in order to aid access or interpretation, issues of conflict can arise if doubts are placed in the mind of the visitor as to whether the feature is original or a replacement of an original, although it is accepted that replication is desirable in order to assist with interpretation and education. The wholesale restoration of lost elements should, ideally, only be conducted when there is very good reason to do so; where there is good evidence for the restoration; and where the visitor is left in no doubt as to what is original and what is modern.

The restoration of the Tudor keep by the Jersey Heritage Trust, for example, fulfilled all these requirements – it was desirable to protect internal surfaces which were exposed to the elements; it was vital for the interpretation of the structure; it was fully researched; and the results of that research have been made available.

Conflicts have arisen in the past between the needs of repair and of wildlife conservation, particularly between the consolidation of masonry walls and the desire to preserve plants growing on them and the habitats of animals frequenting small openings and cracks. The issues have derived partly from the desire to present ruins in a pristine condition, with vegetation, such as ivy, being seen as intrusive and damaging to the fabric. However, attitudes have changed and current philosophy allows for a reasonable balance to be established, with some vegetation growth on and around ruined structures to allow for wildlife conservation and the preservation of ruins in a more romantic setting.

It has been recognised for some time that heritage attractions need to be developed, particularly with improved interpretation, in order to aid education and public enjoyment, and thus maintain or increase visitor numbers in a competing market, and ensure sustainability. Development, which may take on a range of forms, does itself raise issues, particularly those concerned with historical integrity and inappropriate intrusions.

A careful balance needs to be struck between what is acceptable and what is not. The re-instatement of the rooms of the Tudor keep at Mont Orgueil resulted from extensive research and discussion, which ensured that not only did it re-establish the forms of the original spaces but it provided for a vast improvement to the interpretation of the upper part of the castle.

Substantial increases in visitor numbers to heritage attractions can result in over-use and damage. This is unlikely to be the case generally at Mont Orgueil, as the site is spread over a relatively large area, but there are a few small areas or 'pinch points', such as the original spiral staircases, which could suffer from excessive use and wear, and these need to be monitored.

Visitor enjoyment could also be adversely affected if the site were to be overwhelmed by tourists, and this could become an issue. It is unlikely to be the case at Mont Orgueil, for the reasons given above, other than at peak times or for special events. However, the situation needs to be monitored and consideration given to the management of 'dwell times' – ie the actual length of time that visitors are present on the site, which is usually a reflection of 'entertainment value'.

In order to ensure a sustainable future for Mont Orgueil, and thus not only provide for the maintenance and management of the castle but also support the local economy, the Jersey Heritage Trust needs to secure a regular income from grant support, from visitors, and from whatever other means they have at their disposal. This should not raise any serious issues unless the means of raising the funding has a detrimental affect on the fabric, integrity, or setting of the castle.

2.4 CONSERVATION PLAN POLICIES

Part One of the Conservation Plan set out an understanding of the site (Section 1.0) and its value to the community (Sections 1.1 and 1.2). The foregoing sections of this part of the Plan have indicated how some of those values are vulnerable to change (Section 2.2) and what conflicting issues may arise between them (Section 2.3).

This section of the Conservation Plan sets out a series of policies which are intended to ensure an adequate balance between all the values placed on the site during its ongoing management and in any future proposals to develop it – for the purposes of the Plan the Jersey Heritage Trust intends the term development to include repair, restoration, interpretation, and the provision of facilities to encourage and improve public enjoyment and sustainability.

The policies set out the Jersey Heritage Trust's commitment to conserving Mont Orgueil as a heritage asset, to the highest possible standards, whilst securing maximum benefit to the community, which is the basis of the grant of *usufruct* by the States of Jersey.

The policies are grouped under four headings reflecting the cultural, natural, social, and economic values placed on the property by the local community and visitors to the island –

Cultural Policies (CP1 – CP10) deal with the value of the historic fabric of the castle; its setting and contribution to the local landscape; and its role as a resource for historical, archaeological, and architectural research.

Natural Policies (NP1 – NP3) deal with its value as a site of geological interest and as a wildlife habitat.

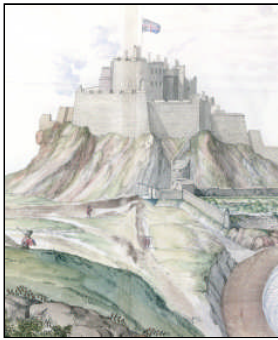
Social Policies (SP1 – SP8) deal with the value of the site as a more general resource for education, tourism, inspiration, and entertainment.

Economic Policies (EP1 and EP2) deal with the value of the site to the local economy.

Each policy is supported by a reason or reasons for its employment in the Plan, and some recommendations for implementation are also provided.

The place name Mont Orgueil is used in the policies to refer to the area occupied by the visible remains of the castle; the area to the north-west, known as Castle Green, which contains buried remains of the castle; and the red granite outcrop on which the remains of the castle stand.

CULTURAL POLICIES (CP1 – CP10)



The policies in this group seek to ensure compliance with international and States of Jersey laws, planning policies, principles, guidelines, and best practice concerning the conservation and development of Mont Orgueil.

POLICY CP1 : To conserve, repair, maintain and, wherever possible, enhance the remains of Mont Orgueil in accordance with international conservation laws, policies, principles, and best practice.

Reason : The buildings and archaeological remains on the site are of international significance and it is important that the highest possible standards are applied to their restoration and maintenance.¹

There are a plethora of policies, principles, and guidelines for the care of heritage sites and these are set out in a range of international documents. Clear policies for repair and restoration are set out in the international *Venice Charter* (1964) and the ICOMOS specialist charters, in particular the Australian ICOMOS *Burra Charter* (1979 – revised in 1981 and 1988), whilst the *Convention for the Protection of the Architectural Heritage of Europe* (Granada 1988) and the *European Convention on the Protection of Archaeological Heritage* (Valetta 1992), both signed by the States of Jersey, are more concerned with sustainable access and interpretation.

The legislation and planning policy guidelines applying to Scheduled Ancient Monuments, Listed Buildings, and Conservation Areas in the UK² can be considered as setting out codes of good practice, but are not statutory in Jersey, whilst English Heritage's advisory publication on understanding historic buildings makes a series of valuable suggestions.³

The States of Jersey is also committed to wildlife conservation and it has signed up to various international treaties and conventions, including those concerned with bats; migratory species of wild animals; and European wildlife and natural habitats.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP1.1 Ensure that staff of the Jersey Heritage Trust and its advisors are familiar with the relevant international practice and guidelines pertaining to sites of this type and seek to apply them to Mont Orgueil whenever it is appropriate to do so.

¹ For the purposes of this policy, the term enhance is used to describe restoration, reconstruction, and re-creation.

² *Ancient Monuments and Archaeological Areas Act* (1979); *Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act* (1990); and *Planning Policy Guidance (PPG) 15 : Planning and the Historic Environment* (1994).

³ Clark K 2001 *Informed Conservation*.

POLICY CP2 : To meet legal and statutory requirements having regard to the Jersey Heritage Trust's obligations to the States of Jersey to comply with the Island's laws; with policies contained in the Island Plan; and with supplementary planning guidance.

Reason : The Trust is legally obliged to satisfy these requirements in respect to the transfer to it of responsibility, by *usufruct*, for the management of the site.

The *Planning and Building (Jersey) Law 2002* is the law controlling development on the island. It contains a number of relevant provisions, including Articles 50-56 which apply to Sites of Special Interest.

The policies pertaining to *sites of special interest*, *archaeology*, and *registered historic buildings* in the *Island Plan* (2002 Policies G11, G12, and G13) are relevant, as also will be that pertaining to *conservation areas* if an area adjacent to or including Mont Orgueil is designated at some future date (Policy BE9).

Planning Policy Note 1 : Archaeology and Planning (2007) is also applicable to the site.

The *Conservation of Wildlife (Jersey) Law 2000* affords protection to the ecology of the island and has been supplemented by a *Biodiversity Strategy*, Policy C3 in the *Island Plan*; and by *Draft Supplementary Planning Guidance on the Natural Environment*.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP2.1 Satisfy local planning requirements, and particularly policies relating to sites of special interest, archaeology, registered historic buildings, and biodiversity.

CP2.2 Comply with local building bye-laws as far as they are relevant.

CP2.3 Comply with Health and Safety at Work (Jersey) Law (1989).

CP2.4 Comply with provisions of environmental health legislation and, for public events, the licensing laws.

CP2.5 Comply with the Jersey Heritage Trust's policies concerning access for people with disabilities.

POLICY CP3 : To seek to preserve the setting of Mont Orgueil and the contribution that it makes to the landscape.

Reason : The setting of the castle and the relatively uninterrupted views of it from all sides are important to its historical integrity, whilst it makes the major contribution to the local landscape and character of that part of Gorey village known as Gorey Pier.

Inappropriate development either on the castle site or in its immediate vicinity could have a detrimental effect on the heritage value of the property and its contribution to the surrounding area.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP3.1 Encourage and support proposals for the designation of Gorey Pier and its immediate environs as a Conservation Area.

CP3.2 Ensure that any proposals for permanent alterations to Mont Orgueil and the approaches to it are not visually intrusive to the site and the locality.

CP3.3 Oppose any proposals for new development, redevelopment, or alterations to existing buildings in the vicinity of Mont Orgueil which would have a harmful effect on the setting of the site.

POLICY CP4 : To ensure that the structural remains of Mont Orgueil are adequately maintained.

Reason : Unless the remains are adequately maintained they will deteriorate, causing loss of historic fabric and integrity.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP4.1 Undertake regular condition audits of the buildings and the land associated with them, preferably on a four- or five-year cycle.

CP4.2 Identify and deal with any repairs that are considered urgent.

CP 4.3 Prepare an on-going maintenance strategy, with annual programmes of repair and a phased maintenance schedule, for all the buildings and for the soft landscapes associated with them.

CP4.4 Seek to ensure adequate funding for the works.

POLICY CP5 : To ensure that all repair works and any new development are specified, supervised, and undertaken by professional consultants and appropriately experienced contractors.

Reason : All works associated with historic buildings are specialist in their nature and they are liable to be damaged both physically and in their integrity by repairs or new works that are inappropriate in their design, use of materials, or form of construction.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP5.1 Employ professional staff and consultants to prepare specifications and to supervise all works.

CP5.2 Employ appropriately skilled contractors and craftsmen with experience of conservation work for all repairs.

POLICY CP6 : To make decisions concerning repair and restoration based on the best available information about the original fabric and form of the structure.

Reason : The historical integrity of the castle, or parts of it, could be adversely affected by the use of inappropriate materials or the inaccurate representation of lost features.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP6.1 Undertake appropriate levels of research prior to the commencement of repairs or restoration works. This might include archaeological recording of standing fabric and some excavation, to determine its original form and the extent of later alterations (see also CP9), and the specialist study of materials.

CP6.2 If any new works are proposed which might adversely affect historic fabric, seek to mitigate those affects either by a change of design or, as a last resort, by recording historic fabric before it is removed.

POLICY CP7 : To employ the most appropriate materials and methods of construction in all repairs and works of restoration.

Reason : The use of inappropriate materials and methods will adversely affect the historical integrity of the site and be damaging to its role as a heritage asset.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP7.1 Whenever possible, use traditional, like-for-like, materials and methods for all repairs and restoration works. It may be necessary to employ the use of specialist materials, such as lime mortars, and conservation repairs techniques which may not be available on Jersey. For these reasons it may sometimes be necessary to source materials and craftsmen with appropriate skills outside Jersey.

CP7.2 The use of modern materials as an expedient during repair is not considered good practice, and it is understood that any such works are unlikely to receive Site of Special Interest consent for their use. However, if no alternative course of action is available then they should be capable of being removed without damage to the historic fabric.

POLICY CP8 : To ensure that historic fabric, both standing and buried below the surface, and the historical integrity of the castle are not adversely affected by new development or the provision of services.

Reason : The historical integrity of the site could be harmed by the construction of new buildings and the provision of services could damage standing fabric or buried remains. Services are needed through the site for a range of purposes and many of these are subject to renewal at regular intervals.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP8.1 Wherever possible, additional accommodation should be provided within existing structures and new buildings should be avoided.

CP8.2 Maintain and implement a strategy whereby services are installed with a minimal loss of historic fabric and in routes where they are accessible for future work. In practice this may mean that cables and pipes will be surface mounted in historic buildings, except where they can be laid within modern floor structures or in other accessible voids or ducts, but they should be as unobtrusive as possible.

POLICY CP9 : To protect the architectural and archaeological fabric of Mont Orgueil as a resource for research, and promote interest in its study.

Reason : The standing fabric of the castle and the remains buried under the surface are important sources of information pertaining to the past uses of the site and the sequence of construction on it. It is important that these sources are protected from loss or damage until such time as it is considered appropriate that they should be properly investigated.⁴ If historic fabric is encountered during development it needs to be properly recorded along with any modern repairs, interventions, or restoration works.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP9.1 Encourage scholarly interest in the study of the castle and the site which it occupies. This could be achieved by permitting non-destructive investigations such as building recording, for example on the gates and on the north-east outworks, and geophysical surveys in appropriate areas, such as in the Lower Ward, on Grand Battery, and on Castle Green.

CP9.2 Small scale archaeological excavations should be avoided wherever possible, unless they are evaluations undertaken as a precursor to development or the provision of underground services.

CP9.3 Allow for an archaeological watching brief during significant repairs or ground disturbance, in accordance with the standards set out by the Institute of Field Archaeologists.

CP9.4 Ensure that a record is made of all alterations to the fabric and that this is deposited in an appropriate archive.

CP9.5 Archaeological investigations should not be permitted until adequate provision has been made for ensuring that they can be undertaken to the best possible standards, in accordance with the standards set out by the Institute of Field Archaeologists. and that objects and structures recovered can be adequately conserved.

⁴ The provisions of the *Island Plan* (2002 paras 4.35-4.39 and Policy G12) apply here, as also do the policies contained in *Planning Policy Note 1 : Archaeology and Planning* (2007 HE1-HE3).

POLICY CP10 : To encourage the dissemination of information pertaining to the history, architecture, and archaeology of Mont Orgueil.

Reason : Information relating to the site which has been derived from archival and on-site research is only of value to the community if it is made available in a readily-accessible form.

Recommendations for implementation :

CP 10.1 Support the publication of material relating to the history, architecture, and archaeology of the site.

CP10.2 Ensure that original archival material and copies of relevant studies and investigations are deposited in an accessible location or several locations.

NATURAL POLICIES (NP1-NP3)



The policies in this group seek to ensure the protection of the geological and wildlife interests on the site and encourage interest in them.

POLICY NP1 : To seek to protect the geology of Mont Orgueil and its early use as a quarry for building stone from unnecessary loss or damage.

Reason : The outcrop of red granite is locally unique and is of interest for its geology and its exploitation as a source of building stone for a nearby burial chamber in the Neolithic period.

Recommendations for implementation :

NP1.1 Avoid any unnecessary disturbance to the natural outcrop of granite during building works.

NP1.2 Allow for the investigation of any areas of bedrock exposed during groundworks in order to study and record the geology and any evidence for early exploitation of it as a source of building stone.

POLICY NP2 : To protect and enhance the value of Mont Orgueil as a wildlife habitat.

Reason : The site is of modest value as a wildlife habitat, but it does host some rare species which need to be protected and encouraged.

Recommendations for implementation :

NP2.1 Undertake additional wildlife surveys in order to establish the extent and range of habitats that exist on the site, for example to determine whether it is used for roosting or hibernation by bat populations.

NP2.2 Monitor and protect existing habitats from unnecessary damage during normal visitor activities; routine maintenance of the fabric and vegetation; and during any proposed repairs or new development.

NP2.3 Implement the proposals and mitigation strategies proposed in the management plan for the soft landscapes, prepared by Penny Anderson Associates.

NP2.4 Enhance existing habitats, for example by encouraging vegetation growth in areas where it will not be damaging to the fabric of the castle or its setting.

POLICY NP3 : To encourage interest in the natural values of Mont Orgueil.

Reason : The site is of some geological and wildlife interest but, since these are not the most prominent reasons why the site is valued, this may not be known to the majority of visitors or to those who have a more specific interest in these subjects. Unless these values are brought to the attention of the local and the visiting community the site will not achieve its full educational and public interest potential.

Recommendations for implementation :

NP3.1 Draw attention, by means of displays, to the geological and wildlife interest of the site.

NP3.2 Encourage the use of the site by individuals or specialist interest groups.

SOCIAL POLICIES (SP1 – SP8)



The policies in this group seek to protect the range of general values placed on the site by the local community and visitors to the island.

POLICY SP1 : To promote and stimulate interest in Mont Orgueil as a venue for informal recreation, leisure, and tourism.

Reason : Although Mont Orgueil is one of the best-known heritage attraction on Jersey, the site needs to be advertised and promoted in order to maintain visitor numbers and ensure sustainability.

Recommendations for implementation :

SP1.1 Prepare and distribute promotional material within the island; in the remainder of the Channel Islands; and in the remainder of Europe.

SP1.2 Promote Mont Orgueil as a target destination for recreation and leisure activities, such as walking, cycling, and motoring.

SP1.3 Encourage the use of the site by specialist interest groups.

POLICY SP2 : To further develop the presentation and interpretation of the site for the benefit of all visitors.

Reason : To ensure that the visitors' experience is enjoyable; that a genuine understanding of the site is possible; and that repeat visits are encouraged.

Recommendations for implementation :

SP2.1 Undertake restoration and interpretation of the few elements of the castle that have not already been enhanced, for example the north-east outworks.

SP2.2 Maintain the existing, high standards of presentation and interpretation elsewhere on the site by refreshing and updating information at appropriate times.

SP2.3 Continue to host specialist temporary displays that are relevant to the castle and activities associated with it.

SP2.4 Encourage repeat visits by arranging new exhibitions and by promoting special events.

POLICY SP3 : To seek to improve access to Mont Orgueil, and information pertaining to it, for people of the widest possible range of physical ability.

Reason : Physical access to the site is desirable for people of all ages and abilities and it needs to be compliant with all relevant guidelines. It is accepted, however, that there are parts of the site where access is currently restricted due to constraints which may be difficult to overcome, for example the spiral staircases giving access to the upper level of the Keep.

Modern presentational techniques, such as video, can be used to good effect to provide access for people visiting the site who have physical disabilities or use can be made of the Internet for those who are unable to visit the site.

Recommendations for implementation :

SP3.1 Ensure that the two main accesses to the castle are well advertised and that there is adequate information at Gorey Pier in order to guide visitors to them.

SP3.2 Encourage the use of the access from Castle Green by people who are unable to utilise the steps at the south end of the site. Consider employment of a golf buggy-type vehicle to provide access to it.

SP3.3 Review provision on the site for access by all people, especially those with disabilities.

SP3.4 Consider alternative access provision where the integrity of the fabric cannot support alteration to provide easy access.

SP3.5 Consider provision of interpretation material in Lower Ward, perhaps a video located in the cafeteria, for people unable to gain access to the upper levels of the castle.

SP3.6 Consider provision of tactile models and maps, as well as taped descriptions, for visitors who are visually impaired.

SP3.7 Include a video description of the site on the Jersey Heritage Trust website.

POLICY SP4 : To encourage the use of Mont Orgueil as a resource for education of people of all ages and intellect.

Reason : Visitors seeking to be educated at some level at Mont Orgueil represent a significant percentage of overall numbers. If there is insufficient information available on the site or available on request, and this includes that contained on information boards, audio-visual presentations, guide books, publication and specialist reports, they will be disappointed and may not advise others of the value of the site for this purpose.

Recommendations for implementation :

SP4.1 Provide adequate up-to-date on-site interpretation in the form of multi-lingual information boards, one or more audio-visual presentation, and a guide book.

SP4.2 Provide child-friendly material suitable for distribution to individual children and for use in education packs for teachers.

SP4.3 Operate an educational service for local and visiting schools, to include material that can be loaned out and special introductory courses for teachers.

SP4.4 Encourage the use of Mont Orgueil for exhibitions and craft displays, which are relevant to the castle, and for historical re-enactments.

SP4.5 Continue to recruit suitably qualified guides and conduct guided tours of the castle at appropriate times.

SP4.6 Consider the introduction of a classroom or meeting room where groups of children or adults can be assembled, without interruption, for teaching purposes.

SP4.7 Support the production of studies and reports pertaining to the history of the castle and make them available either as hard copy or on the Trust's website.

POLICY SP5 : To provide adequate facilities for the comfort of visitors to Mont Orgueil.

Reason : Visitors to Mont Orgueil expect certain levels of provision at the castle in order to make their stay comfortable. However, these need to have regard for the length of time that visitors are likely to spend on site and the facilities available alongside Gorey harbour and in Gorey village.

Recommendations for implementation :

SP5.1 Maintain and enhance the entrance and information kiosk in order to ensure that visitors are welcomed and made aware of the facilities on the site.

SP5.2 Ensure that there are adequate toilet facilities on the site and that they are well maintained.

SP5.3 Continue to operate the cafeteria so that visitors may avail themselves of light refreshments without leaving the site.

SP5.4 Provide casual seating at appropriate locations on the site for visitors wishing to take a short rest.

POLICY SP6 : To encourage the use of Mont Orgueil as a resource for inspiration, particularly the visual arts.

Reason : The ruined castle has provided subject material for artists and photographers in the past and, more recently, it has inspired sculptors to prepare the wide range of related exhibits that are located around the site. Enhancing its role in this area will add to its value to the community.

Recommendations for implementation :

SP6.1 Continue to encourage the use of Mont Orgueil as a teaching venue for painting and photography.

SP6.2 Continue to hold temporary exhibitions of painting, photography, and sculpture, particularly of subjects which have been inspired by the castle and its history.

POLICY SP7 : To maintain and develop Mont Orgueil as a place for celebration and nostalgia.

Reason : The castle has played a leading role in the history of Jersey and it is appropriate that it should be used as a venue for the celebration of significant events of the past and to remember which were less joyous.

Recommendations for implementation :

SP7.1 Continue to retain and, if necessary, develop a part or parts of the site to accommodate gatherings of people.

SP7.2 Continue to organise regular celebratory events.

POLICY SP8 : To maintain and develop Mont Orgueil as a venue for entertainment and ceremony.

Reason : The castle has hosted various forms of entertainment in the past as well as playing a significant role in island life. It is appropriate that it should continue to serve these functions.

Recommendations for implementation :

SP8.1 Continue to retain and, if necessary, develop a part or parts of the site to accommodate staged events and an audience.

SP8.2 Continue to organise concerts and dramatic performances to take place in the castle grounds or allow the site to be used for these purposes by others.

SP8.3 Continue to provide accommodation and services at the castle for States function.

SP8.4 Continue to secure the necessary certification to perform wedding ceremonies and provide a place where these might take place.

SP8.5 Continue to offer the castle as a venue for private parties and for corporate functions.

ECONOMIC POLICIES (EP1 and EP2)



The policies in this group seek to ensure that Mont Orgueil can continue as a sustainable heritage asset for the foreseeable future and contribute to the local economy.

POLICY EP1 : To manage and develop Mont Orgueil as a sustainable heritage asset to the benefit of the local community and visitors to the island.

Reason : Unless sufficient income can be derived from grant aid, admission fees, sales, and rental from ancillary uses, it will prove difficult to manage and maintain the property in an appropriate manner.

Recommendations for implementation :

EP1.1 Prepare management proposals for repairs, restoration, and new development based on available funding.

EP1.2 Manage the property in a way which maximises income from all existing sources.

EP1.3 Seek sponsorship for any new capital projects.

EP1.4 Seek to identify and secure additional sources of revenue income.

POLICY EP2 : To seek to ensure that Mont Orgueil can continue to provide employment directly, and contribute to the local economy of Jersey for the foreseeable future.

Reason : The property is currently managed by a mixture of paid staff, sub contracted staff, and volunteers. It not only provides employment but also contributes to the local economy by serving as the major tourist attraction at Gorey and as an icon for tourism in Jersey. Unless the property is well managed, presented, and advertised these contributions could be eroded.

Recommendations for implementation.

EP2.1 Seek to work closely with the local community of Gorey to ensure a good working relationship with local hotels and shop owners.

2.5 IMPLEMENTATION AND REVIEW

The Jersey Heritage Trust intends to implement the Conservation Plan Policies during its current management of Mont Orgueil and comply with them during any future proposals to conserve and develop the site.

It is also the intention that the policies should be reviewed at appropriate times in order to ensure compliance with changing circumstances, changing approaches to conservation and display, and changing visitor patterns.



REFERENCES AND BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Anon 1838 *Some Account of Mont Orgueil Castle in the island of Jersey, its present state, its various alterations and additions, with a poetical description of the castle written by William Prynne possibly written by a Lt.Col Oldfield).*
- Anon 1949-52 The German fortifications *Société Jersiaise Annual Bulletin* **15** : 329-331
- Anon 1973 Hitler's fortification order 1941 *Channel Islands Occupation Review* : 26-29
- Anon 1981 *Verstärkung der Kanalinslen (Reinforcing the Channel Islands) 1941* Jersey : Channel Islands Occupation Society 1981
- Appleby J C 1984 A memorandum on the defence of the Channel Islands, 1627 *Société Jersiaise Annual Bulletin* **23.4** : 503-508.
- Barton K J 1977a Gorey Castle, Jersey, Channel Islands *CBA Calendar of Excavations summaries* 1976 :3.
- Barton K J 1977b Medieval and post-medieval pottery from Gorey Castle *Société Jersiaise Annual Bulletin* **22.2** : 60-82.
- Barton K J 1984 Excavations in the Middle Ward, Mont Orgueil, Gorey, Jersey *Archaeological Journal* **141** : 216-242.
- Barton K J 1986 Material evidence for medieval defence of the Channel Islands in P.Johnston (ed) *The archaeology of the Channel Islands* : 142-147.
- Bemment G 2006 *Bat Survey Report for Jersey Heritage Trust Sites* : 9-11.
- Brown M 1986 *Guide to Mont Orgueil Castle.*
- Clarke J 2005 *German defences of Gorey castle* (Typescript).
- Colvin H M (ed) 1963 *The History of the King's Works II : The Middle Ages (Part 2)* : 603-606.
- Colvin H M & Summerson J 1982 The Channel Islands in Colvin H M (ed) *The History of the King's Works IV : 1485-1660 (Part 2)* : 450-453.
- Condition Audit* 1996 - The Conservation Practice 1996 *A condition audit of Mont Orgueil, States of Jersey* (four volumes).
- Corbière J E 1890 *Mont Orgueil Castle – A tale of Jersey during the Wars of the Roses.*
- Coysh V 1966-70 Nineteenth century defences in the Channel Islands *La Société Guernesiaise, Report and Transactions* **18** : 297-302.

- Davey S 2001 *The Lichens of Chateau d-Orgueil*.
- Davies W 1984 Early proposals for fortifying Town Hill *Société Jersiaise Annual Bulletin* **23.4** : 509-516.
- Dixon P 1997 *A report on an examination of Mont Orgueil Castle*.
- Dixon P, Jones M, and Phillpotts C 1998 *Mont Orgueil Castle : a report on the archives*.
- Dixon P and Kennedy J 2000 *Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey : a review*.
- Dixon P & Kennedy J 2002a *Mont Orgueil Conservation Plan* Volume 1.
- Dixon P & Kennedy J 2002b *Mont Orgueil Conservation Plan* Volume 2 (Site Gazetteer).
- Dixon P & Kennedy J 2002c *Mont Orgueil Conservation Plan* Volume 3 (Supporting documentation).
- Dixon P & Kennedy J 2002d *Mont Orgueil Conservation Plan* Volume 4 (Photographic survey).
- Eagleston A J 1938 The Chronique de Jersey in the light of contemporary documents *Annual Bulletin of the Société Jersiaise* **13** : 305-310.
- Elizabeth Castle and Mont Orgueil Castle 1996 : cession of Usufruct (States of Jersey).
- Environmental Building Solutions 2001 *Preliminary diagnostic non-destructive environmental survey for moisture damp and timber decay*.
- Falle P 1694 *An Account of Jersey* (Reprinted 1798).
- Finlaison M B 1997a Investigations in the Lower Room of the South-West Keep Tower of Mont Orgueil : Part 1 *Annual Bulletin of the Société Jersiaise* **27** : 85-102.
- Finlaison M B 1997b Investigations in the Lower Room of the South-West Keep Tower of Mont Orgueil : Part 2 *Annual Bulletin of the Société Jersiaise* **28** : 78-87.
- Ford D 2007 *Mont Orgueil Castle : A Souvenir Guide*.
- Gander T 1990 From Sudetenland to the Atlantic Wall *Fortress* **4** : 53-57.
- Gavey E 1906 *A Picturesque History of Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey, with original illustrations by Alfred G. Wright*.
- Gibbs D 1999 *Report on the wall plaster*.
- Ginns M 1973 German tunnels in Jersey *Channel Islands Occupation Review* : 2-13.
- Ginns M 1974 Anti-tank walls in Jersey *Channel Islands Occupation Review* : 57-66.

- Ginns M and Brans P 1975 *German fortifications in Jersey*
- Ginns M 1975 German artillery in the Channel Islands 1941-1945
Channel Islands Occupation Review : 25-44
- Grimsley E J 1988 *The historical development of the Martello tower in the Channel islands.*
- Hall N 2003 *Investigation of the distribution of the Jersey wall lizard – Podarcis Muralis, at Mont Orgueil castle.*
- Hall N 2005 *Investigation of the distribution and minimum number alive (MNA) of Jersey Wall Lizard – Podarcis Muralis, at Mont Orgueil castle.*
- Harris J E 1971 *Mont Orgueil Castle : guide and history.*
- Hockley and Dawson 2001 *Condition Survey of Mont Orgueil Castle, Gorey* (Consulting Engineer's Report).
- Hockley & Dawson 2003 *Report on Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey : Tudor Hall and D-shaped area* (Consulting Engineer's Report).
- Hutton and Rostron Environmental Investigations Ltd 2004 *Masonry Moisture content of damp related problems at Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey.*
- Ingram Consultancy Limited 2002 *Mont Orgueil Castle Method Statement for joint filling and finishing in granite masonry.*
- Jersey Island Plan Review (July 1998) *Conservation of Jersey's historic buildings* Interim policies for the conservation of historic buildings.
- KFP Consulting Ltd 2005 *Mont Orgueil Castle Representation Projects, Fire strategy report.*
- Leake R 1680 *Accompt of Ordnance : St Alban's Fort, Elizabeth and Mont Orgueil Castles* (Copy of King's MSS 48 Folios 73 & 78 in British Library)
- Le Gros A A 1870 *Mont Orgueil Castle, its history and its ruins* (4th edition).
- Le Patourel J 1958 *The Building of Castle Cornet.*
- Luke M J 1985 *Atlantic Wall blueprint : German bunkers in the Great War and their influence on World War 2 coastal defences in the Channel Islands.*
- Marshall P 2002 *The Mont Orgueil Debate : A Review.*
- McCormack J 2002 Dating buildings in the Inner Ward at Mont Orgueil castle *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 6 March 2002.
- McCormack J 2006 The high-vaulted room at Mont Orgueil : Hall, Chamber, or Chapel? *Annual Bulletin of the Société Jersiaise* **29** : 184-194.

- Mollet R 1953-56 'Interesting local documents. Copy of an order issued by King Charles II concerning the royal castles of Elizabethan and Montorgueil and St Aubin's Fort, now in the archives of the County Record Office, Shire Hall, Bedford' *Société Jersiaise Annual Bulletin* **16** : 291-292
- Mourant A E 1933 The Geology of the Castle promontory, in *Rybot* 1933 : 78-80.
- Myres M T 2001a Revisiting Governor Peyton's 1617-1620 Disbursement Book *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 1 March 2001.
- Myres M T 2001b Military Manpower at Mont Orgueil castle in 1617 *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 2 March 2001.
- Myres M T 2001c Transition and change in the armaments of Mont Orgueil castle, 1531-1681 : An introduction to the artillery *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 5 December 2001.
- Myres M T 2002 Dating of fortification building programmes at Mont Orgueil castle for the evidence of peaks of annual expenditure on them, 1547-1594 *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 10 October 2002.
- Myres MT & Molyneux N P 2001a Reasons why the present 'Somerset Tower' at Mont Orgueil castle was not built or completed, by 1549 : The Documentary Evidence *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 3 October 2001.
- Myres M T & Molyneux N P 2001b Henry Cornish's Inventory of the Ordnance at Mont Orgueil castle : the role of artillery in identifying particular gun platforms *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 4 October 2001.
- Myres M T & Molyneux N P 2002a Henry Cornish's Inventory of the Ordnance at Mont Orgueil castle : the role of artillery in identifying particular gun platforms *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 4 (Second Edition) August 2002.
- Myres M T & Molyneux N P 2002b Evidence for the shape (footprint) of the 'Somerset' tower for Henry Cornish's original purpose for it *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 7 March 2002.
- Nicoll E T 1921 *Mont Orgueil Castle : its history and description*.
- Partridge M S 1986 The Defence of the Channel Islands, 1814-1870 *Journal of the Society for Army Historical Research* **64** : 34-42
- Patton M 2002 The prehistory of le Mont Orgueil *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 9 September 2002.
- Penny Anderson Associates 2000 *Mont Orgueil Castle : A Management Plan for the Soft Landscape*.
- Planning and Environment Committee Register of Buildings and Sites of Architectural, Archaeological and Historical Importance in Jersey, Appendix 1: *Island Planning (Jersey) Law* Articles 9 and 9A.
- Platt Prof C 2001 *Mont Orgueil Castle and the Defence of Jersey 1540-1630*.

- Platt C 2002 Dating the Somerset Tower *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 8 April 2002.
- Platt Prof C 2003a *The Mont Orgueil Dossier* (printed and published privately).
- Platt C 2003b The Mont Orgueil debate in the light of recent research *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 12 March 2003.
- Platt Prof C 2004a *A Catalogue of Errors : on creating, developing and sustaining a myth* (typescript 5th March 2004).
- Platt Prof C 2004b *The Mont Orgueil debate revisited* (Typescript 2nd July 2004).
- Platt Prof C 2005 *Tudor Mont Orgueil : the alternative narratives* (Typescript March 2005).
- Platt C 2006a A note on the chapels of St Mary and St George at Mont Orgueil castle *Annual Bulletin of the Société Jersiaise* **29** : 195-201.
- Platt Prof C 2006b *Warwick Rodwell's Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey : History and Architecture (2006) is seriously misleading; and here's why* (Typescript)
- Platt C & Mesch R 2005 Mont Orgueil castle and General Conway : The Lost Chapter *Annual Bulletin of the Société Jersiaise* **29** : 99-115.
- Pocock H R S 1972 Jersey's Martello Towers *Société Jersiaise Annual Bulletin* **20** (1969-72) : 389-398.
- Renouf J 2002 Geological examination of the D-shaped and adjacent areas of the inner ward of Mont Orgueil castle *Mont Orgueil Studies* No 11 November 2002.
- Rodwell W J 1997 *Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey : archaeological investigations in the Medieval Great Hall and Adjacent Structures, 1997.*
- Rodwell W J 2001a *Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey : archaeological Investigations into the structural form and detailing of the ruined Tudor Rooms within the Keep* (Report for the Jersey Heritage Trust).
- Rodwell W J 2001b *Mont Orgueil Castle : the 1549 inventory of ordnance and its implications for the structural history of the castle* (preliminary notes).
- Rodwell W J 2002a *Summary Reports on Archaeological Investigations at Mont Orgueil 1996-2002* (Two Volumes - Report for the Jersey Heritage Trust).
- Rodwell WE J 2002b *Mont Orgueil Castle : Notes on the component parts of the keep and views expressed thereon* (typescript notes April 2002).
- Rodwell W J 2005 *Interim Report on Archaeological Investigations 1995.*

- Rodwell W J 2006a *Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey : History and Architecture* (Jersey Heritage Trust).
- Rodwell W J 2006b *Mont Orgueil : The Lodge* [typescript report].
- Rushton N S 2001 *Documents from the Cecil papers at Hatfield House relating to Mont Orgueil castle, Jersey*.
- Rushton N S 2002 *Report of the post-1540 documentary evidence for the history and architectural development of Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey, from British mainland archives, primarily the Public Record Office and British Library, London* (Jersey Heritage Trust).
- Rushton N S 2003 The historical evidence for the sixteenth-century remodelling of Mont Orgueil castle *Annual Bulletin of the Société Jersiaise* **28** : 351-374.
- Rybot N V L 1930 Reparation & Investigations on Mont Orgueil Castle (1921-1929) *Bulletin Société Jersiaise* **10** (1933-35) : 275.
- Rybot N V L 1931 Excavations at Gorey Castle, February & March 1930 *Bulletin Société Jersiaise* **11** : 357-368.
- Rybot N V L 1933 *Gorey Castle, Jersey* [the edition quoted in the Conservation Plan is that published in 1959].
- Rybot N V L 1933a Reparations and Excavations on Gorey Castle 1931-33 *Bulletin Société Jersiaise* **12** : 173-177.
- Rybot N V L 1942 Recent Work at Gorey Castle *Bulletin Société Jersiaise* **14** : 115-120.
- Rybot N V L 1950 A Report on the excavations made in the north-east outer slopes of Mont Orgueil castle during the latter half of the year 1940 *Bulletin annuel (de la) Société Jersiaise* **15** : 239-248.
- Selkirk A 2002 Mont Orgueil *Current Archaeology* **183** Vol.XVI No.3 : 98-106.
- States of Jersey Environment Deapartment 2002-2006 Investigation of distribution of the Jersey wall lizard, *Podarcus Muralis*, at Mont Orgueil Castle.
- Strachey and Strachey Conservation 2000 *Report on items at Mont Orgueil Castle*.
- Thompson J 2006 *A Review of existing Soft Landscape Plan* (typescript for Jersey Heritage Trust).
- Thompson J 2007 *Protocol for the conservation of wildlife and ecology when planning or carrying out new works or major repairs* (typescript document for Jersey Heritage Trust).
- Tough K 1986 German fortifications – argument for and against preservation *Channel Islands Occupation Review* : 39-40.
- Webster L E and Cherry J 1975 Medieval Britain in 1974 *Medieval Archaeology* **19** : 241.

Although not consulted during the preparation of the Conservation Plan, the following sources have also been recommended by the Société Jersiaise :

G R Balleine *A Biographical Dictionary of Jersey.*

A J Eagleston *The Channel Islands under Tudor Government 1485-1642.*

R Mollet *A Chronology of Jersey.*

J H le Patourel *The Medieval administration of the Channel Islands 1199-1399.*

APPENDIX 1

Documents held in the Jersey Archives

Jersey Archive (Jersey Heritage Trust) Clarence Road, St Helier JE2 4NY Tel. 01534 833300 e-mail archives@jerseyheritagetrust.org.

The on-line search facility indicates that there are some 290 records in the archives pertaining to Gorey Castle, Mont Orgueil, or Mont Orgueil Castle. The list below has mostly been taken from the Trust's website and represents abbreviated introductions to some of the material which is most relevant to the history and fabric of the castle.

Of this material, only the photographs and the earlier plans were consulted during the preparation of the Conservation Plan.

A. Records of the Lieutenant Governor of Jersey

Accession no. JA/269. The Jersey Archive received this accession on The 15th June 1999.

The Lieutenant Governor is the Queen's representative in Jersey and in the past was principally responsible for the defence of the Island. This collection consists of documents dating from c.1800 until the 1990s and the following entries have been extracted from the on-line index.

A/C2/22/15 Plan of land near Mont Orgueil marking boundary of land considered to be immediately connected with the defences of the Castle and which the Ordnance should have undivided control - not dated.

A/D1/M16 Papers relating to ancient monuments including the handing over of Mont Orgueil, 1907.

A/D2/1 Papers relating to the defence of the Channel Islands and fortifications, includes; St Aubin's Fort, the property of the War Department, Mont Orgueil, Viviers Battery, reports on the Royal Jersey Militia, Martello Towers, and a possible survey of the Channel Islands 15/07/1831 - 10/11/1987.

A/E/11/2 Correspondence relating to restrictions to be put on visitors to certain parts of Mont Orgueil Castle 08/08/1914 - 30/12/1918.

C/A. Minutes of the States Assembly

Accession no. JA/397. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 30/11/2000

C/A5/16 Official correspondence with index. Subjects include: excavations at La Hougue Bie signal station at Mont Orgueil 20/01/1925 - 01/12/1927.

C/A5/25 Official correspondence with index. Subjects include: altar stone from Mont Orgueil to be sent to New Jersey; Official Analyst's report. 15/12/1948 - 09/12/1950.

C/B/K. Public Works Committee, later Public Services Committee

Accession no. JA/164. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 05/01/1998

Includes reports and photographs relating to Mont Orgueil Castle, Elizabeth Castle and other fortifications in Jersey, 1922-1991.

C/B/K/A/4 Report from the Ministry of Works on Mont Orgueil Castle, with recommendations for treatment and preservation. Made after an inspection in June, 1955. Includes the following sections; Condition of and Recommendations for the Outer Ward, Lower Ward, Middle Ward and Keep, notes on repair and preservation of brickwork and masonry, notes on the treatment of stonework, woodwork, beetle attack, dry rot, and ironwork, programme of work and costs, numerous photographs of the Castle and Islet taken 10 June 1955, and a plan of the Castle. Photographs taken by Le Brocq and Le Clercq of 9 New Street, St Helier. 01/08/1956 - 01/08/1956.

C/B/K/A/5 States of Jersey Public Services Department Safety Report on Mont Orgueil Castle and Elizabeth Castle. Compiled with the assistance of Mr Nick Reading, Head of the Architectural Section of English Heritage. Includes coloured pictures of the safety risks highlighted in the two Castles, and details of the problems and proposed solutions. 01/09/1991 - 01/09/1991.

C/B/K/C/4 Set of Photographs of the maintenance, restoration and repair work of the fabric of Mont Orgueil Castle. Also includes a set of photographs relating to the discovery of unexploded shells in the Grand Battery of the Castle, and their subsequent disposal 22/11/1978 - 22/12/1982.

C/D/P. Jersey Heritage Trust

Accession no. JA/179. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 01/04/1998.

C/D/P/B1/1 Copy of Popinjay's map of Jersey which shows Mount Orguyle [Mont Orgueil]. Scale 3 inches to a mile.

C/D/P/B1/2 Copy of an original plan of Mont Orgueil prepared in 1741. Scale 20 feet = 1 inch.

C/D/P/B1/3 Plan of Mont Orgueil by G A Keiley. Drawing No 23. Scale 10 feet = 1 inch. Includes a copy with annotations 00/03/1920 - 00/03/1920 (this is reproduced by *Nicolle* 1921).

C/D/P/B1/4 Site plan and elevations of the proposed kiosk at Mont Orgueil. States of Jersey, Public Works Committee - D J Clennett in charge of plans. Drawing No 2586. Scale 1:48/1:10/1:20 25/01/1972 - 25/01/1972.

C/D/P/B1/6 Plans of Mont Orgueil with annotations - not dated.

C/D/P/B1/7 Plan of Mont Orgueil showing geographical features such as slopes and cliffs with annotations - not dated.

D/AL. Public Services Department

Accession no. JA/409. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 22/01/2001

D/AL/A1/23 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle 00/03/1920 - 00/03/1920.

D/AL/A1/71 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Proposed alterations to Mont Orgueil Cafe - not dated.

D/AL/A1/425 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Various Plans.

D/AL/A1/1737 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle (1741) and Elizabeth Castle (1737).

D/AL/A1/1918 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Plan of Mont Orgueil showing places for Royal Visit.

D/AL/A1/1920 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle.

D/AL/A1/1987 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Details of Notice Board, Oak Doors, Plan of Aula Castri, Alterations to Caretakers Lodge, Pay Kiosk, Cabinets for Militia Museum, Sketch plan of Throne Room.

D/AL/A1/1996 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle and Elizabeth Castle.

D/AL/A1/2308 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Proposed widening of gates and balustrading 00/12/1961 - 00/12/1961.

D/AL/A1/2330 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Proposed signboard showing Mont Orgueil Castle.

D/AL/A1/2349 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Public Toilet at Mont Orgueil Castle.

D/AL/A1/2473 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Plans of conveniences.

D/AL/A1/2586 Plans of Mont Orgueil Castle. Proposed Kiosk.

(Note the following eleven photographs can be viewed on the website)

D/AL/B2/1 Photograph of Mont Orgueil Castle looking South over the roof of the Tudor Great Chamber showing the spiral stair tower before the German's added the top 2 meters but after it was heightened by Public Works in c.1920 taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/2 Photograph of the view through the Mount Gate (Fifth Gate) at Mont Orgueil Castle taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/3 Photograph of the lantern or the Octagonal Tower/Semaphore Tower on the Mount Battery looking north east at Mont Orgueil Castle. The tower is used by the Coastguard and during the Occupation the Germans added two meters. Taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/4 Photograph of Mont Orgueil Castle looking down on to the Middle Ward from the Grand Battery with the New Mount or Somerset Tower on the left hand side and the long cellar below taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/5 Photograph of the residential apartments at Mont Orgueil Castle after the demolition of the external staircase in 1911 taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/6 Photograph of the second gate to Mont Orgueil Castle and stable store taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/7 Photograph of the third gate at Mont Orgueil Castle taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/8 Photograph of the Queen Elizabeth gate (fourth gate) at Mont Orgueil Castle taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/9 Photograph of Mont Orgueil Castle taken by Mr H L Nicolle from the end of Gorey Pier.

D/AL/B2/10 Photograph of the Harliston Tower and main gate at Mont Orgueil Castle taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AL/B2/11 Photograph of the residential apartments, corbelled tower, watch tower stairs and the South East or Prynne's Tower at Mont Orgueil Castle taken by Mr H L Nicolle.

D/AP. Various States Greffe/States Committee correspondence files and other papers

Accession no. JA/35. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 31/01/1995. The files are arranged into subject categories for ease of reference.

D/AP1/A1136/2(370) Plan of the proposed transmitter site for the Independent Broadcasting Authority at Mont Orgueil Castle
15/12/1983 - 15/12/1983

D/AU. Treasury records

Accession no. JA/01. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 01/08/1982

D/AU/Y2/A/40 Projet de Loi relating to the report on floodlighting on Mont Orgueil Castle, 1959.

D/AU/Y2/A/90 Projet de Loi relating to the replacement of floodlighting at Mont Orgueil Castle, 1959.

D/Y. Judicial Greffe

Accession no. JA/276. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 20/07/1999

D/Y/A/3/111 Orders to Elizabeth Castle and Mont Orgueil stating the numbers of soldiers to defend the main gates and canons, the payments of the soldiers, the reestablishment of the Governors guard which was disbanded by Sir Walthre Raughley [Sir Walter Raleigh], and that the main gates and cannon of both castles are manned - not dated [This document was found loose in the volume of testaments].

L/C/14/B/8. Aerial reconnaissance photographs of Jersey

L/C/14/B/8/2 Aerial reconnaissance photographs including Mont Orgueil, St Ouen's Pond and Grosnez 08/10/1943 - 08/10/1943.

L/C/14/B/8/2 - test Aerial reconnaissance photographs including Mont Orgueil, St Ouen's Pond and Grosnez 08/10/1943 - 08/10/1943.

L/C/20-60. Photographs

Various collections of photographs and postcards – some including Mont Orgueil.

L/C/63/A Letters Patent

L/C/63/A/1 Letter Patent of King George III appointing Major General John Pitt Chatham as Governor and Captain of Jersey, Mont Orgueil, and Elizabeth Castle with the wages and land pertaining to the post, including the Manor of Germaine or St Jermaine, land belonging to the late priory of St Illet and St Helier and the advowsons of the churches 19/10/1807 - 19/10/1807.

L/C/68 Le Couteur Family Collection

Accession no. JA/341. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 08/06/2000

L/C/68/C7/3 Draft notes of Sir John Le Couteur concerning; commission of Edward I to John Wygar and Ralph de Broughton to survey all lands in the hands of the Crown in Guernsey, Jersey and other islands adjacent to the coast of Normandy, letter from Henry VIII relating to the defence of Jersey and the orders of Henry Cornish Lord High Admiral and Captain and Governor of the Castle of Mountorgill [Mont Orgueil] and Jersey, the proclamation of war between England and France in 1547, letter from Queen Mary to Sir Hugh Paulet relating to the defence of Jersey, intelligence from Sir Hugh Paulet to Sir William Cecil from his son Amys Poulet concerning the Frenchman Monsieur Glatteny/Glategni and his attempt to seduce Peter de Rocquier, a native of Jersey, and from his allegiance, Charles II garrison of Jersey.

L/C/68/C7/9 Research of Sir John Le Couteur concerning the militia and defence of Jersey, includes references to fortifications at Elizabeth Castle, Mont Orgueil Castle and St Aubin's Fort -

L/C/163/A Photographs

L/C/163/A/1 Photograph of Gorey Castle and Gorey Pier taken by J Mackay [?] 01/08/1954 - 31/08/1954

L/C/163/A/2 Photograph of Gorey Castle taken by J Mackay [?] 01/08/1954 - 31/08/1954

L/F/08 Public Works Collection of miscellaneous items mainly military letters, post cards and photographs c.1670 – 1971

Accession no. JA/34. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 31/01/1995

L/F/08/G3/7 Postcards of Mont Orgueil on the day it was officially handed over to the States of Jersey by the Crown, photographer W J Dovey, one sent by W Compton, one sent to J Horman 28/06/1907 - 28/06/1907.

P/09/A Slides taken by Dr John Renouf and Jean Treleven

Accession no. JA/461. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 15/05/2001

Various photographic slides of Mont Orgueil taken in the 1970s and 1980s.

P/39/A Photographs

Accession no. JA/991. The Jersey Archive received this accession on 19/02/2005

P/39/A/9 Photograph of Mont Orgueil Castle with a German bunker in the foreground.

Ordnance Survey plans

The Archives also hold copies of Ordnance Survey plans of the Island, at various scales and dates. The 1:5000 Jersey Sheet 11, surveyed in 1934, and the 1:1000 Plan No 10/18, revised in 1980-81, were consulted during the preparation of the Conservation Plan.

APPENDIX 2

Documents held by the Société Jersiaise

Société Jersiaise 7 Pier Road, St Helier JE2 4XW Tel. 01534 30538
e-mail cifhs@localdial.com

The Société maintains the Lord Coutanche Library, which holds collections of maps, prints, and photographs.

Library

The online index to the library includes 63 entries relevant to Mont Orgueil – in three batches 1-25, 26-50 and 51-63.

Only the first of these was accessible in October and August 2007 and this includes entries for the following material, placed in chronological order –

Leake R 1629-1696 Copies of *King's Mss.48.Fo.73 & 78– Surveys by Captain Richard Leake, Master Gunner of England*, from the British Library. 7 sleeved sheets in portfolio.

Hilgrove T T 1840 Photocopy of illustrated article on a Dolmen near Mont Orgueil Castle, from *Archaeologia XXVIII*: 461-462.

Gavey E 1913 *A Picturesque History of Mont Orgueil Castle, Jersey* (3rd edition).

A visit to the library on the 29th August 2007 identified an important collection of material relevant to Mont Orgueil assembled by Edmund Nicolle and Norman Rybot, which is held in one folder and one box file.

The folder includes :

- a notebook of notes on Mont Orgueil castle prepared by Messrs des Forts and Rejnier on the 19th-23rd August 1912;
- a notebook of decisions of the Public Works sub committee for Mont Orgueil concerning works undertaken to the fabric in the period 4th November 1908 to 26th March 1928. It refers to both Edmund Nicolle and Norman Rybot, and the pencil annotation 'done' is applied to most of the entries, implying that the proposed works had been undertaken. This is an important document which needs to be fully transcribed; and
- a notebook by Edmund Nicolle which includes, on pages 50-59, material relevant to Mont Orgueil being notes taken from the memoir of Lt Col Oldfield RE in the Royal Engineers Office, Jersey, and these refer to notes dated 28th December 1679 and to works undertaken in the period 1752-1835.

The box file includes many of the photographs and drawings prepared by Norman Rybot and published in his 1933 guide book; several reconstruction drawings by Rybot, some published by Nicolle; and a letter dated 7th October 1937 to Deputy R.N. Richardson, which is unsigned but probably written by Rybot, which refers to works of repARATION, restoration, and excavation undertaken since Mont Orgueil was handed over to the States in 1907, but mostly in the period 1919-1920.

Map Collection

The Société holds maps of St Helier and the Channel Islands from c.1300, both originals and copies of those held elsewhere; plans and drawings.

These include coloured copies or tracings of the 1755 plan and section, and a photograph of an undated and anonymous plan previously held at the National Maritime Museum being 'A Ground Platt of Mount Arguile and the Profile of Mount Arguile'.

Print Collection

Original prints of the Channel Islands (e.g. Harwood, Le Capelain, M. Moss, P.J. Oules, Rock & Co. etc.) .

These include several copies of Thomas Phillips' drawing of 1680; an engraving of a view of Mont Orgueil published by S Hopper on the 5th July 1777; and a copy of the engraving showing Lt-Col Dixon RE, presenting the visitors' book to her Majesty Queen Victoria during her visit to the castle on the 3rd September 1846.

Photographic Collection

The on-line database contains 179 entries for Mont Orgueil and these include a series of general views of Mont Orgueil and Gorey; photographs of drawings and paintings of the same subjects since 1742; views of parts of the castle at various times; views of excavations undertaken in 1908-09, and the 1920s, the 1930s and the 1970s; and images of pottery and other objects found during those excavations.